REPORT RESUMES

ED 014 048 48 AL 000 594
CHINESE-MANDARIN, LEVEL III.
BY- HSU, KAI-YU AND OTHERS
SAN FRANCISCO STATE COLL., CALIF.
REPORT NUMBER BR-5-1091-3 PUB DATE 66
CONTRACT OEC-6-14-008
EDRS PRICE MF-$2.00 HC-$19.32 481P.

DESCRIPTORS- *MANDARIN CHINESE, *LANGUAGE INSTRUCTION, GRADE 11, *HIGH SCHOOL CURRICULUM, AUDIOLINGUAL SKILLS, *CHINESE CULTURE, READING ASSIGNMENTS, READING MATERIALS, VOCABULARY DEVELOPMENT, CALIFORNIA,

THE FORMAT OF LEVEL III (FOR GRADE 11) DIFFERS FROM THAT OF LEVELS I AND II IN HAVING 20 UNITS AND IN THE INCREASED EMPHASIS ON READING AND WRITING SKILLS. THE AUTHORS' GOAL WAS TO ENCOURAGE SELF-STUDY BY THE STUDENT, ESPECIALLY IN LEARNING TO READ CHINESE CHARACTERS. THE GRAMMAR DISCUSSED IN THIS TEXT INCLUDES POINTS PRESENTED IN LEVELS I AND II WHICH HAVE PROVEN DIFFICULT FOR STUDENTS IN PILOT CLASSES. THE INTRODUCTION TO THE TEACHER OUTLINES THE PROCEDURES APPROPRIATE TO THE VARIOUS SECTIONS OF EACH UNIT AND SUGGESTS A SCHEDULE FOR SEVEN HOURS OF CLASSWORK PER UNIT. AS IN THE FIRST TWO VOLUMES, YALE ROMANIZATION IS USED WITH CHINESE CHARACTERS AND THE PUBLISHER IS THE ALTOAN PRESS, PALO ALTO, CALIFORNIA. (JD)

BR-5-1091
PA 48

CHINESE-MANDARIN

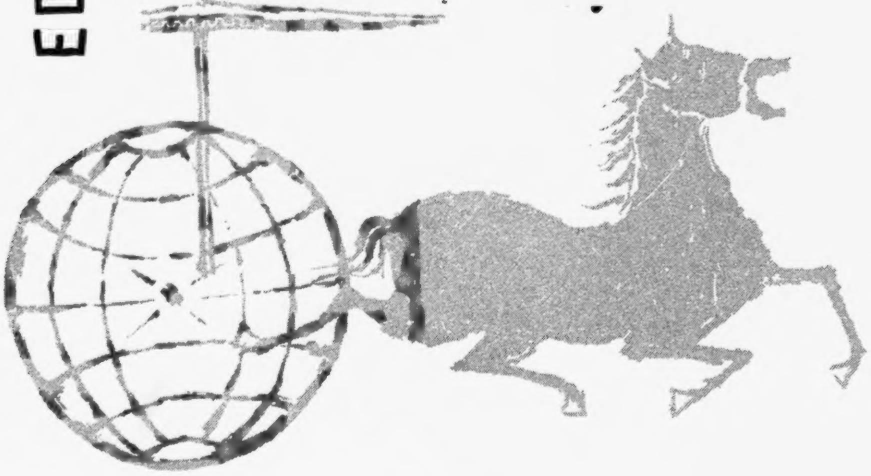
LEVEL III

KAI-YU HSU
HENRY YANG
ALAN FONG

ED014048

U.S. DEPARTMENT OF HEALTH, EDUCATION & WELFARE
OFFICE OF EDUCATION

THIS DOCUMENT HAS BEEN REPRODUCED EXACTLY AS RECEIVED FROM THE PERSON OR ORGANIZATION ORIGINATING IT. POINTS OF VIEW OR OPINIONS STATED DO NOT NECESSARILY REPRESENT OFFICIAL OFFICE OF EDUCATION POSITION OR POLICY.



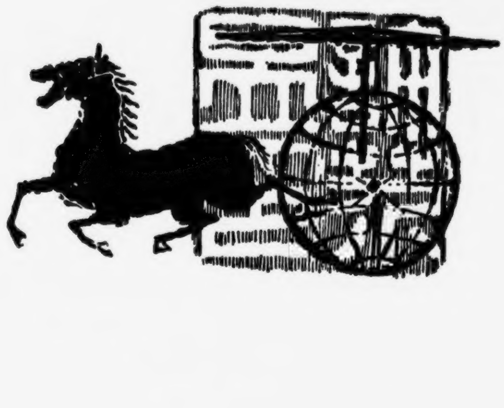
PREPARED BY THE CHINESE-MANDARIN INSTRUCTIONAL MATERIAL
DEVELOPMENT PROJECT AT SAN FRANCISCO STATE COLLEGE
IN COOPERATION WITH THE U. S. OFFICE OF EDUCATION

AL 000 594

OE-6-14-008
#5-1091

國語教材

第三輯



CHINESE-MANDARIN

Level III

Kai-yu Hsu
Henry Yang
Alan Fong

"PERMISSION TO REPRODUCE THIS
COPYRIGHTED MATERIAL HAS BEEN GRANTED
BY Kai-Yu Hsu

TO ERIC AND ORGANIZATIONS OPERATING
UNDER AGREEMENTS WITH THE U.S. OFFICE OF
EDUCATION. FURTHER REPRODUCTION OUTSIDE
THE ERIC SYSTEM REQUIRES PERMISSION OF
THE COPYRIGHT OWNER."

The Altoan Press, Palo Alto, California, 1966

CHINESE-MANDARIN III

The publication of this volume in the present form has been made possible with the assistance of the Carnegie Chinese Project, San Francisco State College.

Library of Congress Catalog Card Number 66-63239
Copyright © 1966 by Kai-yu Hsu
All rights reserved
Printed in the United States of America
First edition
Paperback and hardcover

INTRODUCTION

The basic principles for the organization and the use of this volume are described in detail in the Teacher's Handbook for the users of all the four levels of Chinese-Mandarin Materials prepared by the project at San Francisco State College. The following are a few specific points related exclusively to the Level III units.

1. The Format of the Units

The arrangement of the Level III units differs from that of Levels I and II in that there are in this volume 20 units instead of the 15 included in each of the two earlier levels. The suggested amount of time to be devoted to each unit, therefore, is reduced from approximately 10 to about 7-1/2 classroom hours. The same principle of flexibility in scheduling the units to be taught, of course, will still apply.

The second main difference between Level III and the earlier levels is that the materials presented in this volume are intended to induce more self-study on the part of the students. There are more materials for the students to read on their own, thus enabling them to gain proficiency in reading the written Chinese language.

2. The Selection of the Contents

Within the general framework of the master curriculum developed by the Advisory Committee on Chinese Language Instruction in California Public Schools, every effort has been made to introduce vocabulary items and new sentence patterns systematically. The situations have been selected for their relevance to the experience of the average American high school student, more specifically, an eleventh grader. As all the selected situations revolve around an American high school student studying in a Chinese school, there is a liberal use of comparisons between Chinese and American cultures.

A new feature has been introduced to accompany the basic dialogue which is always to be thoroughly learned and memorized. A Chinese character version of the dialogue is presented side by side with its romanized counterpart in such a way as to facilitate the student's learning of the characters. He can cover up the romanization while trying to learn the characters line by line. This will encourage those students able to retain more characters than required by the curriculum to proceed faster in learning the written Chinese language.

3. The New Vocabulary Items

In the vocabulary section of each unit, all the new items are listed. The students are required to learn all the items as spoken vocabulary, but only those Chinese characters underscored are required for memorization and absorption. After the students have mastered the required characters introduced in each unit, they, of course, are encouraged to learn as many extra characters given in the vocabulary list as they are capable of doing.

In selecting the characters, vocabulary lists have been prepared under a number of common categories. These categories include household articles, weather information, common expressions of human feelings and attitudes, commonly used adjectives and adverbs, etc. From these lists, the most appropriate items are selected and used in the dialogues. Each selected item is further checked against five most popularly used Chinese lexical studies and references. These are:

1. Chao, Y. R. and Lien-sheng Yang, Concise Dictionary of Spoken Chinese. Cambridge, Harvard University Press, 1947.
2. Chinese Language Reform Commission, Hanyu Pinyin Cihui. Peking, Wenzi Gaige Chubanshe, 1958.
3. Swūn, Cháng-syù, Hànyŭ Tzúhwèi, 2nd Edition. Chángchwūn, Jīlín Rénmín Chubănshe, 1957.
4. U.S. War Department, Dictionary of Spoken Chinese, (Chinese-English; English-Chinese). Washington, D.C., 1945.
5. Wang, Fred Fang-yu, Chinese Dialogues. New Haven, IFEL, Yale University, 1953.

4. Grammar

The grammar discussed in the units has been presented mainly as good usage of the language, because many of the features may or may not be properly termed as sentence patterns. Attention has been first paid to those usages and sentence patterns already introduced in Levels I and II which have proven to be relatively difficult for the students to learn. Based on suggestions from the teachers involved in pilot testing Levels I and II, these points of difficulty are isolated and pinpointed for further treatment in this volume. For example, the bă construction and the shr̀...de construction are reviewed and elaborated in this level.

Variations of basic sentence patterns already introduced in the earlier levels are discussed in this volume. The vocabulary items which are easily confused receive special attention in this section discussing their usage.

The illustrations employed in the usage sections are intended to dramatize the correct use of the vocabulary items or sentence patterns concerned. It is believed that this new feature will aid the students in expanding their command of the language and retain it longer and better.

Tabulations and serial lists are used to summarize related vocabulary items already learned in earlier units and levels. By bringing such items as the dates and numbers together for review, the student's recognition and control of these items will be reinforced.

5. The Dialogue Expansion

The dialogue expansion includes some new vocabulary items selected to supplement those in the dialogue. These new items, which involve no unfamiliar syntactical concept, hence are easy to use, are also explained in the vocabulary section of each unit. The purpose of the dialogue expansion is not only to help the student to learn the additional expressions, but to provide further opportunity to practice using certain expressions in the entire unit that require additional practice. Cultural matters and student interest are also kept in view in preparing the dialogue expansion.

6. The Exercises

The oral drills in class are to be carried out according to the same principles which underlie the oral exercises presented in Levels I and II. Although the teacher may be thoroughly familiar with the basic approaches to oral drill in class, sufficient examples are also included in each unit. The teacher is to be encouraged to structure replacement, substitution, and other types of effective drills with the materials presented. By using appropriate cue words, all the vocabulary items and structural features presented in each unit can be effectively drilled in class. The tabulations and the serial listing of vocabulary items lend themselves readily to this kind of oral drill.

The exercises printed in each unit can be used for homework assignment. Suitable time for such assignments is suggested below. The teacher also should use short but frequent quizzes to reinforce the learning, and such quizzes are actually part of the exercises.

7. The Reading Materials

Each unit includes some reading material in Chinese characters. These passages have been selected from well-known works in modern Chinese literature or other types of prose and verse representative of contemporary Chinese writing. Vocabulary items new to the students have been annotated so that the students can read these selections without the aid of a dictionary. A modest glossary arranged in the regular format of a standard dictionary has been included. The teacher can devote some minutes to explain the method of using the glossary, which contains all the vocabulary items annotated or in need of annotation in the reading materials included in this volume. It will serve the purpose of training the students to use a regular dictionary.

As has been explained at the beginning of these introductory pages, this volume has been designed with an emphasis on encouraging the students to do self-study. The reading materials, therefore, shall be assigned to the students to study at home as part of their homework. During the seventh hour (as described below in "Suggested Teaching Procedure"), the teacher should ask the class such questions as to ascertain that the students have read the materials and understood them.

8. Suggested Teaching Procedure

First and second hours: introduction and study of the romanized version of the dialogue, and the new vocabulary including the vocabulary drill.

Third and fourth hours: study of the usage section, review of the dialogue, study of the Chinese character version of the dialogue.

Fifth and sixth hours: oral drills, including the ones specifically structured, and the written exercises adapted by the teacher for oral drills. The written exercises are to be used as homework assignments, to be completed and handed in during the fifth and sixth hours of the next unit. When necessary and for the purpose of variation to avoid monotony, the teacher may do some of the written exercises in class.

Seventh hour: review of the vocabulary tabulations or serial listings if any of them have been studied and still require reviewing. Discussion of problems and questions the students may have encountered in the reading material studied at home. The reading material is to be used mainly for self-study at home.

The eighth hour or a fraction thereof: quizzes and review of units studied earlier. Actually, the teacher should feel free to use quizzes during any hour to reinforce the learning. All exercises suggested in each unit can be adapted for use as quizzes.

Wherever possible, the reading materials include information on Chinese culture which has been touched upon in the dialogue of each unit. The teacher may reserve a few minutes in a convenient class hour, or if possible, arrange a weekly Chinese hour to discuss these cultural subjects. The discussion should be preferably carried out in Chinese. However, depending upon the availability of other cultural materials and the situation of the class, the teacher may have to make certain allowance in using Chinese exclusively to discuss culture.

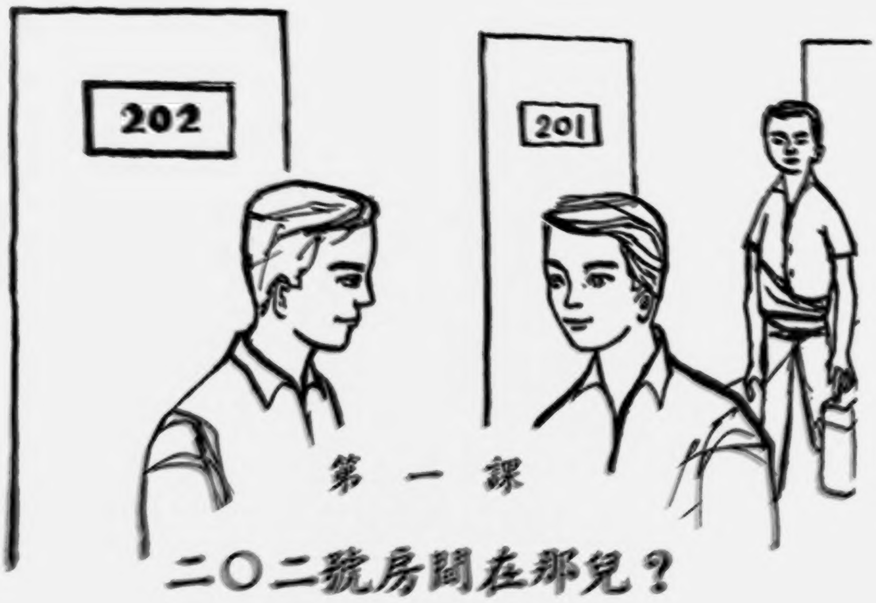
TABLE OF CONTENTS

Unit I Where is Room 202? 1
Unit II Little Hwáng's Radio 22
Unit III The Chinese Shadow Boxing 42
Unit IV A Geography Class 64
Unit V Syǎu Hwáng's Teeth Have Been Hurting Him for Three Days 82
Unit VI Let's See as Much as We Can 100
Unit VII Picnic 118
Unit VIII Smile 138
Unit IX How Much Does it Cost to Fix It? 156
Unit X Tell Me Another Story 176
Unit XI Weekend 196
Unit XII Guess What's in the Package 216
Unit XIII Standing in Line to Buy Tickets 234
Unit XIV Heavy Rain 254
Unit XV Observing a Wedding Ceremony 270
Unit XVI Going to a Lecture 288
Unit XVII The Mid-Autumn Festival 306
Unit XVIII 56412? or 56421? 322
Unit XIX Syǎu Hwáng's Bicycle is Broken 338
Unit XX The Home of Mr. Lǐ, the Teacher 356
Abbreviations 377
Structural Patterns Introduced in Levels I, II, and III 379
Vocabulary Introduced in Levels I, II, and III 389
Chinese Characters Introduced in Levels I, II, and III 479
Common Variant Forms of Characters Introduced 487

CHINESE-MANDARIN

LEVEL III

UNIT I



第一課

二〇二號房間在那兒？

對話

學生宿舍裏很熱鬧。學生們正在忙着往裏搬東西。參克手裏提着一個大箱子，站在二〇二號房間的門口兒問屋子裏的一個學生。

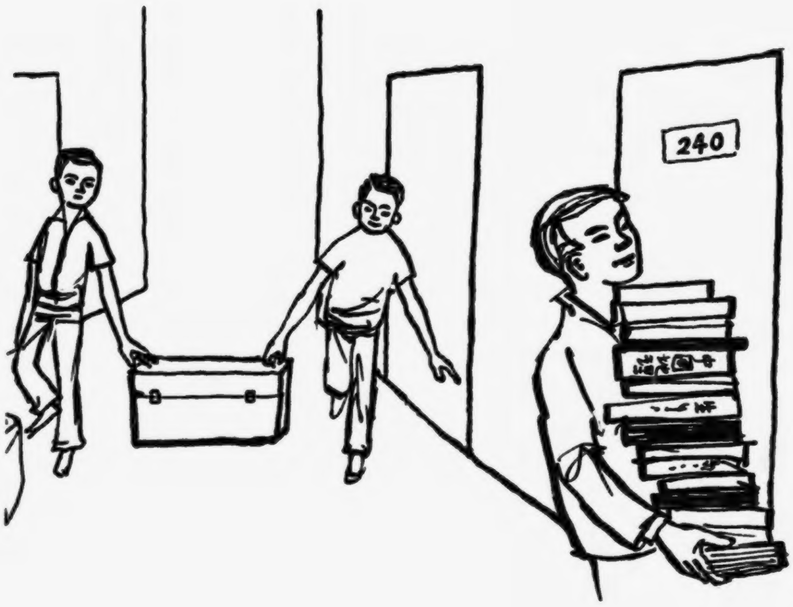
參：對不起，請問你，二〇二號房間在那兒？

王：這兒就是二〇二。你是不是參克？

參：是的。我叫參克。你貴姓？

王：我叫王先生。李老師讓我早一點兒到這兒來，好招呼招呼你。

Unit I



UNIT I

ÈRLÍNGÈR HÀU FÁNGJYĀN DZÀI NAR?

A. DIALOGUE

Sywésheng sùshèli hĕn rènau, sywéshengmén jèngdzài mángje wàng lĭ bān dūngsyi. Mài-ke shŏuli tíje yíge dà syāngdz, jàndzài èrlíngèr hàu fángjyānde ménkŏur, wèn wūdzlĭde yíge sywésheng.

Mài: Dwèibuchĭ. Chĭng wèn ni, èrlíngèr hàu fángjyān dzài năr?

Wáng: Jèr jyòu shr̀ èrlíngèr. Nĭ shr̀ bushr Mài-ke.

Mài: Shr̀de. Wŏ jyàu Mài-ke. Nĭ gwèisyìng?

Wáng: Wŏ jyàu Wáng Gwāngshēng. Lí lăushr̄ ràng wo dzău yìdyăr bān jìnlai, hău jāuhu jāuhu nĭ.

麥：謝謝你。王同學。

王：甭客氣

麥：我覺得這屋子還不錯，挺寬敞的。窗戶很大。這四張床的擺法兒也很好。

王：你現在到中國來好多了。從前宿舍裏一間屋子最少住八個人，用雙層床，房子也比現在舊的多。

麥：這樣一間住八個人啊？真像沙丁魚。你說從前男女生宿舍都一樣擠嗎？

王：我們有男生宿舍，也有女生宿舍。可是沒有"男女生宿舍！"

(麥克大笑。)

麥：哈哈，你真會開玩笑。你懂我說的是甚麼意思，對不對？

王：說老實話，我真不知道女生宿舍是不是也那麼擠。我從來沒進過女生宿舍的大門。

Mài: Syèsye ni. Wáng túngsywé.

Wáng: Béng kèchi.

Mài: Wŏ jywéde jèi wūdz hái bútswò. Tĭng kwānchangde. Chwānghu hĕn dà. Jèi sz̀jāng chwángde bái fár yé hén hău.

Wáng: Nĭ syàndzài dàu Jūnggwó lái hău dwō le. Tsúngchyán sùshèli yĭjyān wūdz dzwèi shău jù bágè rén, yùng shwāngtséng chwáng, fángdz yé bĭ syàndzài jyòude dwō.

Mài: Jèi yàng yĭjyān jù bágè rén a? Jēn syàng shādīngyú. Nĭ shwō tsúngchyán nán nyŭshēng sùshè dōu yīyàng jĭ ma?

Wáng: Wŏmen yŏu nánshēng sùshè, yé yóu nyŭshēng sùshè. Kĕshr̀ méiyou "nán-nyŭshēng sùshè!"

(Mài-ke dàsyàu.)

Mài: Ha ha, nĭ jēn hwèi kāi wánsyàu. Nĭ dúng wŏ shwōde shr̀ shémma yìsz, dwèi budwei?

Wáng: Shwō lăushrhwà, wŏ jēn bùjrdàu nyŭshēng sùshè shr̀ bushr yĕ nèmma jĭ. Wŏ tsúnglái méi jìngwò nyŭshēng sùshède dàmén.

（麥克把書放在洗臉架上。）

王：嘿，麥克。那個架子是放毛巾的。

麥：噢，是嗎？嘿，這個玩藝兒很好。

王：牙膏，牙刷跟肥皂也可以放在
上邊兒。

麥：洗澡間跟廁所離我們屋子遠不遠？

王：不太遠，在樓梯的那頭兒。

麥：飯廳呢？

王：下樓梯，出了門口兒往右一拐就是。

麥：等一會兒我們出去看看好不好？
省得到時候找不着。

王：你很關心吃飯跟上廁所的事情啊！

麥：哈哈。你收拾好了沒有？

王：好了。

麥：我們走吧！

王：O. K.

Unit I

(Mài-ke bă shū fàngdzài syĭlyăn jyàr shang.)

Wáng: Hei, Mài-ke. Nèige jyàdz shr̀ fàng máujīnde.

Mài: Ou, shr̀ ma? Hei! Jèige wányèr hén hău.

Wáng: Yágāu, yáshwār gēn féidzàu yé kéyi fàng dzài shàngbyār.

Mài: Syĭdzăujyān gēn tsèswŏ lĭ wŏmen wūdz ywăn buywăn?

Wáng: Bú tàiywăn. Dzài lóutīde nèitóur.

Mài: Fàntīng ne?

Wáng: Syà lóutī, chūle ménkŏur wàng yòu yìgwăi jyòu shr̀.

Mài: Dĕng yìhwĕr wŏmen chūchyù kànkan hău buhău?
Shĕngde dàu shŕhour jăubùjáu.

Wáng: Nĭ hĕn gwāngsyīn chr̄fàn gēn shàng tsèswŏde shr̀ching a!

Mài: Ha ha. Nĭ shōushr hăule méiyou?

Wáng: Hăule.

Mài: Wŏmen dzŏu ba!

Wáng: O.K.

CHINESE-MANDARIN III

WHERE IS ROOM 202?

A. DIALOGUE

The boys' dormitory is bustling with activities. The boys are in the process of moving in. Mike, with a large suitcase in hand, stands at the doorway of room 202, and asks another student in the room.

Mike: Excuse me. May I ask you where Room 202 is?
Wáng: This is 202. Are you Mike?

Mike: Yes. I am Mike. And your name please?
Wáng: My name is Wáng Gwāngshēng. Mr. Lee, the teacher, asked me to move in a little earlier to help you.

Mike: Oh, thank you, Mr. Wáng.
Wáng: Don't mention it.

Mike: I think this room is quite nice. It's spacious. The windows are large, and the arrangement of these four beds is also very good.
Wáng: It's much better for you to come to China now. In the past, each room in the dormitory at least accommodated eight persons, using double-deck beds. The building was also much older than now.

Mike: Eight persons lived in one room like this? That's really like sardines. Did you say that in the past both the boys' and the girls' dormitories were equally crowded?
Wáng: We have the boys' dormitory, we also have the girls' dormitory. But we don't have a "boy-girl dormitory!"

(Mike laughs.)

Mike: Ha ha, you really know how to crack a joke. You understood what I meant, didn't you?

Wáng: Truthfully, I really don't know if the girls' dormitory is as crowded. I have never even entered the door of the girls' dormitory.

(Mike places his books on the rack for toilet articles.)

Wáng: Hey, Mike, that rack is for the towels.
Mike: Oh, is that so? Hey! This thing is very neat.

Wáng: Toothpaste, toothbrush, and soap can also go there.
Mike: Are the bathroom and the toilet far from our room?

Wáng: Not very far. They are on the other side of the stairs.
Mike: What about the dining room?

Wáng: You go downstairs, step outside, and make a right turn. It's right there.
Mike: In a little while let's go take a look, is that alright? We would avoid the trouble of not finding them when time comes.

Wáng: You are very concerned about the business of eating and going to the bathroom.
Mike: Ha ha. Are you all set?

Wáng: All Set.
Mike: Let's go!

Wáng: O. K.

B. VOCABULARY 生字

(The underlined characters are required. The user of this list himself should be able to distinguish among the rest which ones have already been learned in Levels I and II.)

sùshè	N	宿舍	dormitory
fángjyān	N	房間	room
wòshr̀	N	臥室	bedroom
syídzǎujyān	N	洗澡間	bathroom
tsèswǒ	N	厠所	toilet, lavatory
chúfáng	N	厨房	kitchen
chwānghu	N	窗户	window
chyáng	N	牆	wall
lóutī	N	樓梯	stairs
chwáng	N	床	bed
shémma	proN(Adj)	甚麼	what
shwāngtséng chwáng	N	雙層床	double-deck bed
shūjwōr	N	書棹	desk
syǐlyǎn jyàr	N	洗臉架	wash-basin stand
wányèr	N	玩藝兒	thing; gadget; stuff
fángdzū	N	房租	rent (on house, room)
shādīng yú	N	沙丁魚	sardine
dzū	V	租	rent
gwǎi	V	拐	turn

shōushr	V	收拾	pick up, gather together, arrange, tidy up
dzwèishǎu	A	最少	least
tǐng	A	挺	most (superlative)
swéirán... kěshr̀	MA	雖然…可是	although ... but
āñjing	Adj	安靜	quiet, peaceful
kwānchang	Adj	寬敞	spacious
Wǒde tyān a!	IE	我的天哪	Good Heavens!
báifǎr	IE	擺法兒	arrangement
shwō lǎushŕ hwà	IE	說老實話	frankly speaking

VOCABULARY DRILL

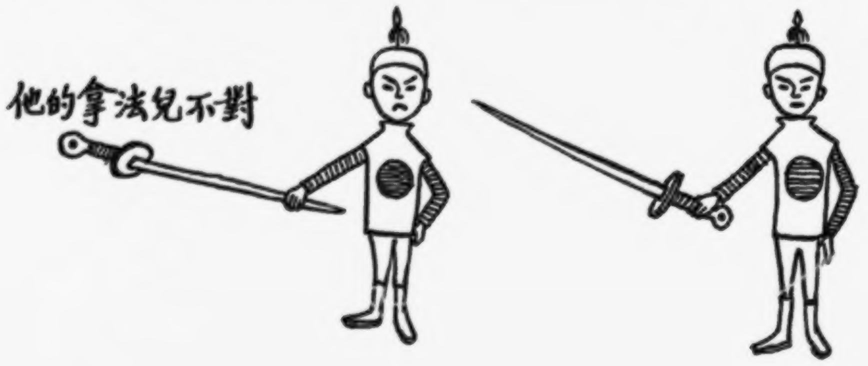
sùshè	Sùshède wàitou yǒu hěn dwō shù.
fángjyān	Wǒmende fāngdz yǒu sz̀jyān fángjyān.
wòshr̀	Jèijyān wòshr̀ hěn dà.
syǐdzǎujyān	Syǐdzǎujyān dzài wòshr̀de lǐtou.
tsèswǒ	Tā dzěmma hái dzài tsèswóli ne?
chúfáng	Lǐ Syáujye dzài chúfángli chr̄ dūngsyi ne.
chwānghu	Chígwài! Jèijyān fángjyān méiyou chwānghu.
chyáng	Jèijyān fángjyānde chyáng shr̀ húngde.
lóutī	Chǐng wèn ni, lóutī dzài nǎr?
chwáng	Búyàu bǎ nèiwǎn tāng fàng dzài chwángshang.
shwāngtséng chwáng	Nǐmen lyǎngge rén yùng shwāngtséng chwáng.
shūjwōr	Jèijāng shūjwōr hén hǎukàn.
syǐlyǎn jyàr	Chǐng ni búyàu dzwò dzài syǐlyǎn jyàr shang.
wányèr	Jèige wányèr jēn yǒu yìsz.
fángdzū	Jèige fángdzde fángdzū gwèi bugwei?

shādīng yú	Yíge chìchēli dzwòle shŕge rén? Jēn syàng shādīng yú.
kāi wánsyàu	Tā hén syǐhwan kāi wánsyàu.
dzū	Wǒ dzūle yíge fángdz.
gwǎi	Wàng dūng yì gwǎi jyòu shr̀ sùshè.
shōushr	Bǎ wūdzlide dūngsyi shōushr shōushr.
dzwèishǎu	Jèmma hǎude fángdz, fángdzū dzwèisháu déi wǔshŕkwài chyán.
tǐng	Jèijyàn wòshr̀ tǐng dà.
swéirán. . . kěshr̀	Jèige fángdz swéirán búdà kěshr hěn fāngbyan.
ānjing	Jèige dìfang hěn ānjing.
kwānchang	Jèijyān chúfáng hěn kwānchang.
Wǒde tyān a!	Wǒde tyān a! Jèige syāngdz dzěmma jèmma dà ya.
bǎifar	Jèisyē chwángde bǎifar hén hǎu.
shwō lǎushŕ hwà	Shwō lǎushŕ hwà, wǒ bù syǐhwan jèige bǎifar.

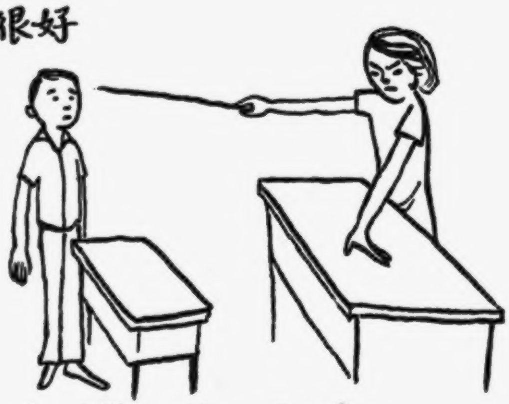
C. USAGE

1. fǎr

這些花兒的放法兒很好看	The way the flowers are arranged is very pretty.
這個人的想法兒很奇怪	The way this man thinks is very strange.



這位老師的教法兒很好



2. dzǎu, wǎn 早、晚

Dzǎu and wǎn may function as a moveable adverb. To indicate a future action, the verb may follow or precede the modifier.

他明天要早(晚)來	He is coming early (late) tomorrow.
他明天要早(晚)一點兒來	He is coming a little earlier (later) tomorrow.
他明天要來早(晚)一點兒	He is coming a little earlier (later) tomorrow.

To indicate a completed action, the verb usually precedes dzǎu or wǎn.

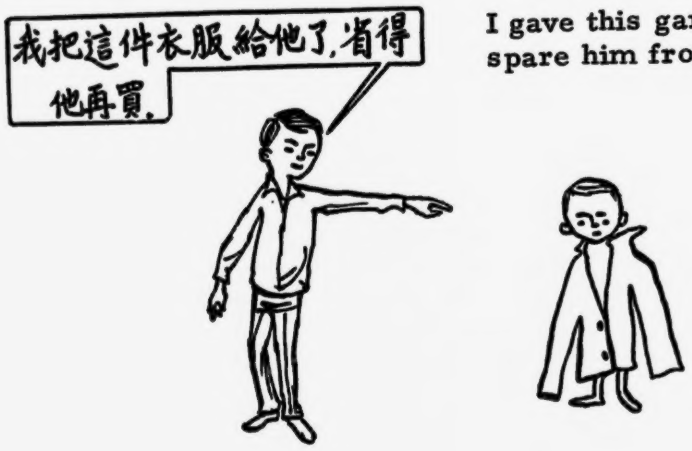
昨天他來早(晚)了	Yesterday he came early (late).
上個月他來早(晚)了一點兒	Last month he came a little earlier (later).
去年他來早(晚)了一點兒	Last year he came a little earlier (later).
今天他起早(晚)了一點兒	Today he got up a little earlier (later).

Note: le always precedes yìdyǎr.

3. hǎu, shěngde 好, 省得

In the following examples, hǎu 好 preceding a verb suggests that the given condition can be accomplished. Shěngde suggests that the ensuing condition can be avoided.

你早點兒來好跟我一塊兒到車站去	You come a little earlier so that you can go to the station with me.
你快一點兒來,好幫他做事.	You come a little sooner in order to help him.
請你告訴我,你住在那兒,我好去看你。	Please tell me where you live so that I can go to see you.
跟他再說一次省得他忘了.	Tell him once more so that he will not forget.


我把這件衣服給他了,省得他再買.

I gave this garment to him to spare him from buying it.

4. jù 住

這麼小的房間住八個人,太多了.	It is too crowded for eight persons to occupy (live in) such a room.

In this case, jù functions as a transitive verb.

這個棹子可以坐十個人.	This table can accommodate ten people.

這個屋子住六個人. This room accommodates six people.

D. DIALOGUE EXPANSION 對話應用

A. Nǐ jùdzài nǎr?
B. Wǒ jùdzài Shànghǎi Lù.

A. Shànghǎi Lù nèi dìfang bútswò. Dàu nǎr chyù dōu hěn fāngbyàn.
B. Fùjìn yé hěn ānjing.

A. Jùde dìfang yídìng děi ānjing. Wō jèige rén a, jyòu syǐhwan ānjing.
B. Nǐde fángdz shr̀ dzūde ma?

A. Shr̀ dzūde. Yígùng yóu wǔge wūdz. Yìjyān kètīng, lyǎngjyān wòshr̀, lìngwài háiyǒu syídzǎujyān gēn chúfáng.
B. Fángdzū dwōshau chyán?

A. Yíge ywè lyǎngchyān kwài chyán.
B. Wǒde tyān a! Dzěmma nèmma gwèi ya?

E. ORAL DRILLS

FLUENCY DRILL

Báifǎr
Jèijāng chwángde báifǎr
Jèijāng chwángde báifǎr hěn chígwài
Tā jèijāng chwángde báifǎr hěn chígwài.

Syángfǎr
Jèige syángfǎr
Jèige rénde syángfǎr
Jèige rénde syángfǎr dwèi
Jèige rénde syángfǎr hěn dwèi.

Nǎr?
Dzài nǎr?
Tsèswǒ dzài nǎr?
Chǐng wèn tsèswǒ dzài nǎr?
Chǐng wèn ni, tsèswǒ dzài nǎr?

Nǎr?
Dzài nǎr?
Lóutī dzài nǎr?
Chǐng wèn lóutī dzài nǎr?
Chǐng wèn ni, lóutī dzài nǎr?

Yìdyǎr
Dzǎuyìdyǎr
Dzǎuyìdyǎr bān
Ràng wó dzǎuyìdyǎr bān jìnlai
Lǐ Lǎushr̄ ràng wo dzǎu yìdyǎr bān jìnlai.

Yìdyǎr
Dzǎu yìdyǎr
Dzǎu yìdyǎr bān
Dzāu yìdyǎr bān jìnlai
Dzǎu yìdyǎr bān jìnlai hǎu jāuhu jāuhu ni.

Yìdyǎr
Dzǎu yìdyǎr
Dzǎu yìdyǎr lái
Dyǎu yìdyǎr lái hǎu gēn wo yíkwàr chyù
Dzǎu yìdyǎr lái hǎu gēn wo yíkwàr dàu sùshè chyù
Chǐng ni dzǎu yìdyǎr lái hǎu gēn wo yíkwàr dàu sùshè chyù.

Shěngde
Shěngde tā dzài mǎi
Jèijyàn yīshang gěi tā shěngde tā dzài mǎi
Bǎ jèijyàn yīshang gěi tā shěngde tā dzài mǎi
Wó bǎ jèijyàn yīshang gěi tāle shěngde tā tzài mǎi.

Dzǎu
Dzǎu lái
Dzǎu láile
Wó dzǎu láile
Wó dzǎu jyòu láile.

Dzǎu
Lái dzǎule
Wǒ lái dzǎule
Wǒ jīntyan lái dzǎule
Wǒ jīntyan lái dzǎule yíge jūngtóu.

Wǎn
Lái wǎnle
Tā lái wǎnle
Tā jīntyan lái wǎnle
Tā jīntyan lái wǎnle yíge jūngtóu.

Unit I

REPLACEMENT DRILL

(Student responds by inserting the replacement words in the places indicated.)

Jèige réndе syángfǎr hěn dwèi.
hǎu
Jèisyē
Jèisyē chwángde báifǎr
hěn chígwài

Chǐng ni dzǎu yìdyǎr lái.
wǎn
chyù
Chǐng tā
yíge jūngtóu

Wǒ jīntyan lái dzǎule yíge jūngtóu.
lyǎngge jūngtóu
dzwótyan
wǎnle
yìdyǎr

Dzǎu yìdyǎr lái hǎu gēn wo yíkwàr chyù.
Dzǎu yìdyǎr chr̄fàn
hǎu gēn ta yíkwàr chyù

Wǒ syān chyù kànkan shěngde dàu shŕhour jǎubujáu.
wènwen
bùjr̄dau
Wǒ syān chyù gàusung ta

Wǒ bǎ jèijāng chwáng jyè gei ta shěngde ta mǎi.
jèiběn shū
shěngde tā dzài mǎi
Wǒ bǎ jèijyàn yīshang gěi tale

CHINESE-MANDARIN III

RESPONSE DRILL

A. Nǐ wèishémma dzǎu yìdyǎr chr̄fàn?
B. Wó dzǎu yìdyǎr chr̄fàn hǎu gēn tā yíkwàr chyù wár.
hǎu chyù kàn dyànyǐngr
hǎu dàu sùshè chyù
hǎu dàu sùshè chyù jāuhu
jāuhu ta

A. Nǐ wèi shémma bǎ nèijyàn yīshang gěi tale.
B. Wó bǎ nèijyàn yīshang gěi tale shěngde tā mǎi.
shěngde tā dzài mǎi
shěngde tā lěng
shěngde tā jāulyáng

A. Nǐ dzwótyan lái wǎnle dwōshau shŕhour?
B. Wǒ dzwótyan lái wǎnle yíge jūngtóu.
shŕfēn jūng
yíge dwō jūngtóu
yìdyǎr

A. Fángjyánli shémmade báifǎr hén hǎu?
B. Fángjyānli chwángde báifǎr hén hǎu.
shūjwōr
syílyǎn jyàr
shwāngtséng chwáng

A. Nǐ wèi shémma syǐhwan jùdzài jèige dìfang?
B. Yīnwei jèige dìfang ānjing.
kwānchang
fángdzū pyányi
dàu nǎr chyù dōu fāngbyan

A. Nǐ syān shōushr něijyān fángjyān?
B. Wǒ syān shōushr wòshr̀.
tsèswǒ
chúfáng
syídzǎujyān

Unit I

F. EXERCISES 練習

1. Fill in the blanks with dzǎu lái yìdyǎr, or dzǎu yìdyǎr lái, or lái dzǎu le, or dzǎu lái: 用“早來點兒”“早一點兒來”“來早了一點兒”“早來”填空：

   a. Wǒ syàywè děi ______________________.
   b. Tā dzwótyan ____________________ dwōshǎu shŕhour?
   c. Tā chyùnyan ____________________.
   d. Jīntyan dzǎushang wǒ búywànyì ____________________.
   e. Nǐ míngtyan kéyi bukeyi ______________________.

2. Complete the following sentences with either shěngde or hǎu: 把省得或是好填進下面的句子裡：

   a. Dzwòwán gūngkè ___________ chūchyu wár.
   b. Syàndzai jyòu gēn tā shwō __________ yìhwěr wàngle.
   c. Syān mǎi pyàu _________ dàu shŕhour pyàu méiyǒu le.
   d. Wǒ chyù ná chyán ____________ chyù mǎi dūngsyi.
   e. Dzáu dyǎr shwèijyàu míngtyan ____________ dzáu dyár chǐlai.
   f. Byé gěi ta chyán ___________ tā yòu chyù mǎi dūngsyi.
   g. Wǒ yídìng déi dzáudyǎr hweijyā _____________ wǒ māma bú fàngsyīn.

3. Answer the following questions: 回答下面的問題：

   1. Mài-kede wūdz shr̀ dwōshau hàu?
   2. Nǐ syǐhwan nǐde fángdz ma?
   3. Jèige sywésheng sùshè, yíge wūdz jù jǐge rén?
   4. Mài-ke wūdzde chyáng byār shang yǒu yíge jyàdz, shr̀ dzwò shémmade?
   5. Wèi shémma Wáng Gwāngshēng déi dzǎu yìdyǎr bān jìnlai?
   6. Wūdzli chúle chwáng yǐwài hái yǒu shémma?
   7. Wèi shémma tāmen yàu chyù kànkan fàntīng dzài nǎr?
   8. Nǐ syǐhwan jùdzài rènaude dìfang háishr̀ ānjingde dìfang?

CHINESE-MANDARIN III

離家的一年

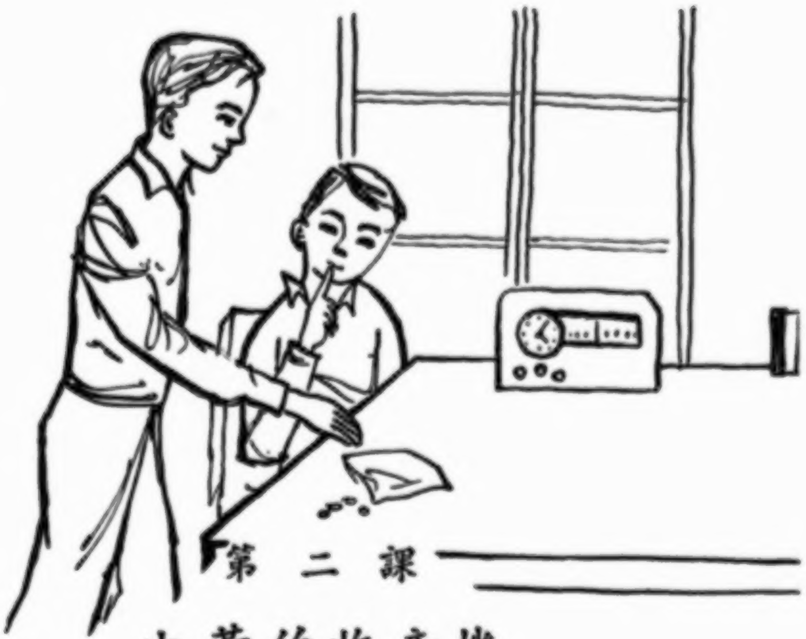
(節自冰心"離家的一年")

房間裏已有兩個同學，正在洗臉。看見他來了，知道是住在這房間裏的新同學。好像很奇怪他的①身材那麼小。所以都走過來跟他②打招呼。又叫③工友搬行李進來。他一看門後貼着一張紙，三個名字，是黃克強、李元，最後的就是他。

那個大的同學說：「小黃，你先帶他吃早飯去罷。這房間的事你不用管了。」小黃就跟他出來，一邊走着，一邊問他是那裏人，④從前在什麼學校念書，現在入的那一班。他一一都說了。他覺得小黃很有意思，只有十五、六歲的樣子，走路⑤永遠是跳着。

Unit I

1.	身材	shēntsái	physique
2.	打招呼	dǎjauhu	greet
3.	工友	gūngyǒu	janitor; porter
4.	從前	tsúngchyán	previously
5.	永遠	yúngywǎn	always



第 二 課

小黃的收音機

對　　話

二〇二號房間裏住着四個人。麥克，王光生，還有後來搬進來的李元跟黃克強。黃克強的年紀比較小，大家都叫他小黃。小黃的收音機裏正在放着音樂。

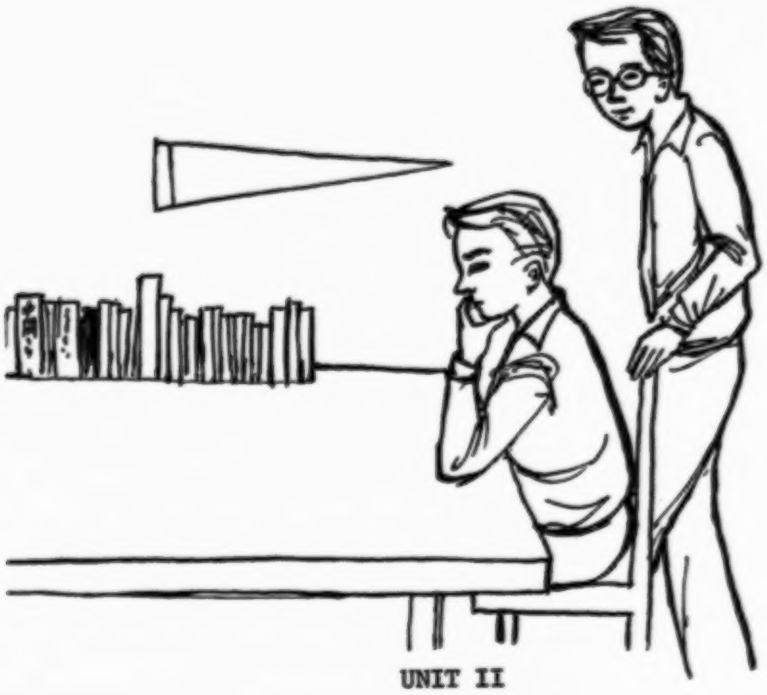
麥：小黃，你這架收音機的聲音很好。

黃：是的。聲音到是不錯。可是………

（收音機忽然停了。小黃過去打了收音機一下，收音機又響了。）

李：小黃，你這個玩藝兒真蹩脚。

Unit II



UNIT II

SYĂU HWÁNG DE SHŌUYĪNJĪ

A. DIALOGUE

Èrlíngèr hàu fángjyānli jùje sz̀ge rén. Mài-ke, Wáng Gwāngshēng, hái yŏu hòulái bān jìnláide Lĭ Ywán gēn Hwáng Kèchyáng. Hwáng Kèchyángde nyánji bijyáu syău, dàjyā dōu jyàu ta Syău Hwáng. Syău Hwángde shōuyīnjīli jèngdzài fàngje yīnywè.

Mài: Syău Hwáng, nĭ jèijyà shōuyīnjīde shēngyīn hén hău.

Hwáng: Shr̀de. Shēngyin dàu shr̀ butswò. Kĕshr̀...

(Shōuyīnjī hūrán tíngle. Syău Hwáng gwòchyù dăle shōuyīnjī yísyàr. Shōuyīnjī yòu syăngle.)

Lĭ: Syău Hwáng, nĭ jèige wányèr jēn byējyău.

麥：我在美國的那架收音機也跟小
黃的差不多，我天天早上得踢他
一脚才響。

李：這是甚麼廣播電台？

黃：是華聲廣播電台。他們的節目
向來都很好。

李：我覺得他們的音樂節目比別的電台都
好。哎！王光生那兒去了？

麥：剛出去。不知道上那兒去了。恐怕
去買東西去了。

廣播員：剛才播送的是爵士音樂。
下面請聽披頭的"我要拉着你的手。"

麥：沒想到世界上甚麼地方都有人
喜歡披頭。

黃：披頭這名字翻的真不錯。跟英文的
發音差不多。同時"披頭"中國話的意思
正好是"披頭散髮。"

（收音機裏放着爵士音樂。）

黃：嘿，麥克，你不喜歡爵士音樂嗎？

麥：不太喜歡。我倒覺得中國音樂很
有意思。

Unit II

Mài: Wŏ dzài Mĕigwo yùngde nèijyà shōuyīnjī yé gēn Syău Hwángde chàbudwō. Wŏ tyāntyān dzăushang dĕi tī ta yìjyău tsái syăng.

Lī: Jèi shr̀ shémma gwăngbwo dyàntái?

Hwáng: Shr̀ Hwáshēng Gwăngbwo Dyàntái. Tāmende jyémù syànglái dōu hén hău.

Lī: Wŏ jywéde tāmende yīnywè jyémù bī byéde dyàntái dōu hău. Ei, Wáng Gwāngshēng năr chyùle?

Mài: Gāng chūchyu. Bùjrdàu shàng năr chyùle. Kŭngpà chyù măi dūngsyi chyùle.

Gwăngbwo Ywán: Gāngtsái bwōsùngde shr̀ jywéshr̀ yīnywè. Syàmyàn chīng tīng Pītóude "Wŏ Yàu Lāje Nīde Shŏu."

Mài: Méi syăngdàu shr̀jyè shang shémma dīfāng dōu yŏu rén syīhwān Pītóu.

Hwáng: Pītóu jèi mīngdz fānde jēn bútswò, gēn Yīngwénde fāyīn chàbudwō. Túngshŕ Pītóu Jūnggwó hwà de yìsz jènghău shr̀ "pītóu sànfà."

(Shōuyīnjīli fàngje jywéshr̀ yīnywè.)

Hwáng: Hei, Mài-ke, nī bùsyīhwan jywéshr̀ yīnywè ma?

Mài: Bú tài syīhwan. Wŏ dàu jywéde Jūnggwó yīnywè hén yŏu yìsz.

黄：有人說，有三個東西代表美國
文化：汽車，電影兒，爵士音樂。
麥克，你說對不對？

麥：這話不完全對。要把美國的人
跟東西都放在一塊兒，才能代表
美國的文化。

廣播員：爵士音樂播送完了。下面報告新聞
首先報告國外新聞。聯合國的消息：
中國代表贊成組織一個調查團
到南非去………

（大家正聽着新聞的時候，王光生
進來了。把手裏拿的一包東西往棹子
上一扔。）

王：來，來，來，吃花生米。我請客………

黄：噓！聽新聞。

王：沒關係。來，來，一邊兒吃，一邊兒聽。

Unit II

Hwáng: Yŏu rén shwō, yŏu sāngé dūngsyi dàibyău Mĕigwó wénhwà: chīchē, dyànyĭngr, jywéshr̀ yīnywè. Mài-ke, nĭ shwō dwèi budwei?

Mài: Jèi hwà bù wánchyán dwèi. Yàu ba Mĕigwóde rén gēn dūngsyi dōu fàngdzài yíkwàr, tsái néng dàibyáu Mĕigwóde wénhwà.

G.Y.: Jywéshr̀ yīnywè bwōsùngwánle. Syàmyàn bàugàu syīnwén. Shŏusyān bàugàu gwówài syīnwén. Lyánhégwóde syāusyi: Jūnggwó dàibyău dzànchéng dzŭjŕ yíge dyàuchátwán dàu Nánfēi chyù...

(Dàjyā jèng tīngje syīnwénde shŕhour, Wáng Gwāngshēng jìnláile. Bá shŏuli náde yìbāu dūngsyi wàng jwōdz shang yìrēng.)

Wáng: Lái, lái, lái, chr̄ hwāshēngmĭ. Wó chĭngkè...

Hwáng: Syu! Tīng syīnwén.

Wáng: Mēigwānsyi. Lái, lái, yìbyār chr̄, yìbyār tīng.

CHINESE-MANDARIN III

LITTLE HWANG'S RADIO

A. DIALOGUE

Four persons live in room 202: Mike, Wáng Gwāngshēng, Lǐ Ywán, and Hwáng Kèchyáng; the latter two moved in a little later. Hwáng Kèchyáng is somewhat younger; everybody calls him little Hwáng. Little Hwáng's radio is playing.

Mike: Syǎu Hwáng, the sound of your radio is very good.
Hwáng: Yes. The sound is very good but......

(The radio suddenly stops. Syǎu Hwáng walks over to hit it once. Then the radio is playing again.)

Lǐ: Syǎu Hwáng, that stuff of yours is really lousy.
Mike: The radio I used in America was about the same as Syǎu Hwáng's. Every morning I had to kick it once before it would work.

Lǐ: What station is this?
Hwáng: This is Hwáshēng Broadcasting Station. Their program has always been very excellent.

Lǐ: I believe that their music program is better than any other station's. Hey, where did Wáng Gwāngshēng go?
Mike: He just walked out. I don't know where he went. Perhaps he went out to buy something.

The Radio Commentator: We have just played some jazz music for you. Next we want you to listen to the Beatles' "I Want to Hold Your Hand."
Mike: I didn't expect that there are people all over the world who like the Beatles.
Hwáng: The name Beatle is very well translated, with its sounds very close to their original English sounds. At the same time the expression pī-tóu in Chinese means coincidently, "Mop-Top Hair."

Unit II

(From over the radio comes jazz music.)

Hwáng: Hey, Mike, don't you like jazz music?
Mike: Not very much. I find Chinese music very interesting.

Hwáng: Some people say there are three things that represent American culture: cars, movies, and jazz music. Mike, do you agree?
Mike: This is not completely correct. Only when American people and American things are placed together can American culture be represented.

The Radio Commentator: We have just finished playing for you some jazz music. The following is news. First we report foreign news. A dispatch from the United Nations says that the Chinese delegate supported the formation of a fact finding committee to go to South Africa...

(As everybody is listening to the news, Wáng Gwāngshēng comes in. He tosses the package that he has in his hand on the table.)

Wáng: Come, come, come, let's have some peanuts. It's my party...
Hwáng: Shh! Listen to the news.

Wáng: It's alright. Come, come, let's eat while listening.

B. VOCABULARY

(The underlined characters are required.)

gwǎngbwo dyàntái	N	廣播電臺	radio broadcasting station
jyémù	N	節目	program
syīnwén	N	新聞	news
syāusyi	N	消息	news; information
shr̀jyè	N	世界	world
Lyánhégwó	N	聯合國	The United Nations
dyàuchátwán	N	調查團	investigating team; fact-finding committee
gèwèi	N	各位	you gentlemen (addressing a group)
fāyīn	N	發音	pronunciation; sound
hwāshēngmǐ	N	花生米	peanuts
wénhwà	N	文化	culture
shēngyin	N	聲音	sound
-bāu	M	包	package; bag
bwōsùng	V	播送	broadcast
fānyì	V	翻譯	translate
bàugàu	V	報告	report
dzànchéng	V	贊成	approve; vote yes
rēng	V	扔	throw
dzǔjr̄	V	組織	organize

Unit II

shōuyīnjī	N	收音機	radio receiver
dàibyǎu	N	代表	representative
syǎng	V	響	sound
syànglái	A	向來	always
bǐjyǎu	A	比較	comparatively
shǒusyān	MA	首先	at first
syàmyàn	MA	下面	below; following; next
byéjyǎu	Adj	蹩脚	poor (in quality)
pītóu sànfà	IE	披頭散髮	unkempt hair; mop-top hair
tī ta yì jyǎu	IE	踢他一脚	give it (him) a kick

Use the vocabulary drill suggested in Unit I as an example to structure similar drills for this unit and all following units.

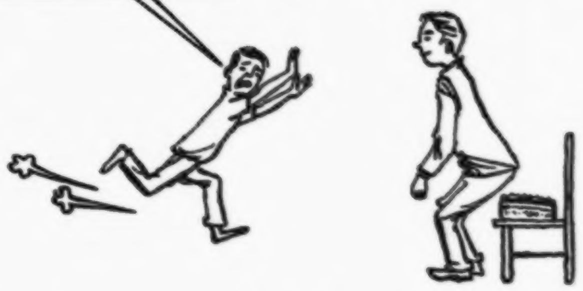
C. USAGE 字句用法

1. je 着

The suffix je indicates continuation of either the action itself or its result.

這個屋子裡住着四個人	This room is occupied by four persons. Four persons live (are actually living) in this room.
他口袋裡裝着很多東西 kǒudài jwāng	His pocket holds (is holding many things.

黑板上寫着幾個字. hēibǎn	Several words are written on the blackboard. (Note the passive voice here. cf. Level I, Unit XIII, Ta syěje dz̀. He is writing.)
牆上掛着一張畫兒	A picture is (hung) on the wall.
他穿着一件新衣裳	He wears (is wearing) a new garment.
這個椅子上放着一個蛋糕	A cake is (placed) on this chair.



Indicating action in progress (cf. Level I, Unit 13)

他吃着飯呢	He is eating.
他跟他太太說着話呢	He is talking to his wife.

2. bǐjyǎu 比較

Bǐjyǎu suggests "rather," "quite," or a comparative degree if the comparison is understood in the context.

他跑的比較快	He runs rather fast
pǎu 我比較喜歡開跑車 pǎuchē	I like driving sportscars better.

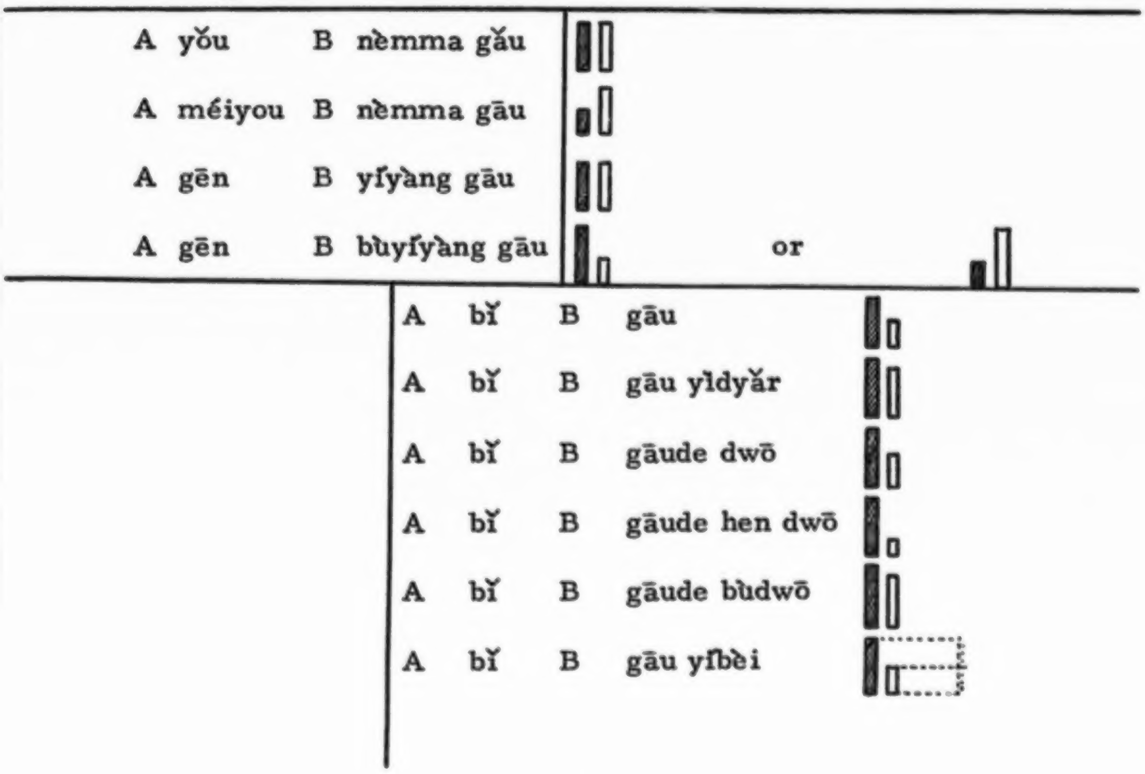
Unit II

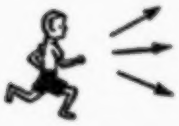
這本書比較貴	This book is quite expensive.
那張棹子比較高	That table is taller.
他年紀比較小	He is younger.
這兩件大衣,我比較喜歡那件	I like that coat better than this one.

bǐ比 better (cf. Level I, Unit 12)

他比你高	He is taller than you.
我比他喜歡 念書	I like to study more than he does.
他比我跑的快	He runs faster than I.

A ▨ B ▯ bǐ CV (cf. Level I, Unit 12)


A yǒu B nèmma gǎu
A méiyou B nèmma gāu
A gēn B yíyàng gāu
A gēn B bùyíyàng gāu or
A bǐ B gāu
A bǐ B gāu yìdyǎr
A bǐ B gāude dwō
A bǐ B gāude hen dwō
A bǐ B gāude bùdwō
A bǐ B gāu yíbèi

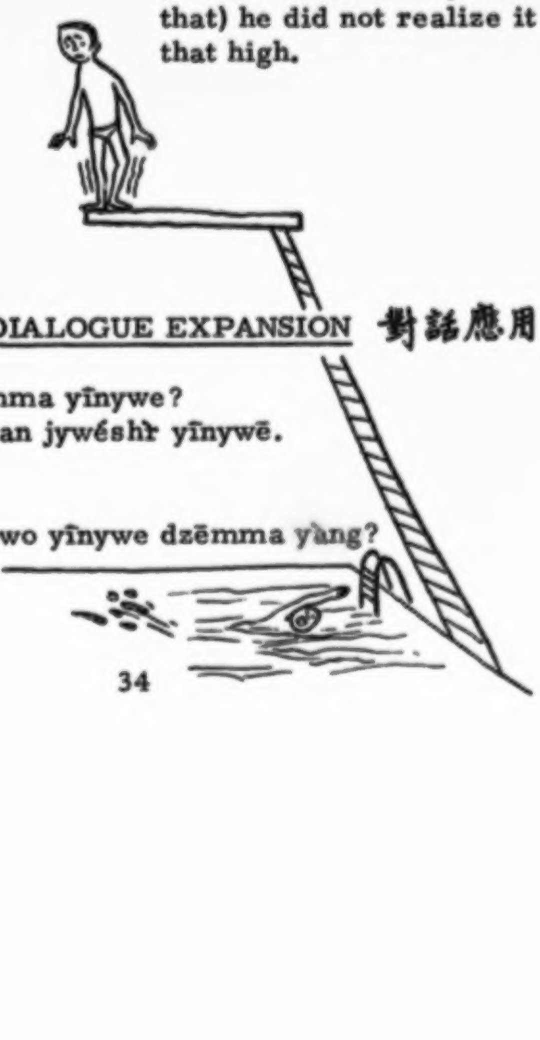


(Action understood) →	A		bǐ	B		kwài
	A	pǎude	bǐ	B	pǎude	kwài
	A		bǐ	B	pǎude	kwài
	A	pǎude	bǐ	B		kwài

3. yī (V) . . . jyòu 一…就

This construction suggests that what introduces immediately takes place after the action represented by the verb occurs.

他把東西往棹子上一扔就跟大家說···	As soon as he throws the thing on the table, he says to everybody...
往右一拐就是那個廣播電台	The moment you make a right turn, there is the radio station.
他往下一看,没想到這麼高.	He takes one look below him, (and he immediately knows that) he did not realize it was that high.



D. DIALOGUE EXPANSION 對話應用

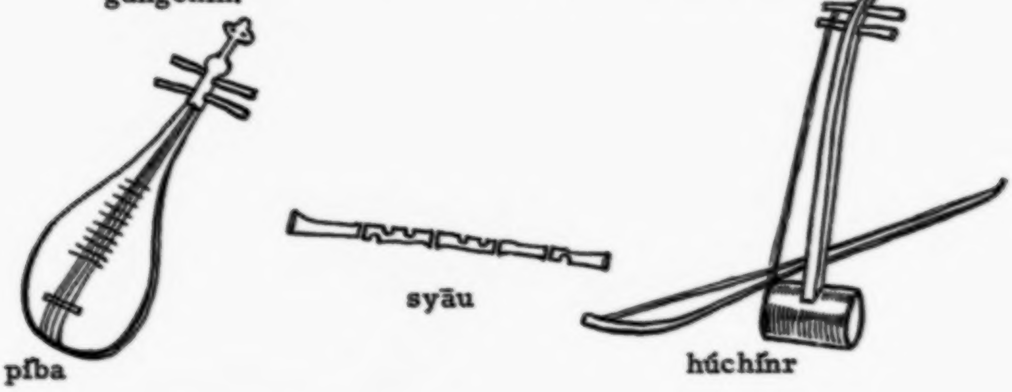
A. Ní syǐhwan shémma yīnywe?
B. Wó bǐjyáu syǐhwan jywéshr̀ yīnywē.

A. Wó yě shr̀.
B. Nǐ jywéde Jūnggwo yīnywe dzēmma yàng?

A. Wǒ bútài dǔng, kěshr̀ wó hén syǐhwan.
B. Wó syǐhwan Jūnggwode pípa.

A. Syāu yé hén hǎutīng.
B. Nǐ hwèi lā húchínr ma?

A. Búhwèi. Kěshr̀ wǒ hwèi chwēi syāu, yě hwèi tán yǐdyǎr gāngchín.



Note the following use of verbs:

chwēi syāu, chwēi lǎba, tán chín, lā húchínr, dǎ chyóu, dǎ dz̀, dǎ dyànhwà

E. ORAL DRILLS

FLUENCY DRILL

Fàng
Fàngje
Fàngje yīnywe
Jèngdzài fàngje yīnywe
Shōuyīnjīli jèngdzài fàngje yīnywe.

Gwà
Gwàje
Gwàje yǐjāng hwàr
Chyáng shang gwàje yǐjāng hwàr.

Chwān
Chwānje
Chwānje syīn yīshang
Chwānje yíjyàn syīn yīshang
Tā chwānje yíjyàn syīn yīshang.

Tīng
Tīngje
Tīngje syīnwén
Tīngje syīnwénde shŕhour
Jèngdzài tīngje syīnwénde shŕhour
Dàjyà jèngdzài tīngje syīnwénde shŕhour.

Bǐjyǎu
Bǐjyáu syǎu
Nyánjì bǐjyáu syǎu
Tāde nyánjì bǐjyáu syǎu
Tā dìdide nyánjì bǐjyáu syǎu.

Bǐjyǎu
Bǐjyáu syǐhwan
Bǐjyáu syǐhwan kāichē
Bǐjyáu syǐhwan kāi syīn chē
Wó bǐjyáu syǐhwan kāi syīn
chē.

Bǐ
Bǐ nèiběn shū gwèi
Jèiběn shū bǐ nèiběn gwèi.

Bǐ
Bǐ wǒ kwài
Tā pǎude bi wǒ kwài
Tā bǐ wó pǎude kwài.

Yī
Yìrēng
Wàng jwōdz shang yìrēng
Bǎ dūngsyi wàng jwōdz shang
yìrēng
Bǎ dūngsyi wàng jwōdz shang
yìrēng jyòu gēn dàjyà shwō.

Gwǎi
Yìgwǎi
Yìgwǎi jyòu shr̀
Wàng yòu yìgwǎi jyòu shr̀
Wàng yòu yìgwǎi jyòu shr̀
nèige gwǎngbwo dyàntài.

Shwō
Yìshwō
Yìshwō jyòu dǔng
Yìshwō tā jyòu dǔngle
Gēn ta yìshwō tā jyòu dǔngle
Wǒ gēn ta yìshwō tā jyòu
dǔngle.

REPLACEMENT DRILL

202 hàu fángjyānli jùje sz̀ge rén.
417 hàu
jànje
lyǎnge sywésheng
Lóutī shang

Jèige jwōdz shang fàngje yìjr̄ bǐ.
Nèijāng jř shang
syěje jǐje dz̀
Nèige shūjwōr shang
bǎije yìběn shū

Tā chwānje yíjyàn shīn yīshang.
húng yīshang
Tā náje
shōuyīnjī
Nèige gwǎngbwo ywán

Tāde nyánjì bǐjyáu syǎu.
dà
Tāmende fángjyān
wòshr̀
kwānchang

Wó bǐjyáu syǐhwan tīng Jūnggwo yīnywè.
jèige jyémù
Wó bǐjyǎu ài
chàng jèige gēr

Tā bǎ shū wàng jwōdz shang yìrēng.
yìbāu hwáshēngmǐ
yífàng
dàngāu
wàng yǐdz shang

RESPONSE DRILL

A. Nèige chyáng shang dōu gwàje shémma?
B. Nèige chyáng shang gwàje yìjāng hwàr.
gwàje yíjyàn yīshang
yíge jūng
yíge màudz
yìjāng hwàr
yíjyàn yīshang
Nèige chyáng shang gwàje sān...

A. Jèige wūdzli dōu fàngje shémma?
B. Jèige wūdzli fàngje lyǎng jāng chwáng.
fàngje yíjyà shōuyīnjī
lyǎngkwài dàngāu
yìjāng shūjwōr
yíjyà shōuyīnjī
Jèige wūdzli fàngje lyǎng...

A. Nǐ syǐhwan shémma jyémù?
B. Wó bǐjyáu syǐhwan yīnywe.
syīnwén
chàng gēr
jywéshr̀ yīnywe

A. Sywésheng dàibyǎu dzànchéng shémma?
B. Sywésheng dàibyǎu dzànchéng dzǔjr̄ yíge dyàuchátwán.
mǎi yíjyà shōuyījī
dzǔjr̄ yíge lyánhégwó
dzǔjr̄ yíge gwǎngbwo dyàntái

A. Ni wèi shémma syǐhwan jèige dyàntái?
B. Yīnwei jèige dyàntáide yīnywe jyémù bǐjyáu hǎu.
gwǎngbwo ywán
jywéshr̀ yīnywe
syīnwén jyémù

F. EXERCISES 練習

1. Complete the following sentences by using a verb with je: 用 verb-je 填空白:

a. Jwōdz shang __________ yíge chábēi.
b. Hēibǎn shang __________ jǐge dz̀.
c. Tā gēge __________ tā péngyou sùng gěi tāde yīshang.
d. Nǐde shū dzài wǒde jwōdz shang ________ ne.
e. Tāmen __________ ne.
f. Wáng Lǎushr̄ jèngdzài ________ fàn ne.
g. Jèisyē rén jèndzài __________ chín, ________ gēr.
h. Nèisyē rén jèngdzài __________ chyóu.
i. Yíwèi lǎu tàitai jèngdzài _____________ dyànhwà.

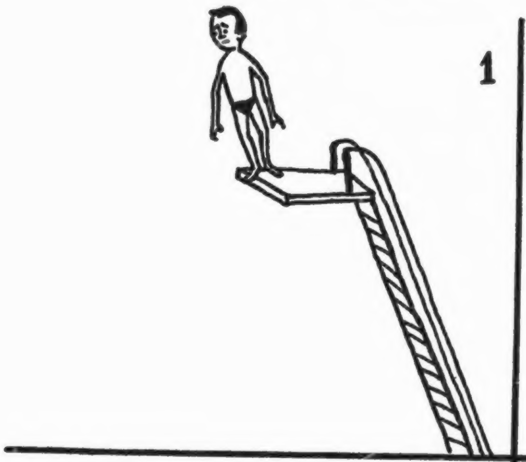
2. Complete the following sentences with either bǐjyǎu or bǐ: 用 bǐjyǎu 或是 bǐ 填空白:

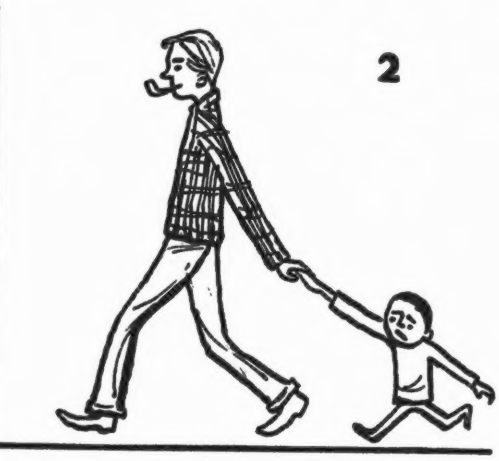
a. Tā kāichē ____________ tā kāide kwài.
b. Jèige pǎuchē ____________ gwèi.
c. Tā jr̄daude __________ chīngchu.
d. Jèige dyàntáide jyémù syànglái __________ byéde dyàntái hǎu.
e. Wǒ __________ syǐhwan Jūnggwo yīnywe.
f. Jèi lyǎngge jwōdz, wǒ _____________ syǐhwan jèige.
g. Wǒmen lyǎngge rén, tā _________ gāu. Tā _______ wǒ gāude dwō.

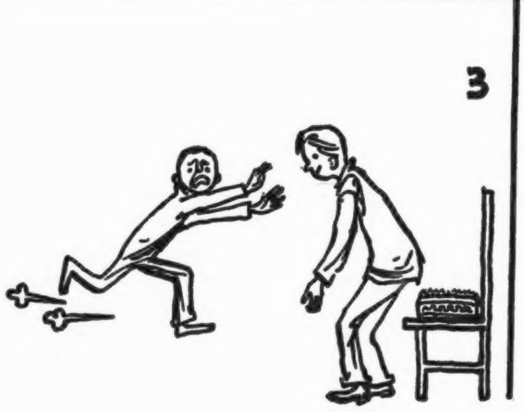
3. State in Chinese: 用中國話說:

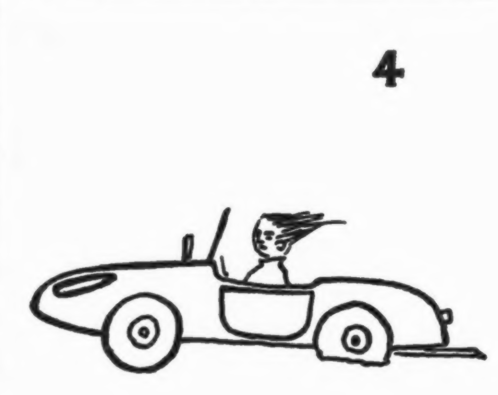
   a. Some Chinese characters are written on the chalkboard.
   b. I like this kind of paper better than the other kind.
   c. I like Hwáshēng Broadcasting Station better.
   d. He drives faster.
   e. She is wearing the clothes which her mother just bought for her.
   f. As soon as he saw that there were so many people, he wanted to leave.
   g. The door is open, but the windows are closed.
   h. That old lady is talking on the phone.
   i. He put things down and said to everybody.
   j. Make a right turn, you'll see the Broadcasting Station.

4. Give a brief Chinese description of each picture below:


1


2


3


4

台灣的無線電和電視

（節自今日的臺灣）

臺灣現在有四十幾個廣播電臺。廣播的節目裏中國音樂跟①西洋音樂比較多。另外還有新聞報告，②時事③討論，④話劇，⑤平劇，⑥地方戲，⑦名人⑧訪問，以及⑨專題演講等等。國語是⑩一般電臺用的標準話。聽收音機是多數人生活的⑪日常節目之一。鄉下⑫農村裏頭差不多每家都有收音機。近年來收音機做得也便宜了。自從那種很小的⑬晶子收音機出來以後，因為價錢很便宜，又很方便，聽收音機的人更多了。

電視是臺灣⑭新興的⑮事業。因為電視機比較貴，所以在一般的人家裏頭沒有。可是比較有錢的都買了電視機了。

電視的節目多半跟收音機差不多。流行歌曲，話劇，跟平劇的表演最多。⑯教育電視電臺還有一些⑰教學節目。

Unit II

1.	西洋	syīyáng	western
2.	時事	shŕshr̀	current affairs
3.	討論	tǎulwùn	discuss
4.	話劇	hwàjyù	spoken drama
5.	平劇	píngjyù	Peking opera
6.	地方劇	dìfāngsyì	folk drama
7.	名人	míngrén	well-known person
8.	訪問	fǎngwèn	interview
9.	專題演講	jwāntí yánjyǎng	special lecture
10.	一般	yìbān	general
11.	日常	r̀cháng	daily
12.	農村	núngtswún	farm village
13.	晶子	jīngdž	transistor
14.	新興	syīnsyīng	newly developed
15.	事業	shr̀yè	enterprise
16.	教育	jyàuyù	education
17.	教學	jyàusywé	instruction

第 三 課

打太極拳

對話

麥：早上在公園裏散步真舒服。多安靜啊。

黃：可不是嗎！你看，空氣又這麼新鮮。

（麥克馬上做了一次深呼吸。）

麥：我們到樹林子的北邊兒去遛遛好不好？

黃：好吧。

（他們兩個人走到了公園的北頭兒。看見一個相當大的湖，湖裏養了很多荷花兒。鴨子在水上游來游去。）

Unit III

UNIT III

DĂ TÀIJÍCHYWÁN

A. DIALOGUE

Mài: Dzăushàng dzài gūngywánli sànbù jēn shūfu, dwō ānjìng a.

Hwáng: Kĕ búshr̀ ma! Nĭ kàn, kūngchì yòu jèmma syīnsyān.

(Mài-ke măshàng dzwòle yītsz̀ shēn hūsyī.)

Mài: Wŏmen dàu shùlíndzde bĕi byār chyù lyòulyou hău buhau?

Hwáng: Hău ba.

(Tāmen lyăngge rén dzŏudàule gūngywánde bĕitóur. Kànjyàn yīgé syāngdāng dàde hú, húli yăngle hĕn dwō héhwār. Yādz dzài shwĕi shang yóulái yóuchyù.)

黃：你看，這個湖真好看。禮拜天有很多人到這兒來划船。

麥：甚麼時候有空兒，我們也來划划船好不好？

黃：你去找你的女朋友來跟你一塊兒划吧。別找我。

麥：我不跟女孩子一塊兒划。他們的力氣小，跟我一塊兒划的時候兒那個船就在水面上打轉兒。划了半天，甚麼地方也去不了。

黃：噯！你這個人就是這麼怪。跟女朋友一塊兒划船，還要到那兒去？

麥：要划船，就希望他動。要是不動，就不如坐着釣魚。呃，這兒可以釣魚嗎？

黃：你看見那個牌子沒有？上邊兒寫着甚麼？

Unit III

Hwáng: Nĭ kàn, jèige hú jēn hăukàn. Lĭbàityān yóu hĕn dwō rén dàu jèr lái hwáchwán.

Mài: Shémma shŕhour yŏu kùngr, wŏmen yĕ lái hwáhwa chwán, hău buhau?

Hwáng: Nĭ chyù jáu nĭde nyŭpéngyou lái gēn nĭ yīkwàr hwá ba. Byé jáu wŏ.

Mài: Wŏ bùgēn nyŭháidz yīkwàr hwá. Tāmende lìchì syău, gēn wŏ yīkwàr hwáde shŕhour, nèige chwán jyòu dzài shwĕimyànshàng dă jwàr. Hwále bàntyán, shémma dìfang yĕ chyùbùlyău.

Hwáng: Ai! Nĭ jèige rén jyòu shr̀ jèmma gwài. Gēn nyŭpéngyou yīkwàr hwáchwán, hái yàu dàu năr chyù?

Mài: Yàu hwáchwán, jyòu syīwàng tā dùng. Yàushr̀ búdùng, jyòu bùrú dzwòje dyàuyú. Ou, jèr kéyi dyàuyú ma?

Hwáng: Nĭ kànjyàn nèige páidz méiyou? Shàng byān syĕje shémma?

（湖邊兒上豎着一個牌子，上邊兒寫着“禁止釣魚”。牌子的右手兒有一個白鬍子老頭兒正對着一棵樹做運動。手跟腳伸出去的動作特別慢。）

麥：這就是太極拳吧？

黄：對了。

麥：真絕！像是電影兒裏的慢動作一樣。

黄：別看動作慢。可是每個動作他都使了很大的勁兒。

麥：嘿！你看見沒有？那邊兒還有一個老頭兒。

黄：看見了。很多老頭兒一大早兒，天還沒亮就來打拳。

麥：老太太做不做這種運動？

黄：中國老太太不常到公園來。他們都喜歡在家裏抱孫子玩兒。

Unit III

(Hú byār shang shùje yīgè páidz, shàng byār syěje "Jìnjř Dyàuyú." Páidzde yòu shǒur yǒu yīgè bái húdz lǎutóur jèng dwèije yìkē shù dzwò yùndung. Shǒu gēn jyǎu shēnchūchyude dùngdzwò tèbyé màn.)

Mài: Jèi jyòu shr̀ tàijīchyán ba?

Hwáng: Dwèile.

Mài: Jēn jywé! Syàng shr̀ dyànyǐngrlide màn dùngdzwò yīyàng.

Hwáng: Byé kàn dūngdzwò màn. Kěshr̀ měigè dùngdzwò tā dōu shřle hěn dàde jyèr.

Mài: Hei! Nǐ kànjyàn meiyou? Nèi byār hái yǒu yīge lǎutóur.

Hwáng: Kànjyanle. Hěn dwō lǎutour yīdàdzǎur, tyān hái méi lyàng jyòu lái dǎ chywán.

Mài: Lǎutàitai dzwò budzwo jèijūng yùndung?

Hwáng: Jūnggwó lǎutàitai bù cháng dàu gūngywán lái. Tāmen dōu syǐhwan dzài jyāli bàu swūndz wár.

CHINESE-MANDARIN III

THE CHINESE SHADOW BOXING (TÀIJÍCHYWÁN)

A. DIALOGUE

Mike: Taking a morning walk in the park is really nice, so peaceful.
Hwáng: You said it! Look, the air is so fresh.

(Mike immediately takes a deep breath.)

Mike: Let's take a stroll to the north of the woods.
Hwáng: Good.

(They both walk to the north of the park. They see a rather large lake, with many waterlilies planted in it. Ducks are swimming on the lake.)

Hwáng: Look, this lake is really beautiful. On Sunday there are many people rowing boats here.
Mike: Sometime when we have a little time, we can also come here to row boats, wouldn't that be fine?

Hwáng: You go and look for your girl friend to come here to row boats with you. Don't ask me.
Mike: I don't like to row boats with girls. They have little strength, and when they row boats with me, the boat turns round and round on the water. After rowing half a day, we still cannot get anywhere.

Hwáng: Hey, you are really impossible. If you are rowing a boat with a girl friend, do you still want to go anywhere?
Mike: If I row a boat I want it to move. If it doesn't move, I might as well sit down fishing. Eh, is fishing permitted here?

Hwáng: Did you see that sign there? What's written on it?

(A sign stands on the lake, showing "No Fishing!" To the right of the sign there is a white bearded old man who is doing exercises in front of a tree. He reaches out his hand and his leg very slowly.)

Mike: Is this tàijíchywán?
Hwáng: Yes.

Mike: This is precious! It looks like the slow motion in the movie.
Hwáng: Don't just note the slow movement. He is exerting himself hard at each motion.

Mike: Hey, did you see? There is another old man over there.
Hwáng: I saw it. Many old people come here to practice tàijíchywán the first thing in the morning before daybreak.

Mike: Do the old ladies also do this kind of exercise?
Hwáng: Chinese old ladies do not come to the park often. They all like to stay home to play with their grandchildren.

B. VOCABULARY

(The underlined characters are required.)

gūngywán	N	公園	park
kūngchì	N	空氣	air
shùlíndz	N	樹林子	woods; forest
hú	N	湖	lake
chyáu	N	橋	bridge
tíngdz	N	亭子	bower; arbor; pavilion
héhwā	N	荷花	water lily
lìchi	N	力氣	strength
shwěimyàn	N	水面	surface of water
páidz	N	牌子	sign

húdz	N	鬍子	beard
lǎutóur	N	老頭子	old man
lǎutàitai	N	老太太	old woman
swūndz	N	孫子	grandchild
yùndùng	N	運動	physical exercise
dùngdzwò	N	動作	movement; motion
jyǎu	N	脚	foot
tàijíchywán	N	太極拳	Chinese shadow-boxing, a form of calisthenics
sànbu	V	散步	stroll
shēnchūchyu	RV	伸出去	reach out; stretch out
hūsyī	V	呼吸	breathe
lyòulyou	V	遛遛	walk around; stroll
dyàuyú	V	釣魚	fish
shù	V	豎	erect
dwèi	V	對	face
dǎ jwàr	V	打轉兒	turn in circles
bàu	V	抱	hold; embrace
bàntyān	A	半天	one-half day; quite a while
syīnsyan	Adj	新鮮	fresh
yǒu kùngr	IE	有空兒	leisurely; not busy; have leisure

Unit III

jēnjywé	IE	真絶	Neat! Precious! funny
byékàn...	IE	别看	don't (simply) notice...; don't just say...
shř̌lé hěn dà jyèr	IE	使了很大勁兒	exert great strength
yìdyǎr (dōu; yě) bú tswò	IE	一點兒不錯	absolutely correct; not wrong at all

C. USAGE 字句用法

byār (side)	bù (part)	fāng (direction)	tóur (end)	shǒur (side)	tou (myàn) (side)
dūngbyār	dūngbù	dūngfāng	dūngtóur	x	x
syībyār	syībù	syīfāng	syītóur	x	x
nánbyār	nánbù	nánfāng	nántóur	x	x
běibyār	běibù	běifāng	běitóur	x	x
dūngnánbyār	dūngnánbù	dūngnánfāng	dūngnántóur	x	x
dūngběibyār	dūngběibù	dūngběifāng	dūngběitóur	x	x
syīnánbyār	syīnánbù	syīnánfāng	syínántóur	x	x
syīběibyār	syīběibù	syīběifāng	syīběitóur	x	x
shàngbyār	x	x	x	shàngshǒur	shàngtou (myàn)
syàbyār	x	x	x	syàshǒur	syàtou (myàn)
dzwǒbyār	x	x	x	dzwóshǒur	x
yòubyār	x	x	x	yòushǒur	x
chyánbyār	x	chyánfāng	x	x	chyántou (myàn)
hòubyār	x	hòufāng	x	x	hòutou (myàn)
lǐbyār	x	x	x	x	lǐtou (myàn)
wàibyār	x	x	x	x	wàitou (myàn)

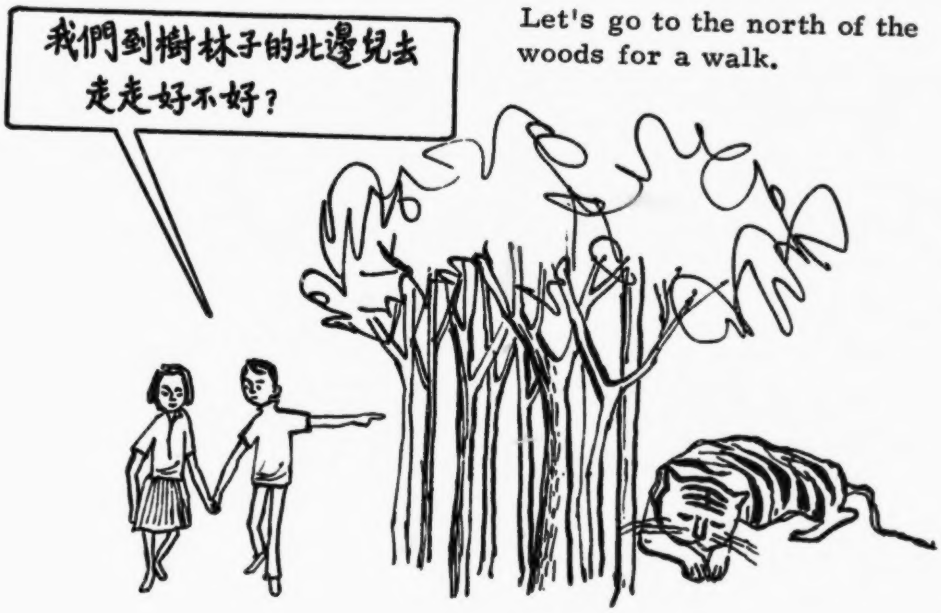
Unit III

Some of these can be used as nouns with different meanings:

dūngfāng	The Orient
syīfāng	The West
chyánfāng	front line
hòufāng	rear area
syàshǒur	assistant
shàngfāng	authority; superior

水的上面有很多荷花	There are many water lilies on the water.
他們的房子就在我們的右手兒	Their house is just to our right.
太陽從東方出來 tàiyang	The sun rises from the east.
這條路的東頭兒有一個樹林子	There is a forest at the eastern end of the road.
中國的北部很冷	It is very cold in the northern part of China.

Let's go to the north of the woods for a walk.


我們到樹林子的北邊兒去走走好不好？

2. The resultative verb endings

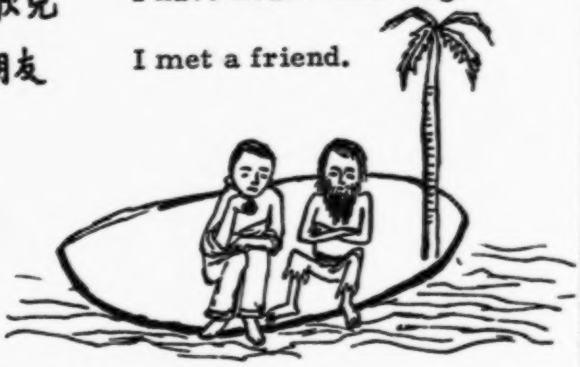
The resultative verb endings are used to denote the result of actions. Some common ones are:

-jáu be hit; receive

mǎijáu	他買着了一本很好的書	He bought (succeeded in buying) a very good book.
jyèjáu	他借着錢了	He borrowed money.
jǎujáu	我找着你了	I found you.

-jyan perceive

kànjyan	我在他的家裡看見了一張很好的畫	I saw a very good picture at his house.
tīngjyan	我聽見了他唱歌兒	I have heard him sing.
yùjyan	我遇見了一個朋友	I met a friend.



-dàu arrive; reach

shwōdàu	我們說到那兒了?	Where were we in our discussion?
kāidàu	你開車開到那兒了	Where have you reached (in driving the car)?
yùngdàu	我們用到這本書了	We have reached this one in using books. (We have used this book after a number of others.)

syǎngdàu	我沒想到他會説中國話	I did not expect (my thought did not reach) that he could speak Chinese.

-wán finish

màiwán	那些書都賣完了	Those books have all been sold out.
yùngwán	我的紙都用完了	My paper has been all used up.
shwōwán	他還沒説完呢!	He has not yet finished talking.

-lyǎu capable of completing the action

nádelyǎu	這個箱子太重,他拿不了	This suitcase is too heavy, he cannot carry it.
chībulyǎu	我吃不了那麼多東西	I cannot eat up that much.
yùngdelyǎu	給他多少錢,他都用的了	No matter how much money you give him, he can use it up.

-chǐ able to afford

mǎidechǐ	這本書很貴,他買的起嗎?	This book is very expensive, can he afford to buy it?

chr̄dechǐ	你吃的起這麼貴的東西嗎!	Can you afford eating such expensive food?
jùbuchǐ	那個房子太好了.我住不起。	That house is too good, I cannot afford living in it.

-lái and -chyù

chūdechyù	門沒關.我出不去。	The door is not open, I cannot get out.
jìnbulái	沒有票的人進不來。	Those without tickets cannot come in.
nábuchǐlái	這個東西太重,我拿不起來。	This thing is too heavy, I cannot pick it up.
syàbuchyù	那個孩子在房子上,下不去。	That child is on top of the house, he cannot go down.
shàngdelái	他那麼胖.上的來嗎?	He is so fat, can he get up here?
shàngbuchyù	這個山這麼高.我們上不去。	This mountain is so high, we cannot get up there.

Many stative verbs can be used as resultative verb endings.

syěbuhǎu	這個字,我寫不好。	I cannot write this word well.
fēibugāu	這個飛機飛不高。	This plane cannot fly high (get to a high altitude).
dzǒubukwài	他太胖,走不快。	He is too fat, cannot walk fast.

Note the difference between Ta dzǒubukwài (Resultative Verb) and Ta dzǒude búkwài (Descriptive Complement). cf. Level II, Unit 5.

D. DIALOGUE EXPANSION 對話應用

A. Fùjìn yǒu yíge gūngywánr, nǐ chyùgwo méiyou?
B. Něi yíge gūngywán?

A. Chéng dūngbyār nèige.
B. O, wǒ jr̄daule. Shr̀ bushr dzài héde nèibyār?

A. Yìdyǎr bútswò. Gwòle chyǎu yǐhòu, dzài chwāngwò yíge shùlíndz, shùlíndzde syībyar yǒu yíge tíngdz...
B. Búyùng shwōle. Nèige gūngywán wǒ chyùgwo.

E. ORAL DRILLS

FLUENCY DRILL

Byār
Běibyār
Shùlíndzde běibyār
Dàu shūlíndzde běibyār chyù
Wǒmen dàu shùlíndzde běibyār chyù.

Dūngfāng
Tsúng dūngfāng chūlai
Tàiyang tsúng dūngfāng chūlai
Tàiyang tyāntyān tsúng dūngfāng chūlai.

Bù
Běibù
Jūnggwode běibù
Jūnggwode běibù lěng
Jūnggwode běibù hén lěng.

Jáu
Mǎijáu
Mǎijáu yìběn hén hǎude shū
Wǒ mǎijáu yìběn hén hǎude shū
Wǒ dzwótyan mǎijáule yìběn hén hǎude shū.

Jyàn
Kànjyan
Kànjyan yìjāng hén hǎude hwàr
Wǒ kànjyanle yìjāng hén hǎude hwàr
Wǒ dzài tāde jyāli kànjyanle yìjāng hén hǎude hwàr.

Dàu
Syǎngdàu
Méisyǎngdàu
Méisyǎngdàu tā hwèi
Méisyǎngdàu tā hwèi shwō Jūnggwo hwà
Wó méisyǎngdàu tā hwèi shwō Jūnggwo hwà.

Lyǎu
Nábulyǎu
Tài jùng, nábulyǎu
Tài jùng, tā nábulyǎu
Jèige syāngdz tài jùng, tā nábulyǎu.

Chyù
Shàngdechyù
Wǒmen shàngdechyù
Nèige shān, wǒmen shàngdechyù
Nèige shān bùgāu, wǒmen shàngdechyù.

Kwài
Pǎudekwài
Wǒ pǎudekwài
Wó pǎude hěn kwài.

Kwài
Pǎubukwài
Wó pǎubukwài

Kwài
Pǎude búkwài
Pǎude bútài kwài
Wó pǎude bútài kwài.

REPLACEMENT DRILL

Tāmende fángdz dzài wǒmende yòushǒur.
dzwóshǒur
Nèige shùlíndz
wǒmen jyāde yòushǒur
Nèige hú

Jèige húde nánbyār yǒu yíge chyáu.
chyánbyār
tíngdz
shùje yíge páidz
dūngběibyār

Měigwóde syībù yóu hěn dwō shān.
dūngbù
nyóu

Wǒ dzwótyan jǎujáule nèiběn shū.
mǎijáule
nèijyàn yīshang
kànjyanle
nèige lǎutóur

Wó bǎ nèiběn shū yǐjīng kànwánle.
nèisyē chyán yǐjīng yùngwánle
nèisyē dz̀ yǐjīng syěwánle
wǒde hwà yǐjīng shwōwánle
nèijyan shr̀chíng yǐjīng dzwòwánle

Jèijyà shōuyīnjī hěn gwèi, ní mǎidechǐ ma?
wó mǎibuchǐ
Jèige fángdz
nǐ jùdechǐ ma
Jèige fángdzde fángdzū

RESPONSE DRILL

A. Nǐmen dàu nǎr chyu?
B. Wǒmen dàu gūngywánde běibyār chyù.
nánbyār
nèibyār
yòubyār

A. Fángdz wàitou yǒu shémma?
B. Fángdz wàitou yóu hěn dwō hwār.
chyántou
lǐtou
hòutou

A. Dzwótyan nǐ dzài lùshang kànjyanle shéi?
B. Dzwótyan wǒ dzài lùshang kànjyanle yíge péngyou.
Lí Lǎushr̄
Syǎu Hwáng

A. Jèige syāngdz hěn jùng, tā nádelyǎu ma?
B. Jèige syāngdz hěn jùng, tā nábulyǎu.
nábuchǐlai
jwōdz
nábushànglai
nábusyàchyu

A. Tā wèi shémma dzǒude nèmma màn?
B. Tā tài páng, dzǒubukwài.
Tā nále hěn dwō dūngsyi
Tā tài lǎule
Tā nyánjī tài dàle

A. Tā dzǒude kwài bukwai?
B. Tā dzǒude búkwài.
hěnkwài
kwài

F. EXERCISES 練習

State in Chinese: 用中國話說:

1. The Oriental People.
2. The eastern part of U.S.A.
3. The East
4. Southerners
5. The other end of this road
6. The east side of the lake
7. Northeastern part
8. The western part of China
9. North China
10. Right-hand side

B. Give the proper resultative verb endings: 填空白

kàn _____ chr̄ _____ jǎu _____ tīng _____ syě _____
mài _____ mǎi _____ jyè _____ syà _____ syàng _____

C. Replace bùnéng with a resultative verb ending: 換字

Wo bùnéng chr̄wán jèikwài nyóupái.
Wo chr̄buwán jèikwài nyóupái.

1. Tā yǒu shr̀, míngtyān bùnéng lái.
2. Nèige shān tài gāu, wǒmen bùnéng shàngchyu.
3. Jèige shōuyīnghī tài gwèi, wǒ bùnéng mǎi.

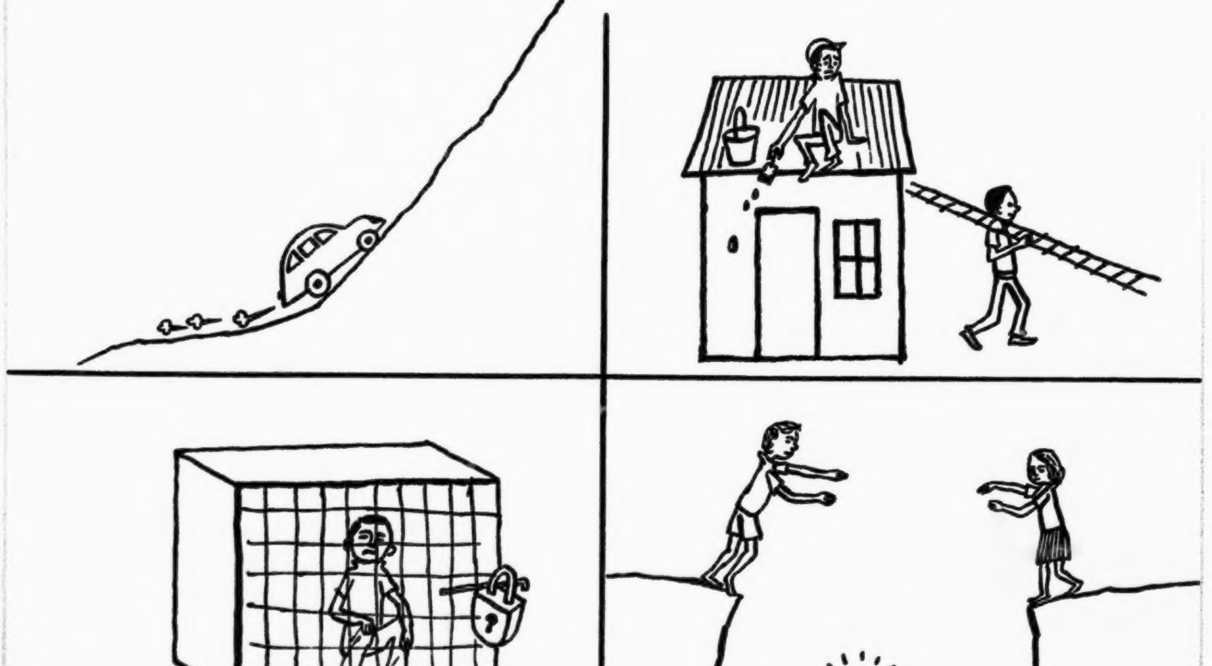
D. Replace neng with a resultative verb ending: 換字

Jèi syāngdz bú jùng, wǒ néng náchilai.
Jèi syāngdz bú jùng, wǒ nádechilai.

1. Jīntyān wǎnshàng, wǒ néng kànwán jèiben shū.
2. Nǐ néng kànjyan jèige tíngdz ma?
3. Nǐ néng jǎujáu nèiběn shū ma?
4. Míngtyan wǒ méi shr̀, néng lái.

Unit III

E. Use resultative verb constructions in your descriptions of the following pictures: 造句,說明下面的圖畫



CHINESE-MANDARIN III

太　極　拳

有人說太極拳是 ①宋朝② 張三豐 ③發明的。後來很多中國人都學這種 ④拳，因為這種拳可以 ⑤保護自己，又是一種很好的運動，不論男人女人，年紀大小，都可以學。

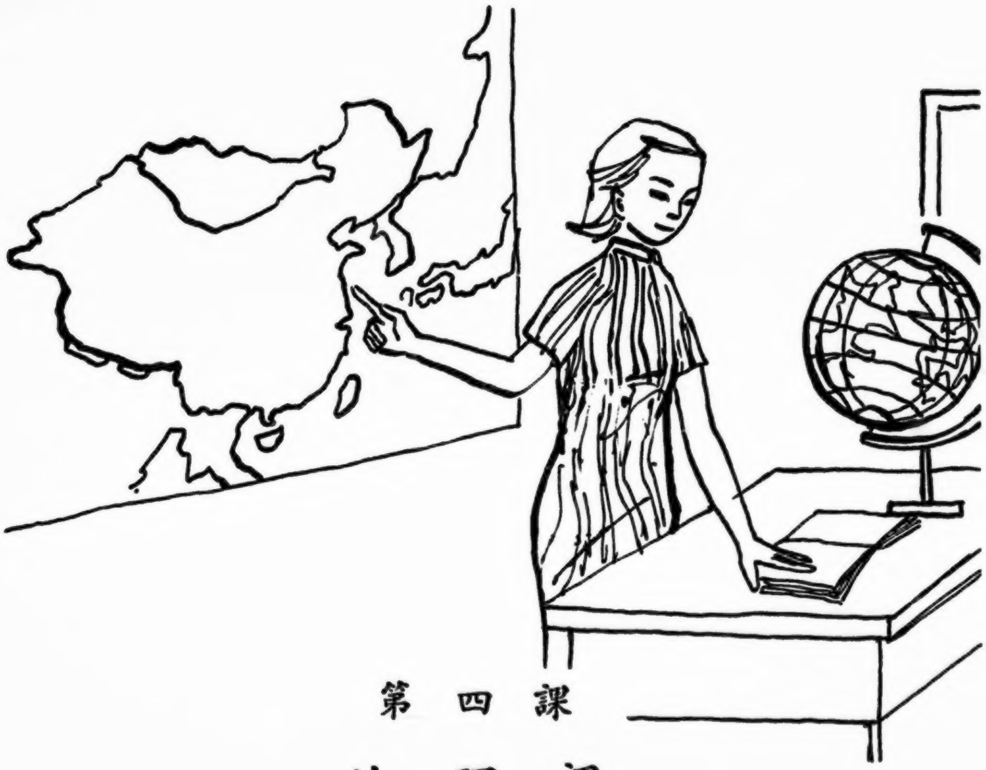
打拳的人先得學站 ⑥穩，要站的很穩別人 ⑦推不 ⑧倒，才行。學好了這一 ⑨步，再學怎樣用拳去打人，用脚去踢人。每一拳的力氣要很大，可是要是沒打着別人，自己還不會 ⑩摔倒。

第三步就學怎樣讓別人摔倒。要是別人用拳打過來，或是用脚踢過來，自己得知道怎麼 ⑪抓住別人的手或脚，輕輕一拉就讓他摔倒。

為了要說清楚怎樣學這些，中國人想出了很多辦法。他們用中國 ⑫古書裏的 ⑬名詞說太極拳的每一步有甚麼 ⑭道理。有的時候，這些道理很不容易懂，就像 ⑮神話一樣。

Unit III

1.	宋朝	Sùngcháu	The Sung Dynasty (960-1280 A. D.)
2.	張三豐	Jāng Sān-fēng	name of person
3.	發明	fāmíng	invent
4.	拳	chywán	fist
5.	保護	bǎuhù	protect
6.	穩	wěn	stable
7.	推	twēi	push
8.	倒	dǎu	topple
9.	步	bù	step
10.	摔倒	shwāidǎu	fall down
11.	抓住	jwājù	catch
12.	古書	gǔshū	ancient book
13.	名詞	míngtzú	term
14.	道理	dàulǐ	reason
15.	神話	shénhwà	fairytale



第 四 課

地 理 課

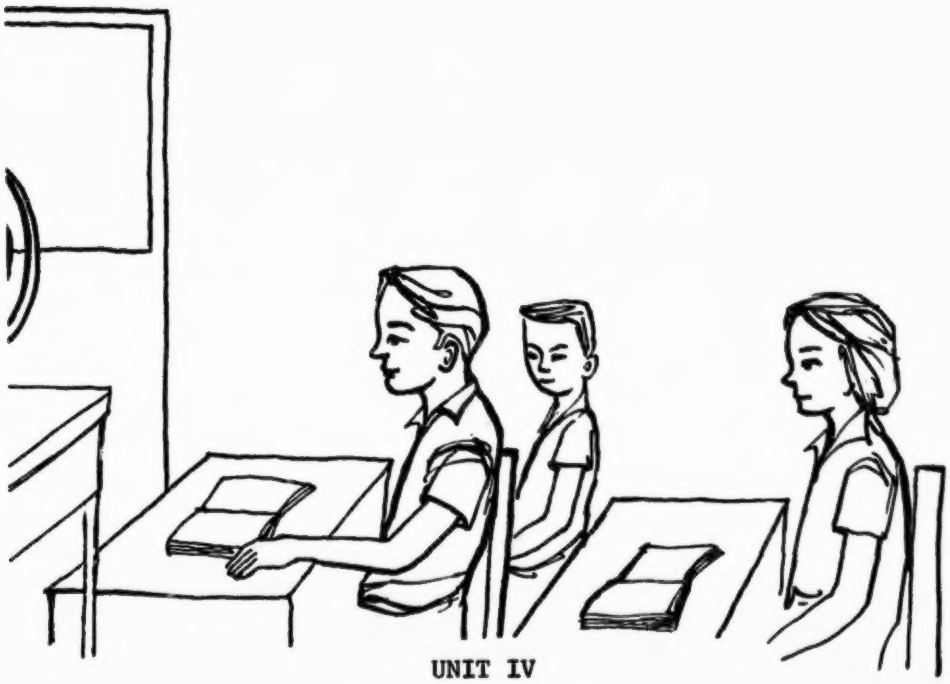
對 話

這堂是地理課張老師要把今天講的
中國地理覆習一下兒。

張：從這張地圖上，我們可以看出來，
　　中國在亞洲東部偏南，東邊兒是
　　太平洋。北邊兒是蘇聯的西伯利亞。
　　我們知道中國的南邊兒有很多國家。
　　你們記得都是那些國家嗎？王先生。

王：印度，越南，寮國。

張：還有呢？



UNIT IV

DÌLǏ KÈ

A. DIALOGUE

Jèitáng shr̀ dìlǐ kè, Jāng Lǎushr̄ yàu bǎ jīntyan jyǎngde Jūnggwó dìlǐ fùsyí yīsyàr.

Jāng: Tsúng jèijāng dìtú shang, wǒmen kéyi kàn chūlai, Jūnggwó dzài Yǎjōu dūngbù pyānnán. Dūng byār shr̀ Tàipíngyáng. Běi byār shr̀ Sūlyánde Syībwólìyà. Wǒmen jr̄dàu Jūnggwóde nánbyār yóu hěn dwō gwójyā. Nǐmen jìde dōu shr̀ něisyē gwójyā ma? Wáng Gwāngshēng.

Wáng: Yìndù, Ywènán, Lyáugwo.

Jāng: Hái yǒu ne?

（很多人把手舉了起來，参克把手舉的
很高）

張：参克。

参：還有兩個小國，一個叫不丹，一個
叫尼泊爾。

張：在中國的東邊兒，隔着海有甚麽國家？

劉婉如：日本跟韓國。

張：對了，現在我們再來看看中國的
地形，一般的說，中國的西部比東部
高，中國有五條主要的山脈。從西部的
高原 像五個手指一樣往東伸出去。
你們知道中國有那幾條大河，李淑芝？

芝：黃河，長江，黑龍江，還有西江。

張：很好，你把中國的幾條河記得很好。
可是只記住這些大山，大河的名字沒用。
你們得知道中國地形跟中國文化
發展的關係，李元，你說中國地理
有甚麽很特別的地方？

Unit IV

(Hĕn dwō rén bá shóu jyŭlechĭlai. Mài-ke bá shóu jyŭde hĕn gāu.)

Jāng: Mài-ke.

Mài: Hái yóu lyăngge syău gwó, yíge jyàu Būdān, yíge jyàu Níbwoeŕ.

Jāng: Dzài Jūnggwóde dūngbyār, gēje hăi, yŏu shémma gwójyā?

Lyóu Wănrú: R̀bĕn gēn Hángwó.

Jāng: Dwèile. Syàndzài wŏmen dzài lái kànkan Jūnggwóde dìsyíng. Yìbānde shwō, Jūnggwóde syībù bĭ dūngbù gāu. Jūnggwo yóu wŭtyáu jŭyàude shānmài. Tsúngsyībùde gāuywán syàng wŭge shóujř yíyàng wàng dūng shēnchūchyu. Nĭmen jr̄dàu Jūnggwó yóu néijĭtyáu dà hé, Lĭ Shūjr̄?

Shūjr̄: Hwánghé, Chángjyāng, Hēilúngjyāng, hái yŏu Syījyāng.

Jāng: Hén hău. Nĭ bă Jūnggwóde jĭtyáu hé jìde hén hău. Kĕshr̀ jř jìjù jèisyē dà shān, dà héde míngdz méi yùng. Nĭmen dĕi jr̄dàu Jūnggwó dìsyíng gēn Jūnggwó wénhwà fājănde gwānsyi. Lĭ Ywán, nĭ shwō Jūnggwó dìlĭ yŏu shémma hĕn tèbyéde dìfang?

李 ： 中國很大。

張 ： 蘇聯不是也很大嗎？為甚麼中國的
文化跟蘇聯的不一樣呢？

黃 ： 中國出產的東西很多。

張 ： 對，可是為甚麼中國歷史上還
常常有飢荒呢？

王 ： 中國的大河都是往東流的。

張 ： 也對。可是這跟中國文化的發展
有甚麼關係呢？

劉 ： 河裏的水都往東流了。所以中國的
西部很乾。

（全班大笑）

張 ： 唉，你們真應該好好兒的覆習覆習。

Unit IV

Lǐ: Jūnggwó hěn dà.

Jāng: Sūlyán búshr̀ yé hěn dà ma? Wèi shémma Jūnggwóde wénhwà gēn Sūlyánde bù yíyàng ne?

Hwáng: Jūnggwó chūchǎnde dūngsyi hěn dwō.

Jāng: Dwèi. Kěshr̀ wèi shémma Jūnggwó lìshř shàng hái chángchang yǒu jīhwāng ne?

Wáng: Jūnggwóde dà hé dōu shr̀ wàng dūng lyóude.

Jāng: Yě dwei. Kěshr̀ jèi gēn Jūnggwó wénhwàde fājǎn yǒu shémma gwānsyi ne?

Lyóu: Hélide shwěi dōu wàng dūng lyóu le, swóyi Jūnggwóde syībù hěn gān.

(Chywánbān dàsyàu.)

Jāng: Ai, nǐmen jēn yīnggāi hǎuhāurde fùsyīfusyi.

CHINESE-MANDARIN III

A GEOGRAPHY CLASS

A. DIALOGUE

This is a Geography class. Mrs. Jāng the teacher is reviewing the Chinese geography she has lectured on during the hour.

Jāng: From this map we can make out that China is located in the eastern part of Asia, slightly to the south. To the east there is the Pacific Ocean. To the north is Siberia of Soviet Russia. We know that there are many countries to the south of China. Do you know what they are? Wáng Gwāngshēng.

Wáng: India, Viet Nam, Laos.

Jāng: What else?

(Many students raise their hands. Mike raises his very high.)

Jāng: Mike.

Mike: There are two more small nations, one is called Bhutan and the other is Nepal.

Jāng: To the east of China across the ocean, what countries are there?

Lyòu Wǎnrù: Japan and Korea.

Jāng: Correct. Now let's take a look at China's topography. In general the western part of China is higher than the eastern part. There are five main mountain ranges in China. Like the five fingers of a hand, they reach out from the west toward the east. You know what large rivers China has, Lǐ Shūjr̄?

Lǐ: The Yellow River, the Yangtze River, the Amur River, and the West River.

Jāng: Very good. You remember China's several rivers very well. However, only remembering these large mountains' and rivers' names is useless. You must know the relationship between China's topography and the development of China's culture. Lǐ Ywán, you tell me what the special characteristics of Chinese geography are.

Lǐ Ywán: China is very big.

Jāng: Isn't Soviet Russia very big? Why is Chinese culture different from that of Soviet Russia?

Hwáng: China produces a lot of things.

Jāng: Correct. But why have there been frequent famines in Chinese history?

Wáng: The large rivers in China all flow eastward.

Jāng: Also correct. However, what does this have to do with the development of Chinese culture?

Lyóu: All the water in the rivers flows eastward, therefore the western part of China is very dry.

(The whole class roars with laughter.)

Jāng: Ah, you really must review your lesson well.

B. VOCABULARY

(The underlined characters are required.)

dìlǐ	N	地理	geography
dìtú	N	地圖	map
Yǎjōu	N	亞洲	Asia
Tàipíngyáng	N	太平洋	Pacific Ocean
Dàsyīyáng	N	大西洋	Atlantic Ocean
Sūlyán	N	蘇聯	Soviet Union

Syībwólǐyà	N	西伯利亞	Siberia
Yǐndù	N	印度	India
Ywènán	N	越南	Viet Nam
Lyáugwó	N	寮國	Laos
Bùdān	N	不丹	Bhutan
Níbwóěr	N	尼泊爾	Nepal
Rběn	N	日夲	Japan
Hángwó	N	韓國	Korea
dìsyíng	N	地形	topography
gāuywán	N	高原	plateau
shóujř	N	手指	finger
Hwánghé	N	黃河	Yellow River
Chángjyāng	N	長江	Yangtze River
Hēilúngjyāng	N	黑龍江	Amur River
Syījyāng	N	西江	West River
gwānsyi	N	關係	relation
jīhwāng	N	飢荒	famine
lìshř	N	歷史	history
shānmái	N	山脈	mountain range
lùsyàn	N	路線	route
-táng	M	堂	class
fùsyí	V	覆習	review

jyǔ	V	舉	raise
gē	V	隔	separate, be separated by
lyóu	V	流	flow
chūchǎn	V	出產	produce
fājǎn	V	發展	develop
jǔyàu	Adj	主要	main
gān	Adj	乾	dry
pyān	A	偏	leaning toward
yìbānde shwō	IE	一般的說	generally speaking

C. USAGE 字句用法

1. The bǎ 把 construction (cf. Level II, Unit 9)

把 is a co-verb. The basic pattern of sentence using 把 is: 把 O V-complement.

把書買了.

In the 把 construction, the main verb must be followed by a complement such as le, resultative verb ending, place word, reduplication of the verb, etc.

我把這本書買了。	I bought this book.
麥克把手舉起來了.	Mike raised his hand.
把這件衣裳試試.	Try this garment.
把這封信放在桌子上.	Put this letter on the table.

把 construction is often used for sentences with double objects. The direct object is placed after 把, and the indirect one, after the verb.

我把這本書給你了.	I have given you that book.

給 is often used to introduce the indirect object, always following such verbs as 借，送，寄，教.

他把錢借給小黃了	He loaned money to Syǎu Huang.
我把這些花兒送給你	I present these flowers to you.
他要把這包東西寄給他兒子	He wants to send this parcel to his son.

2. syàng 像

像 as a verb.

中國地圖像一片樹葉子 yèdz	The map of China resembles a leaf.
他像他的爸爸	He looks like his father.
他的頭髮像一個鳥窩 tóufa nyǎuwō	Her hair looks like a bird nest.

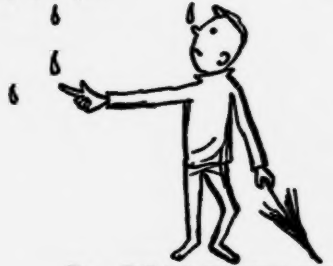
像 as a stative verb.

他跟他父親很像	He and his father are alike.
你們兩個人很像。	You two are alike.

像……一樣 is used as an adjective modifier or an adverbial modifier to express comparison.

他的衣裳像雪一樣的白 sywě	His clothes is white as snow.
這麼熱，像夏天一樣 syàtyan	It's so hot, just like summer.

你那麼喜歡錢,像你爸爸一樣。	You are so crazy about money, just like your father.
好像……… 的樣子 cannot be preceded by	(it seems, it looks like)
他好像很冷(的樣子)	He seems to be cold.
他好像不太喜歡他(的樣子)	He seems to dislike him.
好像下雨了(的樣子). yǔ	It looks like rain.



D. DIALOGUE EXPANSION 對話應用

A. Nǐ shr̀ shémma shŕhour dàu Oūjōu chyùde?
B. Wǒ shr̀ chyùnyan shŕèrywè chyùde.

A. Nǐ shr̀ dzěmma chyùde?
B. Dzwò chwán chyùde.

A. Dzǒude shémma lùsyan?
B. Wǒmen shr̀ tsúng Nyǒuywē chyùde. Chwāngwo Dàsyīyáng.

A. Yígùng dzǒule jǐtyān?
B. Wǒmen shr̀ chyùnyan shŕer̀ywè er̀shŕhàu tsúng Nyǒuywē dzwò chwán dàu Oūjōu chyùde. Jīnnyan yíywè yíhàu dàude. Yígùng dzǒule shŕèrtyān.

A. Nǐde chwánpyàu shr̀ dwōshau chyán mǎide?
B. Er̀shŕ kwài chyán mǎide.

E. ORAL DRILLS

FLUENCY DRILL

Mǎi
Mǎile
Bǎ jèiběn shū mǎile
Wǒ bǎ jèiběn shū mǎile.

Fàng
Fàngdzài jwōdz shang
Bǎ jèijyà shōuyīnjī fàngdzài
  jwōdz shang
Bǎ jèijyà shōuyīnjī fàngdzài
  nèijāng jwōdz shang
Chíng ní bǎ jèijyà shōuyīnjī
  fàngdzài nèijāng jwōdz
  shang.

Gěi
Géi ni
Sùng géi ni
Bǎ jèijāng dìtú sùng géi ni
Wǒ bǎ jèijāng dìtú sùng géi
  ni.

Syàng
Syàng tā bàbà
Jēn syàng tā bàba
Jèige syǎu háidz jēn syàng
  tā bàba.

Syàng
Hěn syàng
Lyǎngge rén hěn syàng
Tāmen lyǎngge rén hěn syàng.

Syàng
Syàng jř yíyàng
Tāde lyǎn syàng jř yíyàng
Tāde lyǎn syàng jř yíyàng bái.

Lěng
Hén lěng
Hǎusyàng hén lěng
Tā hǎusyàng hén lěngde yàngdz.

Wǒmen shŕ tsúng Nyǒuywē
  dàu Oūjōu chyùde
Wǒmen shr̀ tsúng Nyǒuywē
  dzwò chwán dàu Oūjōu
  chyùde
Wǒmen shr̀ chyùnyán shŕywè
  tsúng Nyǒuywē dzwò chwán
  dàu Oūjōu chyùde.

Mǎi
Dwōshau chyán mǎide
Shr̀ dwōshau chyán mǎide
Nǐde chwánpyàu shr̀ dwōshau
  chyán mǎide.

Unit IV

REPLACEMENT DRILL

Chǐng nǐ bǎ nèiběn shū fàngdzài jwōdz shang.
nèijyà shōuyīnjī
wūdzli
nèijāng dìtú

Dzài Jūnggwode dūngbyār gēje hǎi hái yǒu shémma gwójyā?
hái yǒu R̀běn
hái yǒu Hángwó

Dzài yòubyār gēje yíge hú jyòu shr̀ tāde jyā.
yìtyáu jyē
wǒmende sùshè
yíge fángdz

Jèige háidz syàng tā bàba.
hěn syàng
Nèige rén
jēn syàng
hǎusyàng

Tāmen lyǎngge rén hěn syàng.
jēn syàng
Tā gēn tā bàba
bútài syàng

Tā hǎusyàng hěn lěng.
hěn rè
hěn rède yàngdz

RESPONSE DRILL

A. Tā bǎ nèiběn shū fàngdzài nǎrle?
B. Tā bǎ nèiběn shū fàngdzài jwōdz shàngle.
nèijāng dìtú
gěi laushr̄le
sùng gei Syǎu Hwángle
jyè gei tāle
jì gei wǒ bàbale

A. Jèige syǎu háidz syàng shéi?
B. Jèige syǎu háidz syàng tā māma.
Nèige nán háidz
jēn syàng
hěn

A. Nǐ shř bushr jywéde jīntyan hěn rè?
B. Hěn rè, syàng syàtyan yíyàng.
syàng syàtyan yíyàng rè

A. Tā wèi shémma bù gēn ni shwō hwà ne?
B. Tā hǎusyàng bùsyǐhwan wo.
méikànjyan wo
búywànyi tēn wo shwō hwà
búywànyi gēn wo shwō hwàde yàngdz

A. Nǐmen shř shémma shíhour dàu Oūjōu chyùde?
B. Wǒmen shř chyùnyan shíywè dàu Oūjōu chyùde.
tsúng Nyǒuywē
dzwòchwán
gēn Wáng syānsheng

F. EXERCISES 練習

1. Change the following sentences into those of the bǎ construction: 用"把"造句:

   a. Tā mǎile yíjyà shōuyīnjī.
   b. Wǒ kànwánle nèiběn shū.
   c. Jèijyàn shřching, wǒ wàngle.
   d. Jèijāng dìtú, wó géi nǐ le.
   e. Nèiběn dìlǐshū, wǒ jyè géi ni.
   f. Nèisyē chyán, wó yǐjīng jì gěi ta le.
   g. Dàjyā yīnggāi fùsyí jèike.
   h. Nǐ bùsyěwán jèisyē dz, jyòu búyau chūchyu wàr.
   i. Chíng nǐ dzài syángsyǎng jèige wèntí.

2. Complete the following sentences with one of the alternatives given below: 用下面的字句造句:

syàng	像	hǎusyàng...yíyàng	好像……一樣
hǎusyàng	好像	hǎusyàng...de yàngdz	好像…的樣子

a. Tā gēn tāde fùchin hěn ____________.
b. Wǒ mèimei __________ wǒde fùchin.
c. Tā tóufade yánsè _____________ jř __________ bái.
d. Tā hēshwěi __________ nyóu _____________.
e. Jèige sywésheng ____________ bùgāusyìng ___________.
f. Nèige hàidz ___________ yàu kū.
g. Tāde yǎnjing lánde ___________ tyān ______________.
h. Tā fēicháng syǐhwan jàusyàng, ________ tāde fùchin ______________.

3. Complete the sentences: 填空白

a. Chǐng ni bǎ jèiběn shū ________. (read two times)
b. Wǒ búywanyì bǎ chyán ________. (lend to him)
c. Bǎ jèijyàn yīshang ________. (try on)
d. Wǒ déi bǎ jèisyē dz̀ ____________. (review)
e. Tā érdz bǎ táng ____________. (eat up)
f. Wǒ bǎ shōuyīnjī fàng ____________. (in his room)

4. Answer the following questions: 用中文回答

a. Nǐ shr̀ dzěmma dàu sywésyàu láide? (chichē)
b. Nǐ jīntyan dzǎushang shémma shŕhour dàu sywésyàu láide? (bādyan jūng)
c. Nǐ shr̀ gēn shéi yíkwàr láide? (Màike)
d. Nǐ shr̀ tsúng nǎr hwéilaide? (yǎjōu)
e. Nǐde byǎu shr̀ dwōshau chyán mǎide? (èrshŕkwài chyán)

中國的海岸

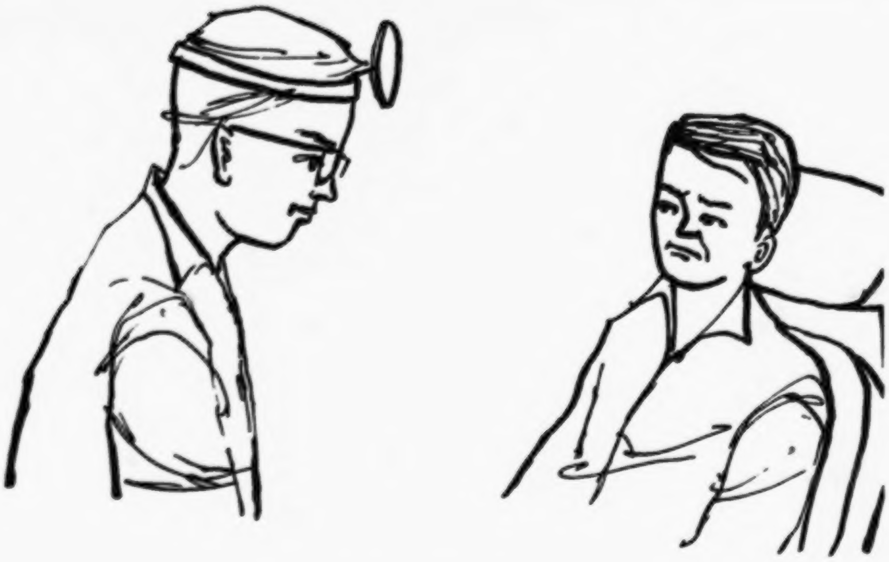
（節自現代中國文化）

中國的①海岸線不算短，可是在歷史上對中國的發展沒有很大②影響。這是因為中國的③陸地夠大。文化的④起源在離海岸很遠的地方，使中國人不⑤重視海岸。

中國的海岸有一個很有意思的⑥特點，就是從⑦長江口往北去多半是⑧沙岸。黃河的水帶下來的⑨泥沙，⑩堆積在山東⑪半島的南北。這一帶海岸沒有很多可用的⑫海港。從長江口往南去，多半是⑬巖岸。岸邊的山⑭形成很多很好的海港。可惜的是，因為⑮沿海的山太多，從海邊到⑯內地的⑰交通很不方便。就是有很好的海港也不容易⑱利用。

Unit IV

1.	海岸	hǎiàn	sea coast
2.	影響	yǐngsyǎng	influence
3.	陸地	lùdì	land
4.	起源	chǐywán	origin
5.	重視	jùngshr̀	emphasize
6.	特點	tèdyǎn	special point
7.	長江口	chángjyāngkǒu	mouth of the Yangtze River
8.	沙岸	shāàn	sandy shore
9.	泥沙	níshā	dirt and sand
10.	堆積	dwēijí	pile
11.	山東半島	shāndūngbàndǎu	the Shantung Peninsula
12.	海港	háigǎng	sea port
13.	巖岸	yánàn	rocky shore
14.	形成	syíngchéng	form
15.	沿海	yánhǎi	along the coast
16.	內地	nèidì	the interior region
17.	交通	jyāutūng	communication
18.	利用	lǐyùng	utilize



第 五 課

小黃的牙疼了三天了

對　　話

小黃一個人坐在屋子裏好像很不舒服的樣子，麦克吃完了飯，從飯廳裏回來

麦：怎麼還不去吃呢？

黃：不太舒服。

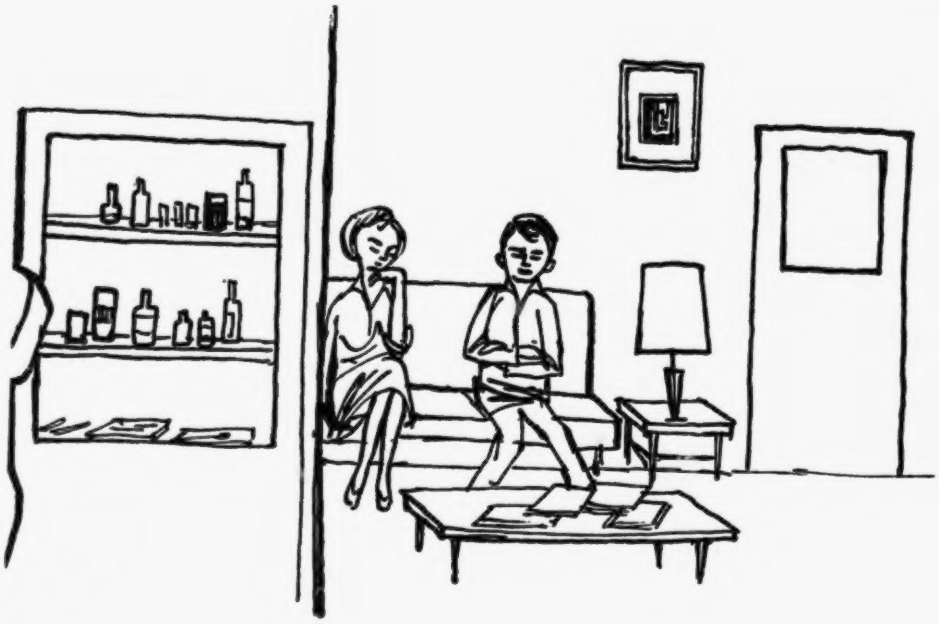
麦：怎麼了？甚麼地方不舒服？

黃：牙疼。

麦：要是牙有了毛病，最好趁早找牙醫看看。

黃：學校附近好像有一個牙醫。

Unit V



UNIT V

SYǍU HWANGDE YÁ TÉNGLE SĀNTYĀNLE

A. DIALOGUE

Syǎu Hwáng yìge rén dzwò dzài wūdzli, hǎusyàng hěn bùshūfude yàngdz. Mài-ke chr̄wánle fàn, tsúng fàntīngli hwéilai.

Mài: Dzěmma hái búchyù chr̄ ne?

Hwáng: Bú tài shūfu.

Mài: Dzěmma le? Shémma dìfang bùshūfu?

Hwáng: Yá téng.

Mài: Yàushr̀ yá yǒule máubing, dzwèi hǎu chèndzáu jǎu yáyī kànkan.

Hwáng: Sywésyàu fùjìn hǎusyàng yǒu yìge yáyī.

麥：對了，聽說那個牙醫的技術還不錯。
現在我就陪你去好不好？

黃：好。

（他們兩個人到了牙醫那兒。有兩個病人在候診室裏坐着，其中一個人的下巴腫得很大。小黃走到掛號的地方。護士小姐給了他一張表。他把表填好了，還給了護士。等了差不多二十分鐘。一個醫生走了出來）。

醫：黃先生，請進來。

（小黃跟了進去。）

醫：請坐。你甚麼地方不舒服？

黃：右邊兒有一顆大牙越來越疼。疼了兩三天了。這兩天都不想吃東西。

醫：讓我看看。那顆牙不行了，得快點兒拔掉。

黃：怪不得這麼疼。大夫，你看非拔不可嗎？

Mài: Dwèile. Tīngshwō nèige yáyīde jìshù hái bútswò. Syàndzài wǒ jyòu péi ni chyù hǎu buhau?

Hwáng: Hǎu.

(Tāmen lyǎngge rén dàule yáyī nèr. Yóu lyǎnggè bìngrén dzài hòujěnshr̀li dzwòje, chíjūng yíge rénde syàba jǔngde hěn dà. Syǎu Hwáng dzǒu dàu gwàhàude dìfang. Hùshr̀ syáujye gěile tā yìjāng byǎu. Tā bá byǎu tyánhǎule, hwángěile hùshr̀. Děngle chàbudwō èrshŕfēn jūng, yíge yīshēng dzǒulechūlai.)

Yī: Hwáng Syānsheng, chǐng jìnlai.

(Syǎu Hwáng gēnle jìnchyu.)

Yī: Chǐng dzwò. Nǐ shémma dìfang bùshūfu?

Hwáng: Yòubyār yǒu yìkē dà yá ywè lái ywè téng. Téngle lyǎngsāntyānle. Jèilyǎngtyān dōu bùsyǎng chr̄ dūngsyi.

Yī: Ràng wǒ kànkan. Nèikē yá bùsyíngle, děi kwài dyǎr bádyàu.

Hwáng: Gwàibudé jèmma téng. Dàifu, nǐ kàn fēi bá bùkě ma?

醫：非拔不可。越早越好。

黃：怎麼？現在就得拔嗎？

醫：對。馬上就拔。

（小黃有點兒不願意，可是已經太晚了。
醫生把他放在大椅子上）

醫：噯呀！不得了，旁邊兒的那顆牙也不行了。

（小黃要站起來。）

黃：喂，慢一點兒。我不要拔。

（醫生不讓小黃站起來。）

醫：不拔不行，太危險了。你的嘴裏都腫了。

黃：可是你拔了一個又一個，一會兒我的牙都沒有了。

醫：不要緊，沒有了，我給你裝假牙。

黃：噯，我沒有錢給你啊！

醫：也沒關係。今天你不給錢，明天我把賬單寄給你。好了，別說話了。

Unit V

Yī: Fēi bá bùkĕ. Ywè dzău ywè hău.

Hwáng: Dzĕmma? Syàndzài jyòu dĕi bá ma?

Yī: Dwèi. Măshàng jyòu bá.

(Syău Hwáng yóu dyăr búywànyì, kĕshr̀ yĭjīng tài wănle. Yīshēng bă ta fàngdzài dà yĭdz shang.)

Yī: Aīyā! Bùdélyău, pángbyārde nèikē yá yĕ bùsyíngle.

(Syău Hwáng yàu jànchilai.)

Hwáng: Wéi, màn yīdyăr. Wŏ búyàu bá.

(Yīshēng búràng Syău Hwáng jànchilai.)

Yī: Bùbá bùsyíng, tài wēisyănle. Nĭde dzwéili dōu jŭngle.

Hwáng: Kĕshr̀ nĭ bále yíge yòu yíge, yíhwèr wŏde yá dōu méiyŏu le.

Yī: Búyàujĭn. Méiyŏule, wó géi ni jwāng jyăyá.

Hwáng: Ai, wŏ méiyŏu chyán géi ni a!

Yī: Yĕ méigwānsyi. Jīntyan nĭ bùgĕi chyán, míngtyan wó bă jàngdān jìgéi ni. Hăule, byé shwōhwàle.

CHINESE-MANDARIN III

SYǍU HWÁNG'S TEETH HAVE BEEN HURTING HIM FOR THREE DAYS

A. DIALOGUE

Syǎu Hwáng sits alone in the room, apparently suffering from some discomfort. Mike returns from the dining room where he finished his meal.

Mike: Why you still don't go to eat?
Hwáng: I don't feel well.

Mike: What happened? Where does it hurt?
Hwáng: My teeth hurt.

Mike: If something is wrong with your teeth, you had better hurry up to ask a dentist to look at them.
Hwáng: There seems to be a dentist near this school somewhere.

Mike: Yes. They say that the skill of that dentist is quite good. Let me go with you right now.
Hwáng: Alright.

(The two arrive at the dentist's office. Two patients are in the waiting room. The jaw of one of them is badly swollen. Syǎu Hwáng goes to the registration desk. The nurse gives him a form. He fills out the form and returns it to her. After about twenty minutes waiting, a doctor comes out.)

Doctor: Mr. Hwáng, please come in.

(Syǎu Hwáng follows him in.)

Doctor: Please have a seat. Where does it hurt?
Hwáng: One of the wisdom teeth on the right has been hurting more and more. It has been hurting for two or three days already. I haven't had any appetite this couple of days.

Doctor: Let me look at it. This tooth is bad, we must remove it soon.
Hwáng: No wonder it hurts so much. Doctor, do you think we have to remove it?

Doctor: We've got to remove it. The sooner the better.
Hwáng: What! Must we remove it this moment?

Doctor: Yes! We remove it right now.

(Syǎu Hwáng is a little reluctant, but it is too late. The doctor places him in a huge chair.)

Doctor: Aiya! Good heavens, the one next to it has also gone bad.

(Syǎu Hwáng wants to stand up.)

Hwáng: Wait a minute. I don't want to pull it.

(The doctor doesn't let Syǎu Hwáng stand up.)

Doctor: It won't do if you don't remove it. It's too dangerous. It's swollen all over in your mouth.

Hwáng: But you are going to pull one after another. Before I know it my teeth will all be gone.
Doctor: That's all right. If you have no teeth left, I will fix you up with dentures.

Hwáng: Ai, I have no money to pay you.
Doctor: That's also all right. If you don't pay me today, tomorrow I will send you a bill. All set, now you stop talking.

B. VOCABULARY

(The underlined characters are required.)

yá	N	牙	tooth
yáyī	N	牙醫	dentist

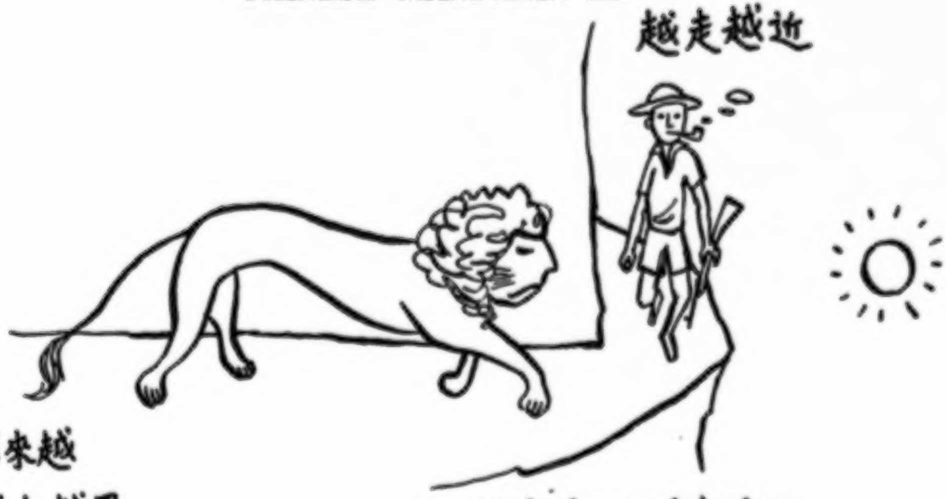
yīshēng	N	醫生	doctor; physician
máubing	N	毛病	illness; trouble
jìshu	N	技術	skill
hòujěnshr̀	N	候診室	waiting room (in a clinic)
gwàhàu	N, V	掛號	register
syàba	N	下巴	chin; jaw
syīn	N	心	heart
hàn	N	汗	perspiration
chywánshēn	N	全身	whole body
Āsz̄pǐlíng	N	阿斯匹靈	Aspirin
yàu	N	藥	medicine
jyǎyá	N	假牙	denture; false teeth
jàngdān	N	賬單	bill
byǎu	N	表	form
-kē	M	顆	a piece (for small solid objects)
tyán	V	填	fill
bádyàu	RV	拔掉	remove
tóuhwūn	V	頭昏	feel dizzy
fālěng	VO	發冷	have chill
gēn	V	跟	follow
téng	Adj	疼	painful

lìhai	Adj	利害	serious
jōuwéi	PW	週圍	around
chèndzǎur	A	趁早	while it's still early; while there is time
ywè	A	越....越	the more...the more
chījūngyígè	IE	其中一個	one of them
bùsyíngle	IE	不行了	gone bad; ruined
gwàibudé	IE	怪不得	no wonder
bùdélyǎu	IE	不得了	It's awful!

C. USAGE 字句用法

1. ywè...ywè 越 ...越 and ywèlái ywè... 越來越

越早越好	the sooner the better
越走越累	The farther I walk the more tired I become.
他越看越喜歡	The more he looks at it the more he likes it.
他越罵他越哭 ma	The more he scolds him, the harder he cries.
我越想越生氣	The more I think about it, the angrier I get.



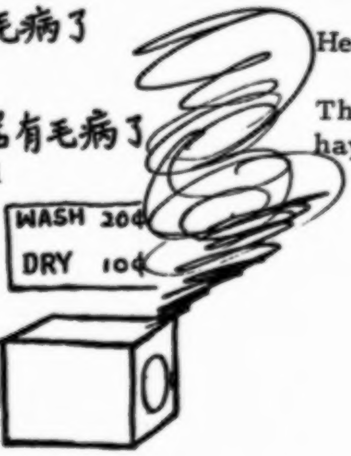
越來越

越來越黑	get darker and darker
越來越大	get bigger and bigger
越來越不像話了	get more and more ridiculous
他越來越胖了	He is getting fatter and fatter.
他開車開的越來越快了	He is driving faster and faster.

2. bìng 病 and máubing 毛病

病	ill, illness
他病了	He is sick.
他有病了	He is sick.
他病了，今天來不了	He is sick, and is not coming today.
他好像病得很利害	He seems to be terribly sick.
máubing 毛病	being out of order; error; shortage; bad habit
我的汽車有毛病了	My car is out of order.

他有毛病了	Something has happened to him; he is not his usual self.
他的牙有毛病了	He has a bad tooth.
這個機器有毛病了 jīchi	This machine has gone haywire.



3. An action taking place periodically.

每三個鐘頭吃一次藥

每三個月去看他一次

每五分鐘疼一次

4. Duration of action, past or present.

他的牙去年疼了兩個禮拜

我在那個學校教書教了兩年

他們昨天看書看了五個鐘頭

他的牙疼了三天了

我教書教了五年了

他打電話打了一個多鐘頭了

D. DIALOGUE EXPANSION 對話應用

A. Nǐ jywéde dōu shr̀ shémma dìfang bùshūfu?
B. Tóu hwūn. Yǎnjing téng bídz bùtūng.

A. Shwèide dzěmma yàng?
B. Hái hǎu, búgwò dzwótyan wǎnshang chūle hěn dwō hàn.

A. Hái yǒu shémma dìfang bùshūfu?
B. Dzǎushang chǐlaide shŕhour syīn tyàude hěn lìhai. Chywánshēn fālěng.

A. Wǒ gěi ni yìsyē Āsz̄pǐlíng chr̄. Yàu dwō hēshwěi, dwō syōusyi.

E. ORAL DRILLS

FLUENCY DRILL

Syǐhwan
Ywè kàn ywè syǐhwan
Tā ywè kàn ywè syǐhwan
Tā ywè kàn nèijyàn yīshang ywè syǐhwan.

Pàng
Ywèlái ywè pàng
Tā ywèlái ywè pàng
Tā ywèlái ywè pàngle.

Kwài
Ywèlái ywè kwài
Kāide ywèlái ywè kwài
Kāichē kāide ywèlái ywè kwài
Tā kāichē kāide ywèlái ywè kwàile.

Bìng
Tā bìngle
Tā yǒu bìngle

Bìng
Bìngde hěn lìhai
Tā bìngde hěn lìhai
Tā hǎusyàng bìngde hěn lìhai
Tā dzwótyan hǎusyàng bìngde hěn lìhai.

Máubing
Yǒu máubing
Wǒde yá yǒu máubing
Wǒde yá yǒule máubingle.

Yítsz̀
Chr̄ yítsz̀
Chr̄ yítsz̀ yàu
Měi sānge jūngtóu chr̄ yítsz̀ yàu.

Lyǎngge lǐbài
Téngle lyǎngge lǐbài
Chyùnyan téngle lyǎngge lǐbài
Tāde yá chyùnyan téngle lyǎngge lǐbài.

Sāntyānle
Téngle sāntyānle
Yá téngle sāntyānle
Tāde yá téngle sāntyānle.

REPLACEMENT DRILL

Tā ywè kàn ywè syǐhwan.
gāusyìng
syǎng
shwō
kwài

Tā ywèlái ywè hǎukànle.
pàngle
chígwàile
Jèige dìfang
ānjingle

Tā shwōhwà shwōde ywèlái ywè kwàile.
dwōle
chr̄fàn
kànshū
kàn dyànyǐngr

Tā bìngle.
yǒu bìngle
bìngde hěn lìhai

Wǒde yá yǒule máubingle.
shōuyīnjī
Tā gēgede
jàusyàngjī
Jèige dyànshr̀

Měi sānge ywè chyù kàn ta yítsz̀.
sānge jūngtóu
sāntyān
sānnyán
sānge ywè
sānge lǐbài

Wǒ kànshū kànle sānge jūngtóule.
Wǒde yá téngle
sāntyānle
Tā bìngle

RESPONSE DRILL

A. Ní syǐhwan jèiběn shū ma?
B. Syǐhwan. Ywè kàn ywè syǐhwan.
yǒuyìsz
gāusyìng
hǎu

A. Tā sywé Jūngwén sywéde dzěmmayàngle?
B. Tā sywé Jūngwén sywéde ywèlái ywè hǎule.
Tā syě dz̀ kwài
Tā chr̄ fàn
dwō

A. Tā jīntyan wèi shémma méi lái?
B. Tā jīntyan yǒu bìngle.
shēngbìngle
bìngle
bìngde hěn lìhai

A. Nǐ dwōshau shŕhour kàn yítsz̀ dyànyǐngr?
B. Wó měi yíge ywè kàn yítsz̀ dyànyǐngr.
hwà yìjāng hwàr
chr̄ yítsz̀ nyóupái
tóu téng yítsz̀

A. Nǐde yá téngle dwōshau shŕhourle?
B. Wǒde yá téngle lyǎngge lǐbàile.
lyǎngge ywèle
lyǎngtyānle

A. Nǐ dzwótyan kànshū kànle dwōshau shŕhour?
B. Wǒ dzwótyan kànshū kànle sz̀ge jūngtóu.
yíge dwō jūngtóu
èrshr dwō fēn jūng
lyǎngfēn jūng jyòu shwèijyàule

F. EXERCISES 練習

1. State in Chinese: 用中國話説

a. She is getting prettier and prettier.
b. The sooner the better.
c. They come closer and closer.
d. His appetite is getting better and better.
e. The more he looks at him the madder he gets.
f. This machine is out of order.
g. The health of this old man is not in good condition.
h. He has been ill for three days.
i. The bus runs (kāi) every twenty minutes.
j. I was ill for two days last month.
k. I have taught geography for ten years.

2. Answer in Chinese: 用中國話回答

a. Syău Hwángde yá téngle jĭtyān le?
b. Syău Hwáng tyánle byău yĭhòu dĕngle dwójyŏu?
c. Yīshēng wèi shémma yàu măshàng bă tāde yá bádyàu?
d. Syău Hwáng shwō méi chyán, Yīshēng shwō shémma?
e. Nèige bìngrénde syàba wèi shémma jŭngle?

3. Complete the following sentences: 填空

a. Wŏ chyùnyan dzài Nyŏuywē jyāushū ______________. (for three months)
b. Tā dzài Oūjōu jù ___________. (for ten years)
c. Jèiwèi lău tàitai dă dyànhwà __________. (for two hours)
d. Tāmen dzài húbyār shang lyòu _____________. (for an hour)
e. Dzwótyan yáyī bă yá ____________. (half an hour)

拔　牙

（節自三百字故事第三冊第九頁）

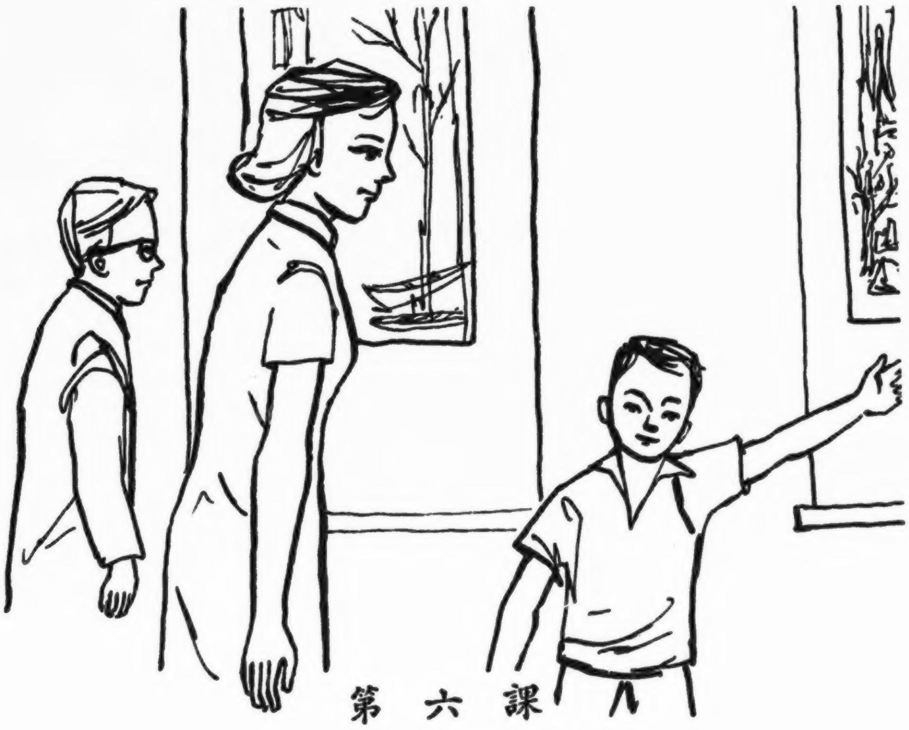
老張很愛錢，他甚麼錢也不願意花。有一天，他有一個牙壞了，疼得他連飯都不能吃了。他想要把這個牙拔了。

他到了一個牙醫那兒。醫生說：「拔一個牙要二十塊錢。」他就說：「太貴了。怎麼拔一個小小的牙，要這麼多錢呢？」醫生說：「拔牙不論大小，都是二十塊錢一個。」他就說：「那麼①同時拔兩個，是不是可以便宜一點兒？」醫生想了一想，說：「可以便宜一點兒。」他就說：「那麼就請你給我拔兩個牙，算三十塊錢好了。」醫生②望着他笑了一笑：「當然可以。」

他們③同意了。醫生給他拔那個壞牙，另外又拔了一個好的大牙。拔完了牙，他把三張十塊錢的④鈔票往桌子上一扔，說：「還是一次拔兩個⑤合算！」說完，他就很高興的走了。

Unit V

1.	同時	túngshŕ	at the same time
2.	望	wàng	
3.	同意	túngyì	agree
4.	鈔票	chāupyàu	banknotes
5.	合算	héswàn	economical



第 六 課

能看多少就看多少

對　　話

麥克，王光生跟小黃三個人在博物館裏已經看了兩個多鐘頭了。覺得有點兒累，就坐下來休息。

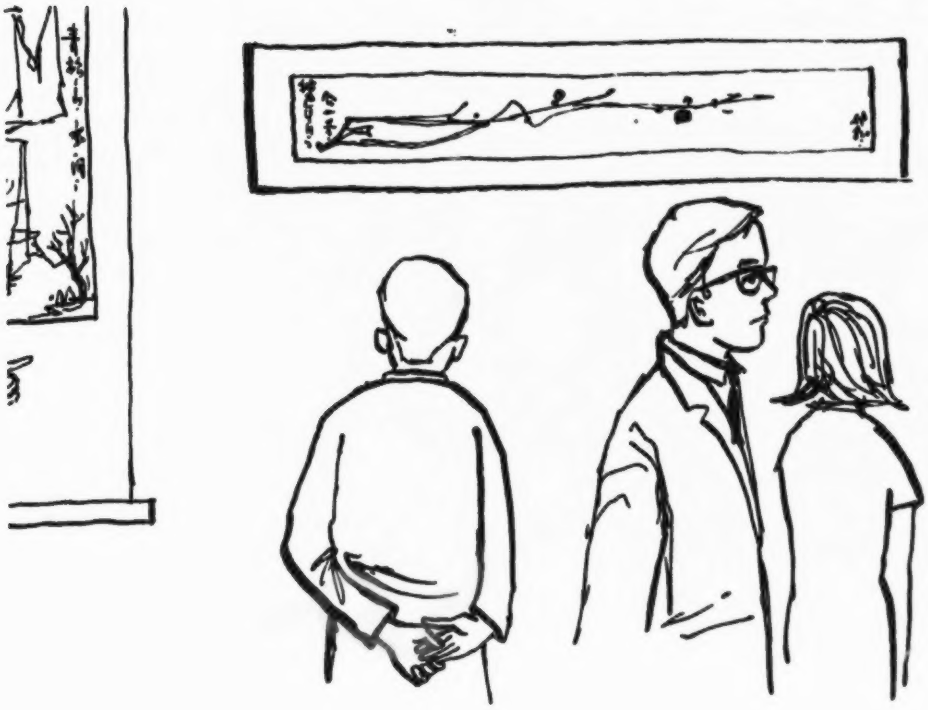
麥：今天來看的人真不少啊！

王：星期天人更多。擠來擠去的甚麼都看不到。今天還好，人不算太多。

麥：這個博物館一共分了多少部門？

王：我算給你聽。一個是藝術館，陳列的都是古代跟近代的各種藝術品跟名畫兒。

Unit VI



UNIT VI

NÉNG KÀN DWŌSHAU JYÒU KÀN DWŌSHǍU

A. DIALOGUE

Mài-ke, Wáng Gwāngshēng gēn Syǎu Hwáng sānge rén dzài bwówùgwǎnli yǐjīng kànle lyǎngge dwō jūngtóule. Jywéde yóudyǎr lèi, jyòu dzwò syàlái syōusyi.

Mài: Jīntyan lái kànde rén jēn bùshǎu a!

Wáng: Syīngchī tyān rén gèng dwō. Jǐlái jǐchyùde shémma dōu kàn búdàu. Jīntyan hái hǎu, rén búswàn tài dwō.

Mài: Jèige bwówúgwǎn yīgùng fēnle dwóshau bùmén?

Wáng: Wǒ swàn géi ni tīng. Yīge shr̀ yìshùgwǎn, chénlyède dōu shr̀ gǔdài gēn jìndàide gèjǔng yìshùpǐn gēn mínghwàr.

麦：我們現在看的就是藝術館吧？

王：對了，還有另外一個部門是關於歷史文物方面的。在那兒陳列着中國以前各朝代用的東西，像衣裳，房屋模型，日常生活用具，武器跟重要的發明等等。再有一個部門是關於科學跟工業方面的，還有一個部門是是………哎，一時想不起來了。

麦：想不起來就算了。反正我們今天一次看不完這麼多東西。中國人注意歷史，一定都很喜歡博物館。

（這時候兒一個太太帶着一個孩子看着畫兒走了過來。）

孩：媽媽，這張是不是畫兒？為甚麼上邊兒寫着這麼多字？

媽：那是畫家寫的詩。

Unit VI

Mài: Wŏmen syàndzài kànde jyòu shr̀ yìshùgwăn ba?

Wáng: Dwèile. Hái yŏu lìngwài yíge bùmén shr̀ gwānyù lìshř wénwù fāngmyànde. Dzài nèr chénlyèje Jūnggwó yĭchyán gè cháudài yùngde dūngsyi, syàng yīshang, fángwū mwósyíng, r̀cháng shēnghwó yùngjyù, wŭchì gēn jùngyàude fāmíng déngdĕng. Dzài yŏu yíge bùmén shr̀ gwānyú kēsywé gēn gūngyè fāngmyànde. Hái yŏu yíge bùmén shr̀ shr̀... Ai, yìshŕ syăngbūchiláile.

Mài: Syăng bùchĭlái jyòu swànle. Fănjèng wŏmen jīntyan yítsz̀ kàn bùwán jèmma dwō dūngsyi. Jūnggwó rén jùyì lìshř, yídìng dōu hén syĭhwan bwówùgwăn.

(Jèi shŕhour yígè tàitai dàije yíge háidz kànje hwàr dzŏulegwòlai.)

Hái: Māma, jèijāng shr̀ bushr hwàr? Wèi shémma shàngbyar syĕje jèmma dwō dz̀?

Māma: Nèi shr̀ hwàjyā syĕde shr̄.

孩：他為甚麼在畫兒上寫詩？

媽：因為………因為很多人都這樣兒做。
　　知道嗎？

孩：那，為甚麼很多人都這樣兒做呢？

（媽媽沒說話帶着孩子走了。）

黃：那孩子的問題很有意思。

参：真是很難回答啊！好吧，我們再
　　繼續看吧！

黃：我們今天能看多少就看多少。
　　我們下禮拜六可以再來。別忘了啊，
　　下禮拜六。

王：不會的，我不會忘的。

Unit VI

Hái: Tā wèi shémma dzài hwàr shang syě shr̄?

Mā: Yīnwei...yīnwei hěn dwō rén dōu jèiyàngr dzwò.
Jr̄dau ma?

Hái: Nà, wèi shémma hěn dwō rén dōu jèiyàngr dzwò ne?

(Māma méishwōhwà, dàije háidz dzǒule.)

Hwáng: Nèi háidzde wèntí hén yǒu yìsz.

Mài: Jēn shr̀ hěn nán hwéidá a! Hǎu ba, wǒmen dzài
jìsyù kàn ba!

Hwáng: Wǒmen jīntyan néng kàn dwōshǎu jyòu kàn dwōshǎu.
Wǒmen syàlǐbàilyòu kéyi dzài lái. Byé wàngle a,
syàlǐbàilyòu.

Wáng: Búhwèide. Wǒ búhwèi wàngde.

CHINESE-MANDARIN III

LET'S SEE AS MUCH AS WE CAN

A. DIALOGUE

Mike, Wáng Gwāngshēng, and Syǎu Hwáng have been touring the museum for over two hours already. They feel a little tired, and they sit down to rest.

Mike: There are really quite a lot of visitors today.

Wáng: There are even more people on Sunday. They push back and forth so that nobody gets to see anything. It's rather nice today, not too crowded.

Mike: How many sections are there in this museum?

Wáng: Let me count them for you. There is an art section, displaying ancient and modern objects of art and famous paintings.

Mike: What we are looking at now is the art section, isn't it?

Wáng: Yes. Another section is related to historical articles. On display there are the articles used in the past dynasties of China, such as clothes, models of buildings, articles of daily use, weapons and significant inventions, etc. Still another section of the museum has to do with industrial and scientific matters. One further section deals with...with...Ai, I cannot think of it offhand.

Mike: It's all right if you cannot recall it. At any rate we cannot see so many things during this one visit today. The Chinese are history-conscious; they must all like museums very much.

(At this moment a lady approaches where they are. She has a child with her, both looking at the paintings.)

Child: Mommy, is this a painting? Why are there so many words written on it?

Mama: That's the poem written by the artist.

Child: Why did he write a poem on the painting?
Mama: Because... because many people do this. Do you understand?

Child: Well, why do many people do this?

(The lady says nothing; she leads the child away.)

Hwáng: That child's question is very interesting.
Mike: It's really difficult to answer. Well, let's see some more.

Hwáng: We will see as much as we can today. Next Saturday we can come again. Don't forget, next Saturday.
Wáng: No, I won't forget it.

B. VOCABULARY

(The underlined characters are required.)

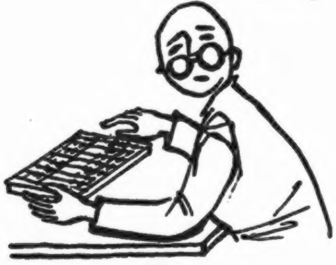
bwówùgwǎn	N	博物館	museum
bùmén	N	部門	section; department
jìndài	N	近代	modern time
gǔdài	N	古代	ancient time
yìshùgwǎn	N	藝術館	art museum
mínghwàr	N	名畫	famous painting
yìshùpǐn	N	藝術品	art object
wénwù	N	文物	cultural relics; cultural artifacts
fāngmyàn	N	方面	aspect
cháudài	N	朝代	dynasty
yùngjyù	N	用具	articles of daily use; tools

wǔchì	N	武器	weapon
mwósyíng	N	模型	model
fāmíng	N	發明	invention
kēsywé	N	科學	science
gūngyè	N	工業	industry
hwàjyā	N	畫家	artist
shr̄	N	詩	poetry
syīngchī	N	星期	week (interchangeable with lǐbài; syīngchīyī, --èr, --sān, etc.)
rénlèi	N	人類	mankind
bāngjù	N	幫助	help
fēn	V	分	divide
chénlyè	V	陳列	display
jìsyù	V	繼續	continue
gwānyú	CV	關於	concerning; about
r̀cháng	A	日常	daily
yǒu shr̀	IE	有事	have things to do; busy
yìshŕ	IE	一時	offhand; at the moment
gè-	Adj	各	each

C. USAGE 字句用法

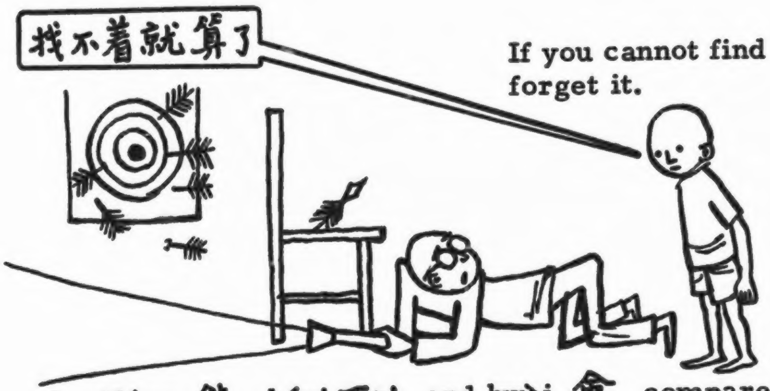
1. swàn 算

算	to calculate; figure out
我們算一算屋子裡有幾個人	Let's count and see how many people there are in the room.
我算給你聽, 中國南邊兒的國家有……	Let me enumerate for you, the nations to the south of China are...
他算不出來這個月用了多少錢	He cannot figure out how much money he has spent this month.



算是	to be considered as
一個鐘頭飛二百里還不算快呢	Flying 200 miles per hour is not considered fast.
他算是很好的牙醫	He is considered to be a very good dentist.
算是我錯了, 好不好? tswò	Let's say I was wrong, is that all right?

算了	forget it! let the matter drop
算了, 別說了	Forget it, don't talk about it any more.



If you cannot find it, just forget it.

2. Néng 能 kéyi 可以 and hwèi 會 compared

能 implies ability, or to be able to

他病了，不能來	He is sick, and cannot come.
我的牙疼，不能吃東西	My teeth ache, I cannot eat.
他的汽車有毛病了，不能動了	His car is out of order, it cannot run.

可以 implies permission

開他的汽車去，也可以	It's also alright if (we, you, etc.) drive his car to go there.
你現在可以走了	You may go now.
你可以吃完飯再來	You may come again after eating.

會 implies to know how to

我會說法文	I can speak French.
他會開飛機	He knows how to fly an airplane.
學了這麼久，還不會？	Having studied it for so long, (you, etc.) still have not learned it?

Sometimes 會 also implies probability

他不會這麼早來	It's not likely that he would come so early
這麼要緊的事情,我不會忘了的	I would not forget such an important matter.
他太太不去,他也不會去的	If his wife is not going, he probably is not going either.

When suggesting permission, 能 and 可以 are interchangeable.

我們可以/能在這兒釣魚嗎?	May (can) we fish here?
我可以/能跟你一塊兒去嗎?	May (can) I go with you?

Compare them in the following examples:

我今天不太舒服不能開飛機 shūfu	I don't feel well today, I cannot pilot a plane.
我沒學過開飛機,所以我不會開飛機	I have not learned how to fly a plane, therefore I don't know how to do it.
在教室裡不可以吃東西	It is not permitted to eat in the classroom.

D. DIALOGUE EXPANSION 對話應用

A. Jèige bwówùgwǎn dzài shìrjyè shang swàn shr̀ syāngdāng dàde.
B. Jēn shr hěn dà. Wǒmen dzwótyan kànle yìtyān dōu méi kànwán.

A. Nǐ jywéde něige bùmén dzwèi yǒu yìsz?
B. Wǒ jywéde lìshř wénwù dzwèi yǒu yìsz.

A. Wó yě shr̀ syǐhwan kàn nèisyē gǔshŕhourde dūngsyi.
B. Nǐ kànjyanle Jūnggwo dzwèi dzǎude jřle méiyou?

A. Kànjyanle. Jēn yǒu yìsz.
B. Jř jyòu shr̀ Jūnggwó fāmíngde.

A. Jŕ gěi rénlèide bāngjù jēn shr̀ tài dàle.

E. ORAL DRILLS

FLUENCY DRILL

Bùmén
Jǐge bùmén
Swànswan yóu jǐge bùmén
Swànswan jèige bwówùgwǎn yóu jǐge bùmén.

Bwówùgwǎn
Hěn dàde bwówùgwǎn
Jèi shr̀ yíge hěn dàde bwówùgwǎn
Jèi swànshr̀ yíge hěn dàde bwówùgwǎn.

Swànle
Jǎubujáu jyòu swànle
Yàushr jǎubujáu jyòu swànle.

Dùng
Bùnéng dùngle
Yǒu máubingle bùnéng dùngle
Jèige chìchē yǒu máubingle bùnéng dùngle.

Kéyi
Yé kéyi
Syān dàu bwówùgwǎn chyù yé kéyi
Syān dàu bwówùgwǎn chyù kàn nèisyē yìshùpǐn chyu yé kéyi.

Wǔchì
Yùng jèijúng wǔchì
Tāmen yùng jèijúng wǔchì
Tāmen hwèi jùng jèijúng wǔchì.

Dyàuyú
Dzài jèr dyàuyú
Kéyi dzài jèr dyàuyú ma?
Wǒmen kéyi dzài jèr dyàuyú ma?
Wǒmen néng dzài jèr dyàuyú ma?

Unit VI

REPLACEMENT DRILL

Jèige bwówùgwǎn yígùng fēnle dwōshau bùmén?
Jèige dìfang
jǐge

Jèige dìfang chénlyèje gè cháudài yùngde yīshang.
bǎije
gǔdài
r̀cháng shēnghwó yùngjyù
chénlyèje

Wǒmen kéyi syān mànmārde kàn yísyar.
dàgàide
kànyikàn

Syǎngbuchǐlái shr̀ něige bùmén, jyòu swànle.
shéi
Wènbuchūlái
něijāng mínghwàr

Syà lǐbài lyòu wǒ yǒu shr̀, bùnéng lái.
Syà syīngchī lyòu
hěn máng

Wǒ búhwèi bá nǐde shēngr̀ wànglede.
nèijyàn shr̀ching
gàusu byérénde
Tā

RESPONSE DRILL

A. Jèige bwówùgwǎn yígùng fēnle jǐge bùmén?
B. Jèige bwówùgwǎn yígùng fēnle sz̀ge bùmén.
yìshùgwǎn
kēsywégwǎn
gūngyègwǎn

A. Jèige bùmén chénlyèje shémma?
B. Jèige búmèn chénlyèje gǔdàide yīshang.
jìndàide fángwū mwósyíng
yìshùpǐn
gūngyèpǐn
wǔchì
míngwhàr
r̀cháng shēnghwó yùngjyù
lìshř wénwù

A. Aīyā, wǒ yìshŕ syǎngbuchǐláile.
B. Syǎngbuchǐláile jyòu swànle.
jǎubujáu
shàngbuchyù
syàbulái
chr̄bulyǎu

A. Nǐmen jīntyan néng kàn dwōshau ne?
B. Néng kàn dwōshau jyòu kàn dwōshau.
syě
chr̄
dwókwài
pǎu

A. Nǐ wèi shémma nèmma syǐhwan dàu bwówùgwǎn chyù?
B. Yīnwei wǒ jùyì lìshř.
gǔdài yìshù
jìndài fāmíng
gè cháudàide wénwù

F. EXERCISES 練習

1. Replace the English words with Chinese in the following sentences: 用中文填空

a. Yàushr syǎngbuchǐlai, jyòu ____________________ (forget it!)
b. Wǒ jèige ywè yùngle dwōshau chyán, wǒ ____________ (can't figure out)
c. Wǔ kwài chyán ______________ (is not considered too expensive)

d. Nǐ yǐjīng syěle lyǎngge jūngtóule, wǒ syǎng ni yídìng hěn lèi. ____________________ míngtyan dzài syě ba. (forget it!)

e. Wǒ ______________ gēge géi wōde chyán, wǒ syàndzài yígùng yǒu èrshŕkwài chyánle. (calculated)

2. State in Chinese: 用中國話說

a. I can speak Chinese.
b. He is sick. He won't be able to come.
c. You cannot fish here.
d. You may go now.
e. She is very lovely. You will like her.
f. Did you learn how to drive?
g. I cannot drive today because my car is out of order.

3. Answer the following questions: 用中國話回答

a. Mài-ke kànde bwówùgwǎn yígùng yǒu jǐge bùmén?
b. Tāmen dzài bwówùgwǎnli yìtyān kàndewán kànbuwán?
c. Syǎu Hwáng shwō yàushr tāmen jīntyan kànbuwan, shémma shŕhour dzài chyù?
d. Nèige syau káidz kàn hwàrde shŕhour wèn ta māma shémma?
e. Tā māma dzěmma shwō?

不說好話

（節自三百字故事第五冊第二十頁）

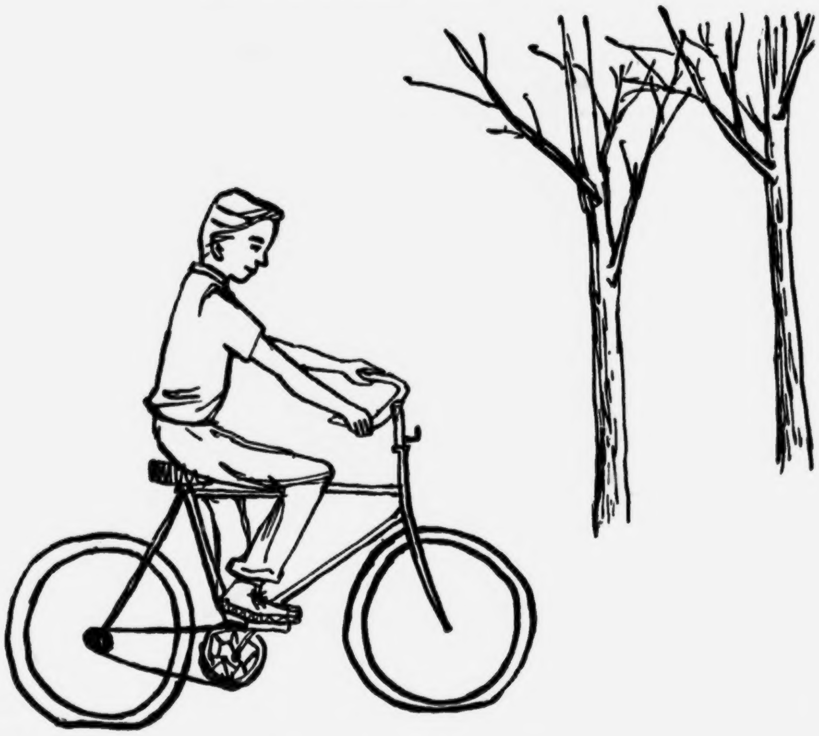
一個老頭兒請了一個鄉下人來替他做工，第一次①見面的時候，老頭兒問他：「你會做甚麼事？」鄉下人說：「我甚麼都會做。要是你的②腿③斷了，我知道怎麼把你④抬到床上去。要是你生了病，我會去給你請醫生。要是你死了，我還會給你買⑤棺材。我又會抬，又會⑥埋。」那老頭兒一聽，很生氣，就說：「那兒有像你這樣不會說話的人啊！你快出去，我不要你！」

鄉下人說：「我們家裏的人都會說話，你怎麼說我不會說話呢，要是你的太太生個孩子是⑦啞巴，你就知道誰真不會說話了。」

老頭兒更氣了就大聲說：「你快走，你快走！」鄉下人說：「好，你放心，你要我給你做事我也不願意了。」老頭兒說：「為甚麼你不願意了？」鄉下人說：「你看你們家連個後門也沒有，要是前門⑧着火了，我怎麼跑的出去呢？」

Unit VI

1.	見面	jyànmyàn	meet in person
2.	腿	twěi	leg
3.	斷	dwàn	break
4.	擡	tái	carry
5.	棺材	gwāntsái	casket
6.	埋	mái	bury
7.	啞巴	yǎba	mute
8.	着火	jáuhwǒ	catch fire



第七課

野　　餐

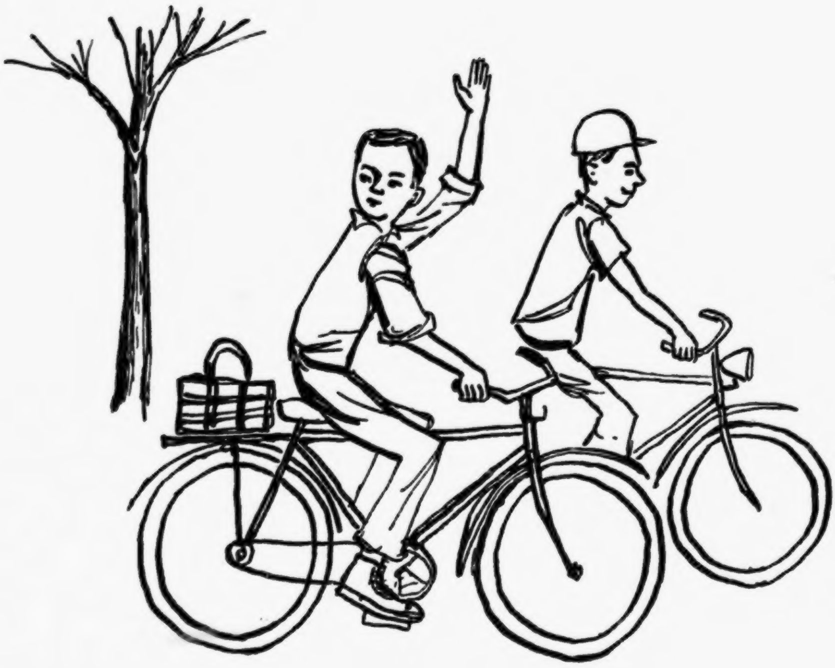
對　　話

在郊外的一條路上，很多男女學生一邊兒騎着自行車，一邊兒唱着歌兒。每個人都顯得很興奮的樣子。麥克跟李元越騎越快。落在後邊兒的小黄正在拼命的追。

麥：去野餐趕上這麼好的天氣真難得。

李：可不是嗎，天上連一點兒雲彩都沒有。等一下兒到了山上我就去晒太陽。

Unit VII



UNIT VII

YETSĀN

A. DIALOGUE

Dzài jyāuwàide yìtyáu lù shang, hěn dwō nán nyǔ sywésheng yìbyār chíje dz̀syīngchē, yìbyār chàngje gēr. Měigè rén dōu syǎnde hěn syīngfènde yàngdz. Mài-ke gēn Lǐ Ywán ywè chí ywè kwài. Lwò dzài hòu byārde Syǎu Hwáng jèngdzài pīnmìngde jwēi.

Mài: Chyù yětsān gǎnshang jèmma hǎude tyānchi jēn nándé.

Lǐ: Kě búshr̀ ma, tyān shang lyán yìdyǎr yúntsai dōu méiyou. Děng yísyàr dàule shān shang wǒ jyòu chyù shài tàiyang.

麥：要是能湊夠四個人我就打橋牌。

噯，小黃怎麼騎的這麼慢？

李：我們騎慢點兒等等他吧。

麥：真差勁兒，才騎這麼一會兒就騎不動了。小黃，加油兒！

黃：騎那麼快幹嗎？你們騎的都是新車。我這個老爺車當然趕不上你們了。喂，麥克，你的車怎麼有四個輪子呀？

麥：那兒的話，我的車也只有兩個輪子。

黃：那麼，為甚麼你好像在開汽車呢？

（他們又騎了一會兒就到了野餐的地方）。

麥：這塊草地真不錯，怎麼樣？小黃，要不要打橋牌？

黃：我不想打。

麥：你不是說那天我們一邊兒晒太陽，一邊兒打橋牌嗎？

Unit VII

Mài: Yàushr̀ néng tsòu gòu sz̀ge rén, wǒ jyòu dǎ chyáupái.
Ei, Syǎu Hwáng dzěmma chíde jèmma màn?

Lī: Wǒmen chī màn dyǎr déngdeng tā ba.

Mài: Jēn chàjyèr, tsái chí jèmma yìhwěr jyòu chí
búdùngle. Syǎu Hwáng, jyāyóur!

Hwáng: Chí nèmma kwài gàmmá? Nīmen chíde dōu shr̀ syīn chē.
Wǒ jèige lǎuyéchē dāngrán gǎn búshàng nīmenle. Wèi,
Mài-ke, nīde chē dzěmma yǒu sz̀ge lwúndz ya?

Mài: Nǎrde hwa, wǒde chē yé jŕ yóu lyǎngge lwúndz.

Hwáng: Nèmma, wèi shémma ní hǎusyàng dzài kāi chìchē ne?

(Tāmen yòu chíle yìhwěr jyòu dàule yětsānde dìfang.)

Mài: Jèikwài tsǎudì jēn bútswò. Dzěmma yàng? Syǎu Hwáng,
yàu buyau dǎ chyáupái?

Hwáng: Wǒ bùsyáng dǎ.

Mài: Nī búshr̀ shwō něityān wǒmen yìbyār shài tàiyang,
yìbyār dǎ chyáupái ma?

黃：我才沒說呢！這麼大太陽。太晃
　　眼睛。

麦：那我們可以到蔭涼兒裏去打，不是就
　　不晃眼睛了嗎？

黃：到蔭涼兒裏頭還晒甚麼太陽呢？

麦：那麼你不打就算了。

（麦克拿出東西來吃。）

李：麦克，這麼早就吃？

麦：先墊墊肚子。

李：嚇！今天來了這麼多人。這麼好的
　　天氣，你看每個人都很高興。

黃：那個孩子就不高興。正在那兒哭呢！

麦：大概是找不着他媽媽了。

Unit VII

Hwáng: Wŏ tsái méi shwō ne! Jèmma dà tàiyang. Tài hwáng yănjing.

Mài: Nà wŏmen kéyi dàu yīnlyángrli chyù dă, búshr̀ jyòu bùhwáng yănjingle ma?

Hwáng: Dàu yīnlyángr lĭtou, hái shài shémma tàiyang ne?

Mài: Nèmma, nĭ bùdă jyòu swànle.

(Mài-ke ná chū dūngsyi lái chr̄.)

Lĭ: Mài-ke, jèmma dzău jyòu chr̄?

Mài: Syān dyàndyan dùdz.

Lĭ: He! Jīntyan láile jèmma dwō rén. Jèmma hăude tyānchi, nĭ kàn mĕigè rén dōu hĕn gāusyìng.

Hwáng: Nèige háidz jyòu bùgāusyìng. Jèngdzài nèr kū ne!

Mài: Dàgài shr̀ jăubùjáu tā māmale.

CHINESE-MANDARIN III

PICNIC

A. DIALOGUE

On a road in the country many boy and girl students are on their bicycles while singing along the way. Everyone of them appears to be very excited. Mike and Lǐ Ywán ride faster and faster. Syǎu Hwáng, who is lagging behind, tries very hard to catch up with them.

Mike: It's rare to have hit upon such good weather on a picnic day.
Lǐ: Isn't it nice? There's not even a single patch of cloud in the sky. A little later as soon as we reach the hill, I will go and take a sunbath.

Mike: If we can find four partners, I will play bridge. Why is Syǎu Hwáng riding so slowly?
Lǐ: Let's go a little slower to wait for him.

Mike: He is really no good. He has only been riding it for a little while and now he already cannot get going. Syǎu Hwáng, step up.
Hwáng: Why are you riding it so fast? The bicycles you are riding are all new. My old jalopy of course cannot keep up with you. Wei, Mike, why is it that you've got four wheels on yours?

Mike: What? Mine also has only two.
Hwáng: If that's the case, why do you seem to be driving an automobile instead?

(They ride on a while longer and arrive at the place of their picnic.)

Mike: This patch of grass is very nice. How about it? Syǎu Hwáng, do you want to play bridge?
Hwáng: I don't feel like playing.

Mike: Didn't you say someday we would take a sunbath while playing bridge?
Hwáng: I never said such a thing. The sun is so bright. It glares in my eyes.

Mike: Well, then we can go to the shade to play; it will not glare in our eyes there.
Hwáng: If we go into the shade, how can we take a sunbath?

Mike: Well, if you don't want to play, that's all right.

(Mike takes out some things and starts eating.)

Lǐ: Mike, are you eating so soon?
Mike: Just to line my stomach a little bit.

Lǐ: Hey, so many people have come today. The weather is so nice; you see, everyone is in a good mood.
Hwáng: That child over there is not. He is crying.

Mike: Perhaps he cannot find his mother.

B. VOCABULARY

(The underlined characters are required.)

jyāuwài	N	郊外	outside the city; countryside
dz̀syíngchē	N	自行車	bicycle
yúntsai	N	雲彩	cloud
chyáupái	N	橋牌	bridge card game
lǎuyéchē	N	老爺車	jalopy; old broken vehicle
yětsān	N	野餐	picnic
tsǎudì	N	草地	meadow; lawn
yīnlyáng	N	陰涼	shade
chìsyàngtái	N	氣象台	weather bureau
lwúndz	N	輪子	wheel

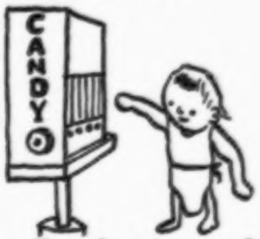
lèi	N	雷	thunder
shǎn	N	閃	lightning
lwò (là)	V	落	fall; drop (cf. làu, II, 2)
chí	V	騎	ride
gǎnshang	V	趕上	catch up
shài	V	曬	expose to the sun
tsòu	V	湊	piece together
dyàn	V	墊	put on bottom; line
hwǎng	V	晃	glare
kū	V	哭	cry; weep
byàn	V	變	change
dwǒ	V	躲	dodge; hide
syīngfèn	Adj	興奮	excited
syǎnde	A	顯的	apparently
pīnmìng	A	拼命	with supreme exertion (straining oneself)
jēn chàjyèr	IE	真差勁兒	really too bad; way below expectation
dà tàiyang	IE	大太陽	very sunny

C. USAGE 字句用法

1. lyán...dōu 連…都

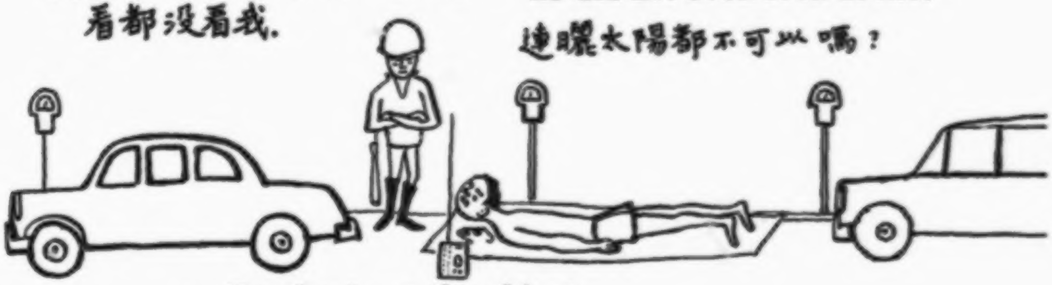
a. Emphasis on the subject

連他都買不起這麼貴的東西	Even he cannot afford to buy such expensive things.
連他都會用這個機器	Even he knows how to use this machine.



b. Emphasis on the main element of the verbal predicate:

他連站都站不起來，怎麼能走呢？	He cannot even stand up, how can he walk?
我跟他說“你好嗎？”他連看都沒看我.	I said "How are you?" to him, he did not even look at me.



c. Emphasis on the object:

他連票都沒買就進去了	He walked in without even buying a ticket.
他連中文小說都看得懂了	He can even read Chinese novels.

2. Jyòu, dzài 就，再 and tsái 才 compared

a. 才 ，就 both mean "only"

我就有一塊錢	I have only one dollar.
他就會說中國話	He can only speak Chinese.
現在才十點鐘	It's only 10 o'clock.
才來了七個人	Only seven persons came.

b. 就 indicates a causal or temporal sequence of two events.

他聽了一會兒收音機就走了	He listened to the radio for a while, then left.
明天我就可以知道了	By tomorrow, I will (then) know.
到了山上我就去曬太陽	Upon arrival on the mountain I will take a sunbath.

c. 才 as "not until"

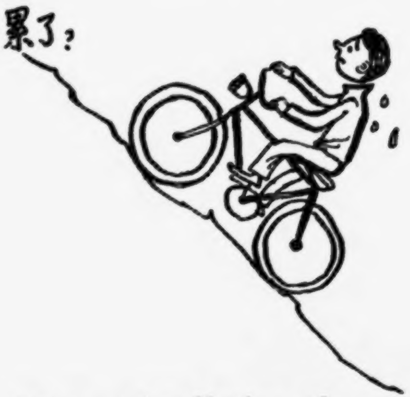
我每天早上十點鐘才起來	Every morning I don't get up until 10 o'clock.
他來了我才走	I will not leave until he has arrived.

d. 就 and 才 compared

When preceded by a time expression 就 means sooner than expected. 才 means later than expected.

他說他兩點鐘來,可是一點鐘他就來了	He said he would come at 2:00, yet he showed up as early as 1:00.
他說他一點鐘來,可是他兩點鐘才來	He said he would come at 1:00, yet he did not show up until 2:00.

才騎了這麼一會兒就累了?



e. 才 expresses contradiction of a previous assumption.

我想你一定喜歡釣魚	I think you must like fishing very much.
我才不喜歡呢	Oh, no, not me.

f. 就 expresses an exception from the assumed generalization.

每個人都很高興!	Everybody is happy!
那個孩子就不高興,正在那兒哭呢!	But that boy is not; he is crying over there.

D. DIALOGUE EXPANSION 對話應用

A. Nǐ shàngtz̀ yětsān hǎu wár ma?
B. Byé tíle. Jēn dǎuméi!

A. Dzěmma hwéi shr̀?
B. Chìsyàngtái gēn wǒmen kāile yíge wánsyàu. Běnlái shwō búsyàyǔ. Kěshr̀...

A. Syàyǔle shr̀ bushr?
B. Kěbúshr̀ ma! Shàngwu chūle dà tàiyang, yílù hěn gāusyìng. Shéi jr̄dau dàule nèr yǐhòu, jèng chr̄je chr̄je dūngsyi, yísyàdz tyān jyòu byànle.

A. Nà nǐmen jyòu yīnggāi kwài dyǎr jǎu yíge dwó yǔde dìfang a!
B. Wǒmen kànjyan shānshang yǒu yíge syǎu fángdz, jyòu wàng nèr pǎu. Kěshr dzǒudàu bàn dàur, yǔ jyòu syàchilaile. Yòu dǎ léi, yòu dá shǎn.

E. ORAL DRILLS

FLUENCY DRILL

Dz̀syíngchē
Jèmma gwèide dz̀syíngchē
Mǎibuchǐ jèmma gwèide dz̀syíngchē
Tā mǎibuchǐ jèmma gwèide dz̀syíngchē
Lyán tā dōu mǎibuchǐ jèmma gwěide dz̀syíngchē.

Jàn
Jànbuchǐlái
Tā jànbuchǐlái
Tā lyán jàn dōu jànbuchǐlái
Tā lyán jàn dōu jànbuchǐlái, dzěmma néng dzǒu ne?

Fēijī
Tā lyán fēijī dōu hwèi kāile.

Lwúndz
Yíge lwúndz
Jyòu yǒu yíge lwúndz
Jèige dz̀syíngchē jyòu yǒu yíge lwúndz.

Lyǎngge rén
Láile lyǎngge rén
Tsái láile lyǎngge rén
Syàndzài tsái lǎile lyǎngge rén.

Shŕdyǎn jūng
Tsái shŕdyǎn jūng
Syàndzài tsái shŕdyǎn jūng.

Tàiyang
Shài tàiyang
Chyù shài tàiyang
Dàule yětsānde dìfang jyòu chyù shài tàiyang
Wǒ dàule yětsānde dìfang jyòu chyù shài tàiyang.

Chí dz̀syíngchē
Chyù chí dz̀syíngchē
Dàu jyāuwài chyù chí dz̀syíngchē
Dzǎushang dàu jyāuwài chyù chí dz̀syíngchē
Dzǎushang shŕdyan jūng tsái dàu jyāuwài chyù chí dz̀syíngchē.

Nǐ shwō lyǎngdyan jūng lái
Nǐ shwō lyǎngdyan jūng lái, dzěmma sāndyan jūng tsái lái?

Nǐ shwō lyǎngdyan jūng lái
Nǐ shwō lyǎngdyan jūng lái, dzěmma yìdyan jūng jyòu láile?

Dǎ léi
Pà dǎ léi
Nǐ pà dǎ léi ma? Wǒ búpà dǎ léi.
Wó syáng nǐ yídìng pà dǎ léi. Wǒ tsái búpà dǎ léi ne.
Wó syáng nǐmen yídìng pà dǎ léi. Wǒmen tsái búpà dǎ léi ne.
Wó syáng nǐmen yídìng pà dǎ léi. Wǒ jyòu búpà dǎ léi.

REPLACEMENT DRILL

Lyán tā dōu búhwèi dǎ chyáupái.
bùsyǐhwan
chyù yětsān
syǎu háidz

Tā lyán chyáupái dōu búhwèi dǎ.
shū dōu bùmǎi
shū dōu mǎibuchǐ

Tā lyán gǔdàide yīshang dōu yǒu.
fēijīde lwúndz
chyán dōu méiyou
yīshang dōu méichwān

Tā jyòu yǒu yíge lǎuyéchē.
péngyou
syǐhwan
chyán

Tā shŕdyan jūng tsái lái.
syàwu sāndyan jūng
chr̄ wǔfàn
dàu wǒ jèr lái

Wǒ dàule tā nèr jyòu chr̄ dūngsyi.
jyòu dǎ dyànhwà
dǎle chyáupái
jyòu chyú chí dz̀syíngchē

Nǐ shwō lyángdyan jūng lái, dzěmma yīdyan jūng jyòu láile?
Nǐ shwō sāndyan jūng
dǎ chyáupái
chyù yětsān

Nǐ shwō yīdyan jūng lái, dzěmma lyángdyan jūng tsái lái?
chyù shài tàiyang

RESPONSE DRILL

A. Tā mǎidechǐ nèige chìchē ma?
B. Lyán tā dōu mǎibuchǐ.
tā bàba
wǒ nèige péngyou

A. Tā yàu mǎi nèige chìchē ma?
B. Búyàu. Tā lyán kàn dōu búkàn.
wèn
syǎng
tí

A. Nǐ búshr̀ shwō tā dzǒule ma? Kěshr̀ tāde yīshang hái dzài jèr ne.
B. Tā lyán yīshang dōu méichwān jyòu dzǒule.
fàn
chá

A. Syàndzài jǐdyan jūngle?
B. Syàndzài tsái lyángdyan jūng.
sāndyan jūng
wúdyan jūng

A. Nǐ chr̄wán fàn dzwò shémma?
B. Wǒ chr̄wán fàn jyòu kàn dyànshr̀.
dǎ chyáupái
chí dz̀syíngchē
hwéijyā

A. Nǐmen dōu bùsyǐhwan chyán ba?
B. Wǒmen tsái syǐhwan ne.
Tāmen
Nèisyē sywésheng

A. Nǐmen dōu syǐhwan kàn dyànyǐngr ba?
B. Wǒ jyòu bùsyǐhwan.
Tā
Nèige háidz

F. EXERCISES 練習

1. Answer the following questions by using jyòu or tsái: 用"就""才"回答

  a. Nǐ yídìng hwèi chí dz̀syíngchē.
  b. Ní syǐhwan dyàuyú ba?
  c. Měige rén dōu syǐhwan dyàuyú.
  d. Wǒmen dōu shr̀ Ègwo rén.
  e. Jèige wūdzli dōu shr̀ nán sywésheng.

2. State in Chinese: 用中國話說

  a. Even he knows how to ride a bicycle.
  b. Even I cannot afford to buy this radio.
  c. He didn't even wear his shoes.
  d. He doesn't want to sell even if I buy it.
  e. He won't even listen to his wife.
  f. There isn't even a piece of cloud in the sky.

3. State in English: 用英文說

  a. Wǒ lyán jèige lǎuyéchē dōu mǎibuchǐ, hái mǎidechǐ syīnchē ma?
  b. Lyán wǒ dōu mǎibuchǐ jèige chē, shéi mǎidechǐ?
  c. Lyán shài tàiyang dōu bù kéyi ma?

d. Tā lyán kàn dōu méi kàn jyòu dzǒule.
e. Tā lyán kū dōu méi kū jyòu dzǒule.
f. Tā lyán fàn dōu méi chr̄ jyòu dzǒule.
g. Tā lyán hwà dōu méi shwō jyòu dzǒule.

4. Complete the following sentences with jyòu, tsái or dzài: 填空

a. Chíng nǐ míngtyan syàwu ______________ lái.
b. Wǒ dzwótyan kànwán shū ______________ dzǒude.
c. Jīntyan méi shŕjyān le, míngtyan ________________ chyù ba.
d. Wǒ dzwótyan kànwán shū ______________ dzǒule.
e. Syàndzài ________________ shŕdyan jūng.

Unit VII

秋　　夜

(節自魯迅"秋夜")

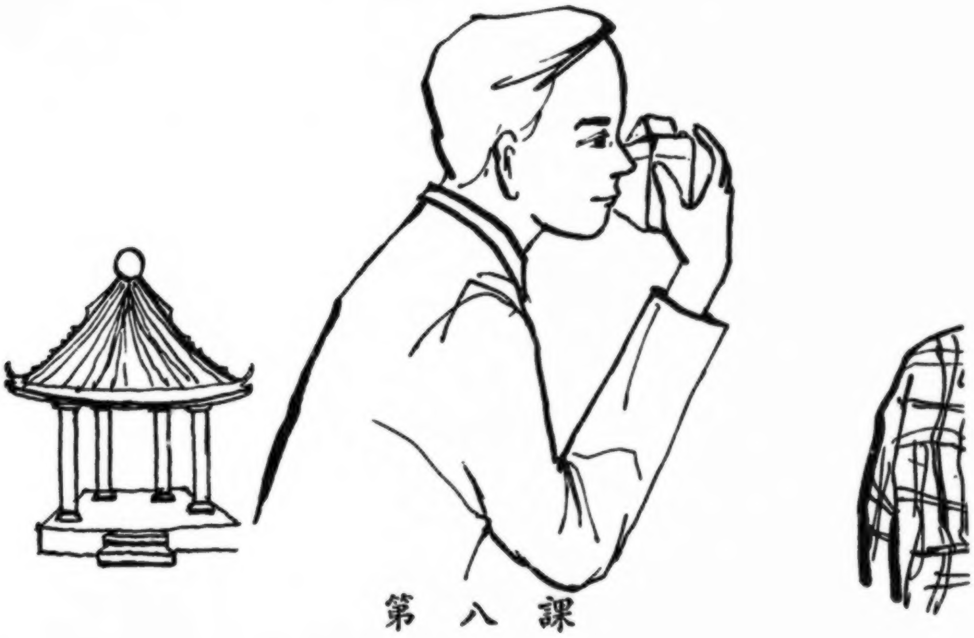
在我的後園，可以看見牆外有兩棵樹。一棵是①棗樹，還有一棵也是棗樹。

這方面的夜的②天空，奇怪而高 。我生平沒有見過這樣奇怪的高的天空。他好像要離開人間③而去，使人們抬頭不再看見。可是現在④却非常白藍。⑤閃閃幾十個星星的眼。冷眼，他的⑥口角上現出⑦微笑，好像自己以爲很有深意，把⑧霜⑨灑在我的園裏的野花草上。

我不知道那些花真叫什麼名字，不知道人們叫他們什麼名字。我⑩記得有一種開過極細小的粉紅花，現在還開着，但是更細小了。他在冷的夜氣中，⑪瑟縮地做夢，夢見春的到來，夢見秋的到來，夢見瘦的詩人把眼淚⑫揩在最後的⑬花瓣上，告訴她：秋雖然來，冬雖然來，接着的還是春⑭蝴蝶亂飛⑮蜜蜂都唱起春詞來了。

CHINESE-MANDARIN III

1.	棗樹	dzǎushù	date tree
2.	天空	tyānkūng	the sky
3.	而	ér	ar , and yet; also
4.	却	chywè	but; yet
5.	閃々	shánshǎn	to flash; blink (cf. Unit 14)
6.	口	kǒu	mouth
7.	微笑	wēisyàu	smile
8.	霜	shwāng	frost
9.	灑	sǎ	to sprinkle
10.	記得	jìdé	to recall
11.	瑟縮	sèswō	numbed and stiff from cold; shivering
12.	搽	chá	to smear; to wipe on
13.	花瓣	hwābàn	petals
14.	蝴蝶	húdyé	butterfly
15.	蜜蜂	mìfēng	bee



第八課

笑一笑

對話

劉婉如：小黃，麥克，我們到那邊兒去照照像，好不好？

麥：噯，果然不錯。

劉：甚麼不錯？

麥：中國人真愛照像，我在美國看見的中國人，每兩個人最少有三架照相機。

黃：你在美國看見的中國人多半兒是旅行的人。他們當然都喜歡照相。這兒的美國人不也都帶着照相機嗎？

Unit VIII

UNIT VIII

SYÀUYÍSYÀU

A. DIALOGUE

Lyóu Wǎnrú: Syǎu Hwáng, Mài-ke, wǒmen dàu nèibyār chyù jàujausyàng, hǎu buhau?

Mài: Ai, gwǒran bútswò.

Lyóu: Shémma bútswò?

Mài: Jūnggwo rén jēn aì jàusyàng. Wǒ dzài Měigwó kànjyànde Jūnggwó rén, méi lyǎngge rén dzwèisháu yǒu sānjyà jàusyàngjī.

Hwáng: Nǐ dzài Měigwó kànjyànde Jūnggwo rén dwōbàr shr̀ lyǔsyǐngde rén. Tāmen dāngrán dōu syǐhwān jàusyàng. Jèrde Měigwo rén bù yě dōu dàije jàusyàngjī ma?

劉：麦克，你的膠捲兒是黑白的還是五彩的？

麦：五彩的，正好照一照你的花襯衫。

劉：印五彩照片兒很貴吧？普通印一張最起碼的尺寸的照片兒得多少錢哪？

黃：並不太貴，現在越來越便宜了。

麦：你們看這個地方怎樣？我覺得風景很好。小黃，你站在那塊石頭上。我給你照一張，怎麼樣？

（小黃爬上了那塊石頭把頭抬的很高，歪着脖子）。

劉：小黃，換一個姿勢怎麼樣？你那樣子太難看了。

（小黃換了一個姿勢。）

劉：別動了，這樣兒好。笑一笑。

（小黃笑了笑。）

麦：好了。下來吧。這張一定不錯，我們再到那兒去？

劉：我隨便。

黃：嘿，你們看。那個塔很美。我們上去照幾張怎麼樣？

劉：到那個塔上去？走那麼遠去照一張像？不值得吧？

Unit VIII

Lyóu: Mài-ke, nĭde jyāujywăr shr̀ hēibáide háishr̀ wútsăide?

Mài: Wútsăide. Jènghău jàuyījàu nĭde hwā chènshān.

Lyóu: Yĭn wútsăi jàupyār hĕn gwèi ba? Pūtūng yĭn yìjāng dzwèi chīmăde chŕtswùnde jàupyàr dĕi dwōshău chyán na?

Hwáng: Bĭng bú tài gwèi. Syàndzài ywè lái ywè pyányile.

Mài: Nĭmen kàn jèige dìfang dzĕmma yàng? Wŏ jywéde fēngjĭng hén hău. Syău Hwáng, nĭ jàn dzài nèikwài shŕtou shang. Wó géi ni jàu yìjāng, dzĕmma yàng?

(Syău Hwáng pá shàngle nèikwài shŕtou. Bă tóu táide hĕn gāu, wāije bwódz.)

Lyóu: Syău Hwáng, hwàn yīgè dz̄shr̀ dzĕmma yàng? Nĭ nèi yàngdz tài nánkànle.

(Syău Hwáng hwànle yīge dz̄shr̀.)

Lyóu: Byé dùngle, jèi yàngr hău. Syàuyīsyàu.

(Syău Hwáng syàulesyàu.)

Mài: Hăule. Syàlái ba. Jèi jāng yīdìng bútswò. Wŏmen dzài dàu năr chyù?

Lyóu: Wŏ swéibyàn.

Hwáng: Hei, nĭmen kàn. Nèige tă hén mĕi. Wŏmen shàng chyù jàu yìjāng dzĕmma yàng?

Lyóu: Dàu nèige tă shang chyù? Dzŏu nèmma ywăn chyù jàu yìjāng syàng? Bùjŕde ba?

黃：看起來好像很遠，其實並不遠。你們要是不願意去就算了。我是無所謂的，那兒都可以。

劉：我記得山那頭兒有一個瀑布。到那兒去贊成不贊成？

麥：贊成。

（他們到了瀑布那兒。）

黃：這兒有甚麼好？你看那些樹亂七八糟的。

劉：我們又不是來照這些樹的。有甚麼關係？

黃：我看這個瀑布也不怎麼樣。白糟蹋膠捲兒！

劉：你不願意在這兒照就算了。我要照。少廢話！

麥：我們再換一個地方去照吧。

劉：麥克，你也不喜歡這個地方？

麥：不是不喜歡。我已經在這兒給你們照了。

劉：照了？甚麼時候照的？

麥：你們兩個人吵架的時候兒。

劉：哎呀！

Hwáng: Kànchĭlai hăusyàng hén ywăn, chĭshŕ bìng bùywăn. Nĭmen yàushr̀ búywànyi chyù jyòu swànle. Wŏ shr̀ wúswŏwèide, năr dōu kéyi.

Lyóu: Wŏ jìde shān nèitóur yŏu yíge pŭbù, dàu nèr chyù dzànchéng búdzànchéng?

Mài: Dzànchéng.

(Tāmen dàule pŭbù nèr.)

Hwáng: Jèr yŏu shémma hău? Nĭ kàn nèisyē shù lwànchībādzāude.

Lyóu: Wŏmen yòu búshr̀ lái jàu jèisyē shùde, yŏu shémma gwānsyi?

Hwáng: Wŏ kàn jèige pŭbù yĕ bù dzĕmma yàng. Bái dzāuta jyāujywăr!

Lyóu: Nĭ búywànyi dzài jèr jàu jyòu swànle. Wŏ yàu jàu. Shău fèihwà!

Mài: Wŏmen dzài hwàn yíge dìfang chyù jàu ba.

Lyóu: Mài-ke, nĭ yĕ bùsyĭhwan jèige dìfang?

Mài: Búshr bùsyĭhwan. Wŏ yĭjing dzài jèr géi nĭmen jàule.

Lyóu: Jàule? Shémma shŕhour jàude?

Mài: Nĭmen lyăngge rén chăujyàde shŕhour.

Lyóu: Aīyā!

CHINESE-MANDARIN III

SMILE!

A. DIALOGUE

Lyóu Wǎnrú: Syǎu Hwáng, Mike, let's go over there to take a few pictures, is that alright?
Mike: Ai, it's really true.

Lyóu: What's true?
Mike: The Chinese are really crazy about taking pictures. Every two Chinese persons I saw in America had at least three cameras between them.

Hwáng: The Chinese you met in America were mostly travelers. They of course were very fond of taking pictures. Aren't the Americans here also carrying cameras around? Mike, is your film black and white or color?
Mike: Color. It's just right to photograph your colorful shirt.

Lyóu: Isn't it very expensive to make color prints? How much does it cost to make a color print of the smallest standard size?
Hwáng: Not very expensive. It's getting cheaper and cheaper.

Mike: What do you think of this place? I think the view is very good. Syǎu Hwáng, you get on top of that rock. Let me take one of you, alright?

(Syǎu Hwáng climbs on that rock. He raises his head very high, tilting his neck.)

Lyóu: Syǎu Hwáng, how about changing your pose? The way you look is very ugly.

(Syǎu Hwáng changes his pose.)

Lyóu: Don't move, this is good. Smile.

(Syǎu Hwáng smiles.)

Mike: You can come down now. This one will surely turn out very good. Where else do we go?
Lyóu: It makes no difference to me.

Hwáng: Hey, look here. That pagoda is very beautiful. Let's go over there to take a few pictures, all right?
Lyóu: Get on that pagoda? Walking so far just to get a picture? It's not worth it.

Hwáng: It looks very far, but in reality it isn't too far. If you don't like to go, let's forget it. I'm not particular, anywhere will do.
Lyóu: I remember that there is a waterfall on the other side of the mountain. Let's go over there. Do you agree?

Mike: Agree.

(They arrive at the waterfall.)

Hwáng: What's good about this place? Look at those trees; they are so messy.
Lyóu: We're not coming to photograph these trees. What does it matter?

Hwáng: I don't think this waterfall is anything special. We are only wasting film.
Lyóu: If you don't want to take a picture here, that's alright. I want to take one. Don't talk so much.

Mike: Let's go to another place to take pictures.
Lyóu: Mike, you don't like this place either?

Mike: It's not that I don't like it. I have already taken a picture of you people here.
Lyóu: You've already taken it? When did you take it?

Mike: When you two were quarreling.
Lyóu: Aiya!

B. VOCABULARY

(The underlined characters are required.)

shŕtou	N	石頭	stone; rock
dz̄shr	N	姿勢	pose
yàngdz	N	樣子	appearance
tǎ	N	塔	pagoda
pǔbù	N	瀑布	waterfall
dàiyu	N	待遇	treatment
wútsǎi	N	五彩	multi-color
chímǎ	Adv	起碼	the least; at the beginning level
jŕde	Adj	值得	worth
wāi	Adj	歪	slanted; lop-sided
yìn	V	印	print
pá	V	爬	climb
hwàn	V	換	change
dzāuta	V	糟蹋	waste
chǎujyà	V	吵架	quarrel
jřjyàu	V (IE)	指教	give instruction (polite platitude)
chīshŕ	MA	其實	actually
bái	A	白	in vain
gwǒrán	MA	果然	indeed; as expected

dwōbàr	MA	多半兒	mostly
nyánchīng	Adj	年輕	young
wúswǒwèi	IE	無所謂	indifferent
lwànchibadzāu	IE	亂七八糟	disordered
bùdzěmmayàng	IE	不怎麼樣	not so (good, hot, etc.)
shǎu fèihwà	IE	少廢話	don't dawdle
déyì	IE	得意	attain one's wishes; be successful
máma hūhū	IE	馬馬虎虎	so-so

C. USAGE 字句用法

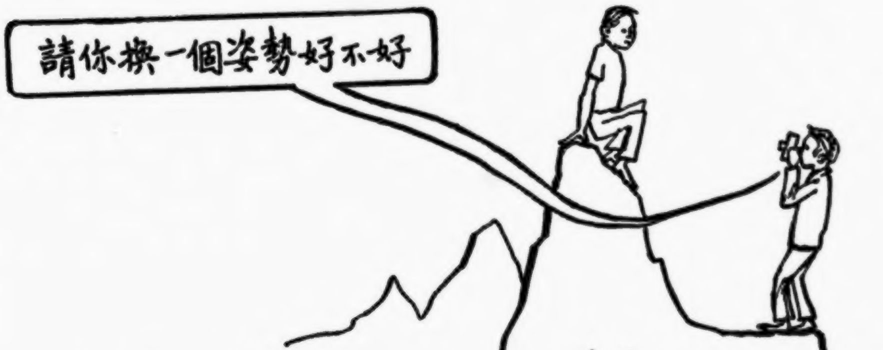
1. Hwàn 換 and byàn 變 compared

變 change (in degree, color, shape, appearance, etc.)

曬了太陽臉就變黑了	Having been in the sun, his face is tanned.
幾年沒見他的樣子變了	Several years without seeing him, he has changed.
天氣變冷了	The weather has become cold.

換 exchange, change from one to another, transfer:

我要換一點兒外國錢	I want to change some foreign money.
別進去,他正在換衣裳	Don't go in, she is changing her clothes.
到博物館去得換好幾次車	To go to the museum, one has to change busses several times.


請你換一個姿勢好不好

2. háishr̀ 還是 and hwòshr 或是 both mean "or", however 還是 suggests interrogation or uncertainty.

你的膠捲兒是五彩的還是黑白的？	Is your film black and white cr color?
我也不知道是黑白的還是五彩的，你拿出來看看就知道了	I also don't know whether it's black and white or color. Take it out and look at it, then you will know.

或是 is used in the declarative sentence

黑白的或是五彩的都可以	Either black and white or color will do.

還是 or 還 , as "still", cf. level I, unit 3

3. About reduplicated verbs

Reduplicating the verb implies casualness about the action.

我要到公園裡去坐坐	I want to go to the park to sit around a bit.

我到草地上去曬曬太陽就回來	I am going to sun myself a little bit on the lawn, then I will come back.
請你吃吃我做的菜	Please taste a little bit (try) my cooking.

For monosyllabic verbs: 坐一坐＝坐坐， 看一看＝看看

For completed action, 了 is inserted in between:

坐了一坐 or 坐了坐， 看了一看 or 看了看 etc.

For a verb-object compound only the verb can be reduplicated:

唱唱歌兒；唱一唱歌兒；唱了一唱歌兒；

一 or 了 cannot be inserted if the reduplicated verb has more than one syllable, such as 介紹介紹 jyèshaujyèshau 介紹一介紹 is not recommended.

D. DIALOGUE EXPANSION 對話應用

A. Ràng wó gěi nǐmen jyèshaujyèshau, Jèiwei shr̀ Lǐ Syānsheng. Jèiwèi shr̀ Jāng Syáujye.
B. Lǐ Syānsheng, chǐng nín dwō jřjyàu.

A. Bù gǎndāng.
B. Lǐ Syānsheng, nín dzài nǎr shàngsywé?

A. Bù. Wó yǐjīng dzwòshr̀le.
B. Yǐjīng dzwòshr̀le? Nín jèmma nyánchīng jyòu dzwòshr̀le? Chǐng wèn nín dzài nǎr déyì?

A. Wǒ dzài yíge jàusyànggwǎnli dzwòshr̀.
B. Nà yídìng hén yǒu yìsz. Dàiyu yé hén hǎu ba?

A. Bú swàn hǎu. Mámahūhū, hái kéyi.

E. ORAL DRILLS

FLUENCY DRILL

Byàn
Byàn lěngle
Tyānchi byàn lěngle
Jèi lyǎngtyān tyānchi byàn lěngle.

Hwàn
Hwàn yíge dz̄shr
Chǐng nǐ hwàn yíge dz̄shr
Chǐng nǐ hwàn yíge dz̄shr hǎu buhau?

Hwàn chē
Hwàn háu jǐtsz̀ chē
Děi hwàn háu jǐtsz̀ chē
Dàu bwówùgwǎn chyù děi hwàn háu jǐtsz̀ chē.
Wǒmen dàu bwówùgwǎn chyù děi hwàn háu jǐtsz̀ chē.

Háishr̀
Shr̀ wútsǎide háishr̀ hēibáide?
Nǐde jyāujywǎr shr̀ wútsǎide háishr̀ hēibáide?
Nǐ jèige jàusyàng jīlide jyāujywǎr shr̀ wútsǎide háishr̀ hēibáide?

Hwòshr̀
Hēibáide hwòshr̀ wútsǎide
Hēibáide hwòshr̀ wútsǎide dōu kéyi.

Gūngywán hwòshr̀ bwówùgwǎn
Dàu gūngywán chyù hwòshr̀ dàu bwówùgwǎn chyù
Dàu gūngywán chyù hwóshr̀ dàu bwòwúgwǎn chyù dōu kéyi.

Kàn
Chyù kànkan
Dàu táli chyù kànkan
Dàu nèige táli chyù kànkan
Wǒ yàu dàu nèige táli chyù kànkan.

Shài
Shàishai tàiyang
Dàu tsǎudì shang chyù shàishai tàiyang
Wǒ dàu tsǎudì shang chyù shàishai tàiyang jyòu hwéilai.

Hē
Hēhe chá
Hēhe wó sùng gei nǐde chá
Chǐng nǐ hēhe wǒ sùng gei nǐde chá.

REPLACEMENT DRILL

Syǎu Hwáng hwànle yíge dz̄shr.
yíjyàn chènshān
Nèige nyǔ háidz
hěn dwō wàigwo chyán

Jèige chéngde yàngdz byànle.
Nèige nán háidzde
shēngyin

Dàu tā nèr chyù háishr̀ dàu pǔbù nèr chyù?
gūngywán bwówùgwǎn
tǎ nèr pǔbù nèr
shŕtou shang tsǎudi shang

Kàn dyànshr̀ hwòshr kàn dyànyǐngr dōu kéyi, wǒ wúswǒwèi.
Syān kàn dyànshr̀ hwòshr̀ syān kàn dyànyǐngr
wǒ swéibyàn

Nǐ kàn nèisyē shū, lwànchībādzāude.
wǒ jèisyē dūngsyi
ní bǎ nèisyē shū bǎide

Dzài jèr jàusyàng jēn shr̀ bái dzāuta jyāujywǎr.
Gěi tā jàusyàng
bái dzāuta shŕhour
Gēn tā tánhwà

Wǒ yàu dàu nèige tsǎudi shang chyù shàishai tàiyang.
dzwòdzwo
nèikwài shŕtou shang
wàng syà kànkan

Wó syǎng sywésywe kāi chìchē.
Jūnggwo hwà
Wǒmen shwōshwo

Wó syǎng sywéyisywe kāi chìchē.
Wǒ sywélesywé
Wǒ dzwótyan sywélesywé

RESPONSE DRILL

A. Jèi jǐtyān Shànghǎide tyānchi dzěmma yàng?
B. Jèi jǐtyān byàn lěngle.
rè
hǎu

A. Chǐng wèn ni, dàu bwówùgwǎn chyù děi hwàn jǐtsz̀ chē?
B. Dàu bwówùgwǎn chyù děi hwàn lyǎng tsz̀ chē.
hěndwō tsz̀
búyùng

A. Dàu gūngywán chyù háishr̀ kàn dyànyǐngr chyù?
B. Dàu gūngywán chyù.
Kàn dyànyǐngr

A. Dàu gūngywán chyù hwòshr̀ kàn dyànyǐngr chyù .
B. Dàu gūngywán chyù.
Kàn dyànyǐngr

A. Nǐ yàu dàu nǎr chyù?
B. Wǒ yàu dàu nèige táli chyù kànkan.
dzwòdzwo
dzwòyidzwò

A. Nǐ dàu nǎr chyùle?
B. Wǒ dàu táli chyù kànlekan.
dzwò
dzǒu

A. Nǐmen dàu nǎr chyù? Kwàidyǎr hwéilai chr̄fan a!
B. Wǒmen dàu wàibyār jàujausyàng jyòu hwéilai.
sànbù
wár

F. EXERCISES 練習

1. State in Chinese: 用中國話說

a. I have to make several transfers when I go to school by bus.
b. Would you change your pose?
c. The weather has changed.
d. His face turned white.
e. I want to take a short walk in the park.
f. Yesterday we played bridge for a while, then we came home.
g. Please sit down here. I'll be right with you. (Wǒ jyòu lái.)
h. Would you go out and take a look?

2. Complete the following sentences with hwòshr̄ or háishr̀:
用"還是" "或是" 填空：

a. Nǐde chìchē shr̀ 64de __________ 65de?
b. Dzǒu jèityáu lù __________ dzǒu nèityáu lù, yíyang ywǎn.
c. Wǒ bùjr̄dau jīntyan shr̀ syīngchī wǔ __________ syīngchī lyòu.
d. Nǐ yàu mǎi shémma yàngrde jyāujywǎr? Hēibáide __________ tsǎisède?
e. Hēibáide __________ tsǎisède dōu syíng.

3. Answer the following questions: 回答問題：

a. Chǐng wèn ni dzài nǎr dzwòshr̀?
b. Syǎu Hwáng dzài shémma dìfang jàule yìjāng syàng? Shr̀ shémma dz̄shr?
c. Syǎu Hwáng gēn Lyóu Wǎnrù wèi shémma chǎujyà.
d. Mài-kede jàusyàngjīli jwāngde shr̀ wútsǎide háishr hēibáide jyāujywǎr?
e. Mài-ke dzài pǔbù nèr gěi Lyóu Wǎnrú jàule syàng méiyou? Wèi shémma Lyóu Wǎnrú shwō "Aīyā!"?

一　　笑

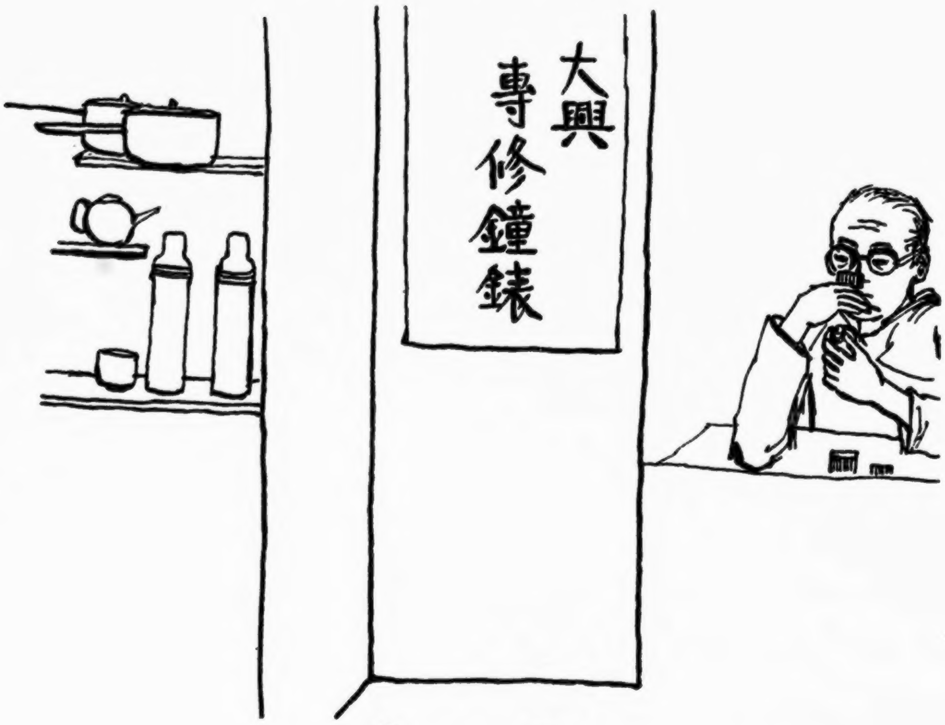
（節自現代中國文學讀本）

十幾年前，
一個人對我笑了一笑。
我①當時不②懂得什麼，
只覺得他笑的很好。
那個人不知後來怎樣了，
只是他那一笑還在；
我不但忘不了他，
還覺得他越久越可愛。
我借他做了許多③情詩，
我替他想出種種④境地；
有的人讀了傷心，
有的人讀了歡喜。
歡喜也罷⑤傷心也罷，
其實只是那一笑。
我⑥至今還不曾找着那笑的人，
但我很⑦感謝他笑的真好。

選自胡適"一笑"

Unit VIII

1.	當時	dāngshŕ	at that time
2.	懂	dǔng	understand
3.	情詩	chíngshr̄	love poem
4.	境地	jìngdì	circumstance; situation
5.	傷心	shāngsyīn	sorrow
6.	至今	jr̀jīn	till now
7.	感謝	gǎnsyè	thank



第 九 課

修一修得多少錢呢？

對　　話

漢口街跟上海街拐角兒的地方有一個小店，在門口兒的玻璃上寫着「修理鐘錶」四個字，麥克看見一個戴眼鏡兒的老頭兒在裏邊兒專心地修着錶。

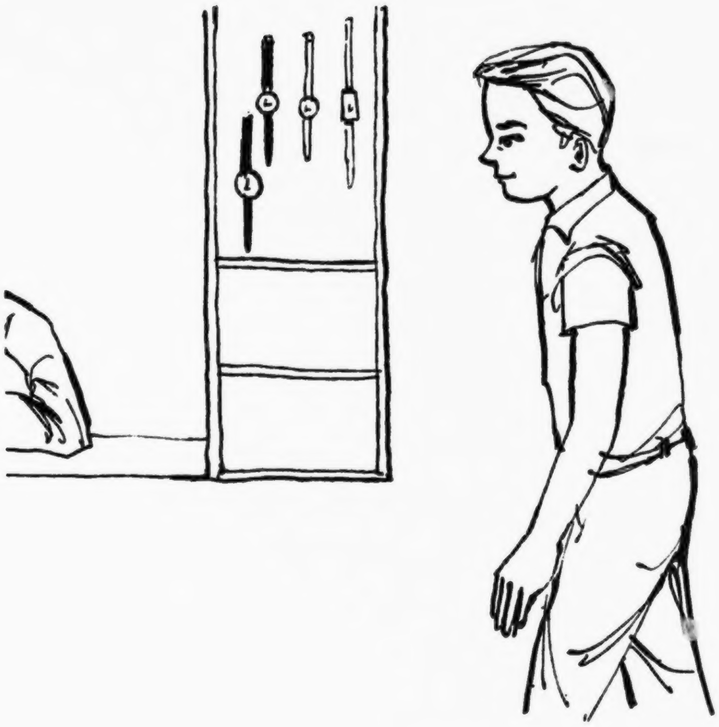
麥：對不起。請問你，能不能給我修一修這個錶。

老：當然可以。是甚麼毛病？

麥：走的太快。

老：我看一看。

Unit IX



UNIT IX

SYŌUYÌSYŌU DĔI DWŌSHAU CHYÁN NE?

A. DIALOGUE

Hànkŏu Jyē gēn Shànghăi Jyē gwáijyăurde dìfāng yŏu yíge syău dyàn, dzài ménkŏurde bwōli shang syĕje "Syōulĭ Jūng Byău" sz̀ge dz̀. Mài-ke kànjyàn yíge dài yănjìngrde lăutóur dzài lĭbyār jwānsyīnde syōuje byău.

Mài: Dwèibuchĭ. Chĭng wèn ni, néng bùnéng géi wŏ syōuyìsyōu jèige byău.

Lău: Dāngrán kéyi. Shr̀ shémma máubing?

Mài: Dzŏude tài kwài.

Lău: Wŏ kànyíkàn.

老：沒多大毛病，你把它放在這兒吧。

麥：修一修得多少錢呢？

老：小毛病。隨便給幾塊錢吧。

麥：這個………

老：就算五塊錢吧。

麥：好吧。我甚麼時候來拿呢？

老：明天下午。

麥：好吧。可別越修越壞呀。

老：那得看你的運氣了。

麥：哈哈。再見。

老：慢走啊！

（麥克打算順便在街上買一雙手套跟兩三雙襪子。他在一個百貨店裏看了看。可是找不着合適的。）

店員：你穿幾號的？

麥：十二號的。

Unit IX

Lău: Méi dwō dà máubing. Ní bă tā fàng dzài jèr ba.

Mài: Syōuyìsyōu dĕi dwōshau chyán ne?

Lău: Syău máubing, swĕibyàn géi jĭkwài chyán ba.

Mài: Jèige...

Lău: Jyòu swàn wŭkwài chyán ba.

Mài: Hău ba. Wŏ shémma shŕhour lái ná ne?

Lău: Míngtyan syàwu.

Mài: Hău ba. Kĕ byé ywè syōu ywè hwài a.

Lău: Nà dĕi kàn nĭde yùnchĭ le.

Mài: Ha ha. Dzàijyàn.

Lău: Màn dzŏu a!

(Mài-ke dăswàn shwùnbyàn dzài jyē shang măi yìshwāng shŏutàur gēn lyăng sān shwāng wàdz. Tā dzài yíge băihwò dyànli kànlekàn. Kĕshr̀ jăubùjáu héshr̀de.)

D-y: Nĭ chwān jĭhàurde?

Mài: Shŕèr hàude.

員：這邊兒都是十二號的。

麥：我想找一雙深一點兒顏色的襪子。

員：這雙深綠的怎麼樣？

麥：沒有更深的嗎？

員：你看，這雙是不是深一點兒呢？

麥：我看跟那雙一樣，算了，我就拿
這兩雙綠的吧。

員：還要別的東西嗎？

麥：不了，一共多少錢？

員：正好五塊錢。

麥：好，這是五塊錢。

員：謝謝，慢走啊！

（麥克一邊兒走一邊兒自言自語：真奇怪，大概
前邊兒出了甚麼事了吧？爲甚麼他們都讓
我慢走啊？）

Unit IX

D-y: Jèibyār dōu shr̀ shŕèr hàude.

Mài: Wó syáng jău yĭshwāng shēn yĭdyăr yánsède wàdz.

D-y: Jèishwāng shēn lyùde dzĕmma yàng?

Mài: Méiyou gèng shēnde ma?

D-y: Nĭ kàn, jèishwāng shr̀ búshr̀ shēn yĭdyăr ne?

Mài: Wŏ kàn gēn nèishwāng yīyàng. Swànle, wŏ jyòu ná
jèi lyăngshwāng lyùde ba.

D-y: Hái yàu byéde dūngsyi ma?

Mài: Bùle. Yīgùng dwōshau chyán?

D-y: Jènghău wŭkwài chyán.

Mài: Hău. Jèi shr̀ wŭkwài chyán.

D-y: Syèsye. Màn dzŏu a!

(Mài-ke yĭbyār dzŏu yĭbyār dz̀yán dz̀yŭ: Jēn chīgwài, dàgài chyánbyār chūle shémma shr̀le ba? Wéi shémma tāmen dōu ràng wo màn dzŏu a?)

CHINESE-MANDARIN III

HOW MUCH DOES IT COST TO FIX IT?

A. DIALOGUE

At the corner of Shanghai Road and Hànkǒu Road there is a small shop. On the glass in front of the shop are written: "Watch and Clock Repair". Mike notices an old man in the shop who wears eyeglasses. He is repairing a watch with concentrated attention.

Mike: Excuse me. May I ask you if you could fix up my watch for me?
Old Man: Of course. What's wrong with it?

Mike: It gains time.
O. M.: Let me take a look... Nothing serious. You can leave it here.

Mike: How much does it cost to fix it?
O. M.: It's not a serious trouble. Suit yourself and give whatever you wish.

Mike: Well, this...
O. M.: Make it five bucks.

Mike: Alright. When can I come back for it?
O. M.: Tomorrow afternoon.

Mike: Fine. But don't make it any worse.
O. M.: That has to depend upon your luck.

Mike: Ha, ha. Good-bye.
O. M.: Walk slowly.

(Mike wants to take the opportunity to buy a pair of gloves and two or three pairs of socks. He looks for them in the department store. But he finds no suitable kind.)

Salesman: What size do you wear?
Mike: Size twelve.

S. M.: These over here are all number twelve.
Mike: I'm looking for a pair of socks of darker color.

S. M.: How about this dark green pair?
Mike: Isn't there anything still darker?

S. M.: Look, is this pair a little darker?
Mike: I think it's the same as the other one. Alright, I will take these two pairs of green ones.

S. M.: Do you wish anything else?
Mike: No, thank you. How much are they altogether?

S. M.: Just $5.00 exactly.
Mike: Good. This is $5.00.

S. M.: Thank you. Walk slowly.

(As Mike walks out he mumbles to himself: It's odd, perhaps something happened ahead? Why do they all ask me to walk slowly?)

B. VOCABULARY 生字

(The underlined characters are required.)

byǎu	N	錶	watch
bwōli	N	玻璃	glass
yǎnjìngr	N	眼鏡兒	eyeglasses
gwǎijyǎur	N	拐角兒	street corner
wàdz	N	襪子	socks
mǎimai	N	買賣	business; commerce
jìswànjī	N	計算機	adding machine; calculator
dàhwǒr	N	大夥兒	all; everybody in a group
shǒutàur	N	手套	gloves

màudz	N	帽子	hat
dài	V	戴	wear (hat, flower, etc.)
chūshr̀	VO	出事	something (bad) happens
shòudelyǎu	RV	受得了	be able to bear or endure
lyù	Adj	綠	green
chígwài	Adj	奇怪	strange
jwānsyīn	A	專心	with concentrated attention
lwùnlyóu	A	輪流	taking turns
màndzǒu a	IE	慢走	walk slowly (used when saying good-bye to a departing guest.)
yìnyán dàu tóur	IE	一年到頭	all year round; all the time
dz̀yándz̀yǔ	IE	自言自語	talk to oneself
shwùnbyàn	IE	順便	while convenient; while you are at it

C. USAGE 字句用法

1. dài 戴 and chwān 穿 , to wear, depict different manners of wearing. They are not interchangeable.

穿衣裳

穿鞋

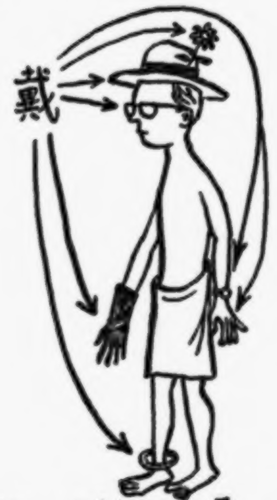
穿襪子

戴帽子
maudz

戴手套兒

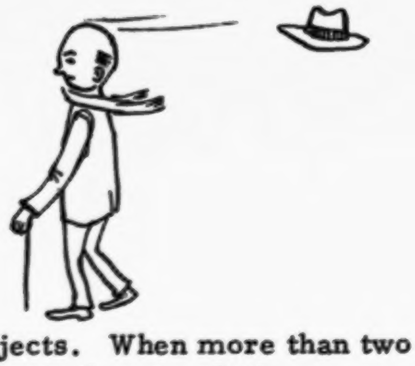
戴眼鏡兒

戴手錶



2. Gèng 更, dzwèi 最, gēn...yíyàng 更, adverbial modifier, expresses comparative degree.

這顏色深, 那顏色更深 yánsè yánsè	This color is dark, that one is darker.
我喜歡釣魚, 他更喜歡釣魚	I like fishing, he likes it even more.
我喜歡戴帽子, 他更喜歡戴帽子 màudz	I like to wear a hat, he likes it more than I.



更 compares two objects. When more than two are compared, use 最 to indicate the superlative.

我很高, 他更高, 他太太最高	I am tall, he is taller, his wife is the tallest.
這些學生裡頭, 他跑得最快	Among these students, he runs fastest.

世界上最冷的地方在那兒?	Where is the coldest place in the world?

3. About particles ba 吧 , ne 呢 , a 啊

These particles function as sentence suffixes. Their meaning is subtly changed according to the context and the sentence intonation. Such subtlety can hardly be translated in isolated sentences.

前邊兒出了事兒了吧?	Perhaps something happened ahead.
你換了一輛汽車了吧 lyàng	You've changed a car, haven't you?
就算五塊錢吧	Let's settle for $5.00.
好吧	All right, fine.
我就拿這兩雙綠的吧 shwāng	I will take these two pairs of green ones.
我甚麼時候來拿呢?	When shall I come to pick it up?
你看這雙襪子的顏色是不是深一點兒呢?	Do you think the color of this pair of socks is darker?

呢 used as a question word differs from 嗎 only by its milder tone of interrogation. In this function, 呢 can be added to all the question forms except the one already with the question word

開車到公園去得多少時候呢?	How much time must it take to drive to the park?
下雨了,還去不去呢?	It's raining, shall we still go?
你的膠捲兒是黑白的還是五彩的呢? jyāujywǎr	Is you film black and white or color?

這顏色是不是更深呢？	Is this color darker?
我每天六點鐘就起來，你呢？	Every morning I get up as early as 6:00, how about you?
我就住在這公園的旁邊兒，你呢？	I live right near this park, and you?
我戴的這個帽子是五塊錢買的，你的呢？	

他吃着飯呢	He is eating.
他還没來呢	He still has not shown up.
我們下午才走呢	We will not leave until this afternoon.
你一定喜歡戴帽子！ 我才不喜歡呢！	You must be very fond of wearing a hat! No! Not at all!

啊 often suggests a bit of exclamation.

這個很好吃啊！	Ah, this is delicious!
慢走啊	Goodbye!
我怎麼知道啊！	How do I know!
你跟他在這兒啊！	Ah, you two are here!

D. DIALOGUE EXPANSION 對話應用

A. Nǐ hái yàu mǎi byéde ma?
B. Bùle. Yígùng dwōshau chyán?

A. Ràng wǒ swànyiswan; Lyǎngkwài wǔ, sz̀kwài wǔ, sz̀kwai èr...yígùng shŕchīkwài èr.
B. Nǐ yùng swànpán yùngde jēn hǎu. Yòu kwài, yòu jwǔn.

A. Wǒmen jèr shr̀ syáu mǎimai, hái yùng swànpan, rénjya dàdyarde mǎimai dōu yùng jīswànjīle.
B. Nǐmen Syīngchī Tyān syōusyi ma?

A. Syīngchī Tyān bùsyōusyi. Yīnyán dàu tóur dōu kāi. Jyòushr gwònyánde shŕhour syōusyi lyǎngsān tyān.
B. Nà nǐmen měityān tsúng dzǎushang shŕdyǎn yìjŕ kāi dàu wǎnshang shŕdyǎn. Yìtyān shŕèrge jūngtóu shòudelyǎu ma?

A. Wǒmen dàhwǒr lwúnlyóuje syōusyi.

E. ORAL DRILLS

FLUENCY DRILL

Dài
Dài yǎnjìngr
Dài yǎnjìngrde lǎutóur
Yíge dài yǎnjìngrde lǎutóur
Màike kànjyan yíge dài yǎnjìngrde lǎutóur.

Chwān
Chwān yīshang
Chwān lyù yīshang
Chwān lyù yīshangde nyǔ háidz
Màike kànjyan yíge chwān lyù yīshangde nyǔ háidz.

Byǎu
Bá byǎu dài shang
Chíng ní bá byǎu dài shang.
Chíng ní bá byǎu dài shang kànkan dzěmma yang.

Màudz
Dài màudz
Dài màudzde nèige rén
Dài màudzde nèige rén shr̀ tāde péngyou.

Chwān
Chwān yīshang
Bǎ yīshang chwān shang
Wó bǎ dzwótyan mǎide nèijyàn yīshang chwān shangle.

Unit IX

Yīshang
Chwān yīshang
Bǎ yīshang chwān shang
Bǎ yīshang gēn syé chwān shang
Bǎ yīshang, syé gēn wàdz chwān shang.

Màudz
Dài màudz
Bǎ màudz dài shang
Bǎ màudz gēn shóubyǎu dài shang
Bǎ màudz, shóubyǎu gēn shǒutàur dōu dài shang.

Dài màudz
Syǐhwan dài màudz
Wó syǐhwan dài màudz
Wó syǐhwan dài màudz, tā gèng syǐhwan dài màudz.

Gāu
Wó hěn gāu
Wó hěn gāu, tā gèng gāu
Wó hěn gāu, tā gèng gāu, tà tàitai dzwèi gāu.

Kwài
Pǎude kwài
Tā pǎude kwài
Tā pǎude hěn kwài
Tā pǎude dzwèi kwài.

Lěng
Dzwèi lěng
Dzwèi lěngde dìfang
Shr̀jyè shang dzwèi lěngde dìfang
Shr̀jyè shang dzwèi lěngde dìfang dzài nǎr?

Chūshr̀
Chángchang chūshr̀
Yìnyán dàu tóur chángchang chūshr̀
Jèige dìfang yìnyán dàu tóur chángchang chūshr̀.

REPLACEMENT DRILL

Màike kànjyan yíge dài yǎnjìngrde lǎutóur.
lǎu tàitai
dà màudz

Wó bǎ dzwótyan mǎide nèijyàn yīshang chwān shangle.
nèishwāng wàdz
chyántyan
méibǎ nèishwāng wàdz chwān shang

Wó syǐhwan dǎ chyáupái, tā gèng syǐhwan.
chyáupái dǎdehǎu
chyáupái dǎde bùhǎu
gāu
chr̄de hěn dwō

Tā dzwèi syǐhwan lyù yánsède yīshang.
shēn yánsè
shwōhwà

Wǒ shémma shŕhour lái ná ne?
dzěmma
chyù
gēn ta shwō

Wó dǎswàn shwùnbyàn dzài jyēshang mǎi yìshwāng shǒutàur.
syǎng
dzài chéngli
yìshwāng wàdz
Chǐng ni

Wǒ jyòu ná jèi lyǎngshwāng lyùde ba.
húngde
mǎi

Dàgài chyánbyar chūle shémma shr̀le ba.
Yésyǔ
tā kāichē

RESPONSE DRILL

A. Něige nyǔ háidz?
B. Chwān lyù yīshangde nèige nyǔ háidz.
chwān húng syéde
chwān bái wàdzde
dài yǎnjìngrde
dài dà màudz

A. Nǐ dzwèi syǐhwan chwān shémma yánsède yīshang?
B. Wǒ dzwèi syǐhwan chwān húngde yīshang.
báide
hēide
shēn yánsède

A. Jèi sānge rén dzěmma yang?
B. Ta gaū, ta gèng gaū, ta dzwèi gaū.
kwài
yǒu chyán
pyàulyang

A. Wǒ syàndzài dàu jyēshang chyù, nǐ yǒu shémma shr̀ ma?
B. Chǐng ni shwùnbyàn tì wó mǎi yìběn shū.
yìshwāng shǒutàur
yìshwāng wàdz
yíge shóubyǎu

F. EXERCISES 練習

1. Supply the missing words with chwān or dài:
用“穿”“戴”填空

a. Tāde shóubyǎu, yǐjīng ____________ le lyǎngnyánle.
b. Jīntyan dzǎushang tā ____________ yīshang ________ le yíge jūngtóu.
c. ______________ je húng màudzde nèiwèi tàitai ywè shwō ywè kwài
(A) Nǐ kàn jèisyē rén dōu _________ yǎnjìngr.
(B) Tā jyòu méi __________ yǎnjìngr.
d. (A) Nǐ yídìng syǐhwan ___________ húng wàdz.
(B) Wǒ tsái bùsyǐhwan ___________ húng wàdz ne.
e. Lyán tā yígùng yóu wǔge rén _________ shǒutàur.

2. Change the following sentences into negative:
變成否定

a. Běijīng hén lěng. Běijīng běibyār gèng lěng.
b. Lyán dzwèi méi chyánde rén dōu mǎidechǐ.
c. Wǒ dàide shǒutàur gēn tāde yíyàng.
d. Tā hwànle háu jǐjyàn yīshang. Jèijyàn dzwèi hǎukàn.
e. Tā kànlekàn nèisyē wàdz. Tā shwō wǒ dzwèi syǐhwan jèishwāng húngde.

3. Complete the following sentences and translate them into English: 用"更""最"填空以後翻成英文

   a. Jèr hén rè, jèrde nánbyār ________ rè.
   b. Lyán __________ yǒu chyánde rén dōu mǎidbuchǐ.
   c. Tā hwànle háu jǐběn shū, jèiběn _________ yúngyì dǔng.
   d. Jèishwāng syé hǎukàn. Nèishwāng _________ hǎukàn.
   e. Tā yíkànjyan nèisyē fángdz jyòu shwō: "Wǒ _________ syǐhwan nèige húngde."
   f. Tā kànlekàn nèisyē fángdz. Tā shwō: "Wǒ ________ syǐhwan nèige húngde."

4. Answer the following questions: 回答問題

   a. Mài-ke dzài nǎr syōude byǎu?
   b. Tāde byáu yǒu shémma máubing? Syōuyisyou déi dwōshau chyán?
   c. Mài-ke wèi shémma mǎibujáu héshr̀de wàdz?
   d. Mài-ke mǎile lyǎngshwāng shémma yánsède wàdz?
   e. Mài-ke mǎile dūngsyi yǐhòu, dzài lùshang dzǒude shŕhour syǎng shémma?

Unit IX

不怕太太

（節自三百字故事第五册第十一頁）

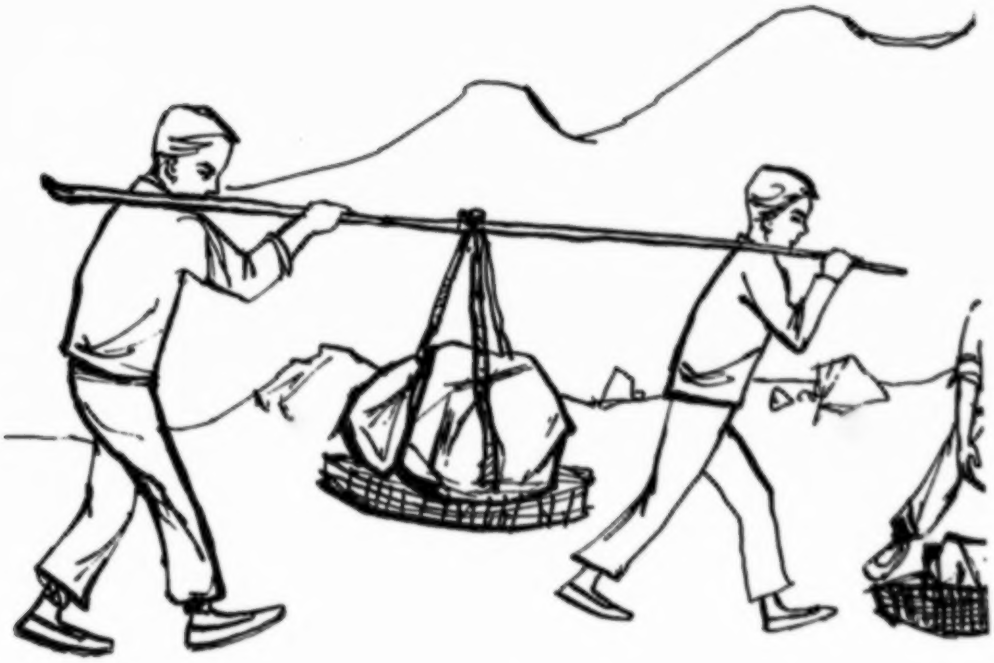
三位老朋友，好幾年沒在一塊兒了。有一天，他們不知道為甚麼想起來了，就打電話約在一塊兒吃飯。他們吃的非常高興，一邊兒喝着茶，一邊兒談着家裏的小事情。他們都說他們不怕太太。

老張說：「我跟太太①講②民主。各人有③意見，完全說出來。要是我的意見跟太太的意見一樣，他一定聽我的話。要是我的意見跟他的不一樣，我一定聽他的話，所以我們不吵架。」

老李說：「我跟太太講④平等。家裏的事情我們兩人⑤分着做。比方說，我管客廳，臥室跟厨房，我的太太⑥管我的錢，我們的孩子和我。我們每人做三件事，很平等。所以我們也不會吵架。」

老王說：「我的家跟你們的完全不同。我不講民主，也不講平等。我就講⑦獨裁。我們家裏的大事，完全讓我管；小事完全讓我太太管。從我有家起到現在已經二十幾年了，家裏沒有出過一件大事。所以我們也沒有吵過架。」

1.	講	jyǎng	uphold (cf. Unit 16)
2.	民主	mínjǔ	democracy
3.	意見	yìjyàn	opinion
4.	平等	píngděng	equality
5.	分	fēn	divide
6.	管	gwǎn	handle; control
7.	獨裁	dútsái	dictatorship



第十課

再說一個故事

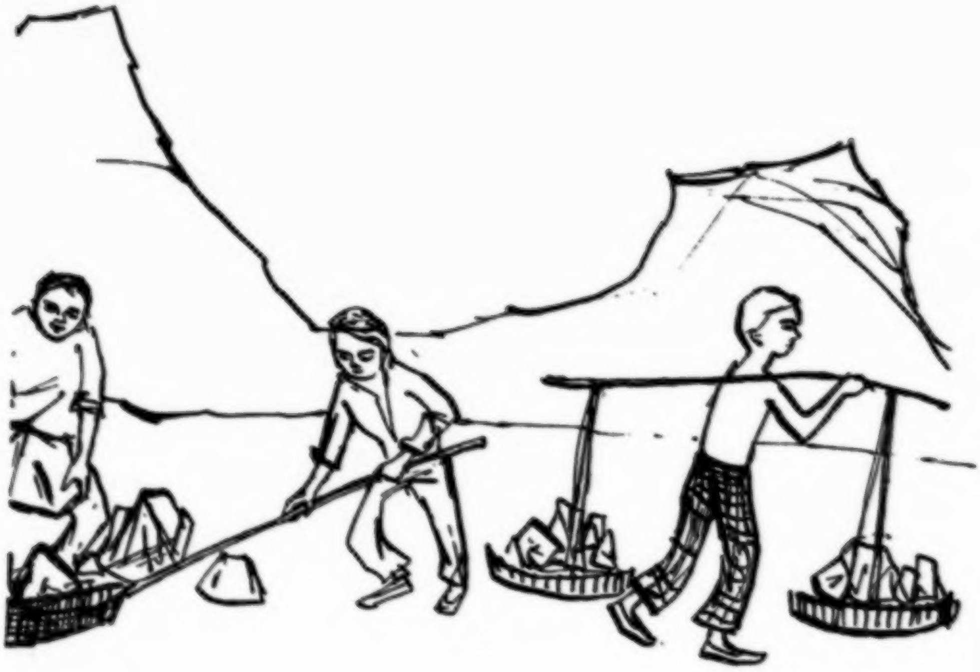
對話

麥克到小黄的家裏去玩兒。小黄有一個小弟弟。今年七歲了。長得很結實。每次麥克到他家来，他老是讓麥克給他說故事。

弟：再說一個故事。

麥：好，我想一想。

（小黄拿了幾個蘋果放在桌子上，請大家吃。一個人拿了一個。小弟弟挑了一個最大的。）



UNIT X

DZÀI SHWŌ YÍGÈ GÙSHR

A. DIALOGUE

Mài-ke dàu Syău Hwángde jyāli chyù wár, Syău Hwáng yŏu yígè syău dìdi. Jīnnyán chī swèile. Jăngde hĕn jyēshr. Mĕitsž Mài-ke dàu tā jyā lái, tā lăushř ràng Mài-ke gĕi tā shwō gùshr.

Dìdi: Dzài shwō yíge gùshr.

Mài: Hău, wó syăngyìsyăng.

(Syău Hwáng nále jĭge pínggwŏ fàng dzài jwōdz shang, chĭng dàijyā chr̄. Yíge rén nále yíge. Syău dìdi tyāule yíge dzwèi dàde.)

弟：再說一個故事，麦克。

麦：我說一個………

黃：我替麦克說好不好？我們現在正在吃蘋果，那我就說一個吃梨的故事吧。古時候兒有一個小孩子叫孔融，他是家裏最小的孩子，有一天孔融的爸爸拿了一些梨分給大家吃，別的孩子都挑大的。只有孔融挑了一個最小的。

弟：為甚麼呢？(看了看自己的蘋果)

黃：是啊。他爸爸就問他：「為甚麼你挑最小的呢」？

弟：是不是他不愛吃梨？

黃：並不是孔融不愛吃梨。孔融說：「我年紀最小，吃梨也應該吃最小的」他爸爸為他這麼懂事非常高興，完了。

弟：完了？那麼現在輪到麦克說了。

麦：好，先說清楚。這是最後一個故事啊！

弟：好。

麦：古時候有一個很聰明的小孩子叫司馬光。有一天他跟很多小朋友在一塊兒玩兒。一個小孩子爬到一個大水缸的上頭，不小心，忽然掉在水缸裏頭，那裏頭全是水。

Unit X

Dìdi: Dzài shwō yíge gùshr, Mài-ke.

Mài: Wŏ shwō yíge...

Hwáng: Wŏ tì Mài-ke shwō hău buhau? Wŏmen syàndzài jèngdzài chr̄ pínggwŏ. Nà wŏ jyòu shwō yígè chr̄ líde gùshr ba. Gŭshŕhour yŏu yíge syău háidz jyàu Kŭng Rúng. Tā shr̀ jyāli dzwèi syăude háidz. Yŏu yìtyān Kŭng Rúngde bàba nále yìsyē lí fēn gĕi dàjya chr̄. Byéde háidz dōu tyāu dàde. Jŕyóu Kŭng Rúng tyāule yíge dzwèi syăude.

Dìdi: Wèi shémma ne? (Kànlekàn dz̀jĭde pínggwŏ)

Hwáng: Shr̀ a. Tā bàba jyòu wèn ta: "Wèi shémma nĭ tyāu dzwèi syăude ne?"

Dìdi: Shr̀ bushr tā búaì chr̄ lí?

Hwáng: Bìngbúshr̀ Kŭng Rúng búaì chr̄ lí. Kŭng Rúng shwō: "Wŏ nyánjì dzwèi syău, chr̄ lí yĕ yīnggāi chr̄ dzwèi syăude." Tā bàba wèi tā jèmma dŭngshr̀ fēicháng gāusyìng. Wánle.

Dìdi: Wánle? Nèmma syàndzài lwún dàu Mài-ke shwōle.

Mài: Hău, syān shwō chīngchu. Jèishr̀ dzwèi hòu yíge gùshr a!

Dìdi: Hău.

Mài: Gŭshŕhour yŏu yíge hĕn tsūngmingde syău háidz jyàu Sz̄mă Gwāng. Yŏu yìtyān tā gēn hĕn dwō syău péngyou dzài yíkwàr wár. Yíge syău háidz pádàu yíge dà shwĕigāngde shàngtou, bùsyăusyīn, húrán dyàu dzài shwĕigāng lĭtou. Nèi lĭtou chywán shr̀ shwĕi.

要是不馬上把他救出來，他就會
淹死。別的孩子都嚇壞了，不知道怎麼
辦好。有的孩子跑了，還有的在跑的
時候兒摔倒了，可是，你猜怎麼着？
司馬光一點兒都不害怕，很快找到了
一塊大石頭。把水缸打破了。打了
一個大洞。水就從洞裏流出來了。
那個小孩子沒淹死。你說這個孩子
聰明不聰明？

弟：這個故事太短了，不行·再說一個·

黃：我給你說一個長的。從前有一個
農人，他的家大門前頭有一座山。
他進去跟出來都不方便，有一天
他對他的兒子說：「我們把這座山搬
走吧。」兒子說：「好，我們現在就
搬。」他們就開始把石頭一塊一塊的
搬到房子後頭去。

弟：後來怎麼樣呢？

黃：那座山那麼高，石頭那麼多，他們
現在還在搬着呢。

Yàushr̀ bù măshàng bă tā jyòu chūlai, tā jyòu hwèi yānsz̆. Byéde háidz dōu syà hwàile, bùjr̄dàu dzĕmma bàn hău. Yŏude háidz păule, hái yŏude dzài păude shŕhour shwāi dăule. Kĕshr̀, nĭ tsāi dzĕmma je? Sz̄mă Gwāng yìdyăr dōu búhàipà, hĕn kwài jău dàule yíkwài dà shŕtou. Bá shwĕigāng dă pwòle. Dăle yígè dà dùng. Shwĕi jyòu tsúng dùngli lyóu chūlaile. Nèige syău háidz méi yānsz̀. Nĭ shwō jèige háidz tsūngming bùtsūngming?

Dìdi: Jèige gùshr tài dwănle, bùsyíng. Dzài shwō yíge.

Hwáng: Wó géi ni shwō yíge chángde. Tsúngchyán yŏu yíge núngrén, tāde jyā dàmén chyántou yŏu yídzwò shān. Tā jìnchyu gēn chūlai dōu bù fāngbyàn. Yŏu yìtyān tā dwèi tāde érdz shwō: "Wŏmen bă jèidzwò shān bān dzŏu ba." Érdz shwō: "Hău, wŏmen syàndzài jyòu bān." Tāmen jyòu kāishŕ bă shŕtou yíkwài yíkwàide bān dàu fángdz hòutou chyù.

Dìdi: Hòulái dzĕmma yàng ne?

Hwáng: Nèidzwò shān nèmma gāu, shŕtou nèmma dwō, tāmen syàndzài háidzài bānje ne.

CHINESE-MANDARIN III

TELL ME ANOTHER STORY

A. DIALOGUE

Mike pays a visit to Syǎu Hwáng's family. Syǎu Hwáng has a little brother who is seven years old this year. He is very husky, and every time Mike goes to his house he always asks Mike to tell him stories.

Little Brother: Tell me another story.
Mike: Alright, let me think a moment.

(Syǎu Hwáng comes in with several apples which he puts on the table and asks everybody to eat. Everyone takes one of them. The little brother takes the largest one.)

Lit. Bro.: Tell me another story, Mike.
Mike: I'll tell you one...

Hwáng: I will tell one in Mike's behalf, is that alright? We are now eating apples. So I will tell you one about eating pears. Once upon a time there was a little child called Kǔng Rúng. He was the youngest child in the family. One day Kǔng Rúng's father brought in some pears which he distributed to everybody to eat. The other children all picked the large ones. Only Kǔng Rúng picked the smallest.
Lit. Bro.: Why?

(He takes a look at his own apple.)

Hwáng: That's it. His father asked him: "Why did you pick the smallest one?"
Lit. Bro.: Is it because he didn't like pears?

Hwáng: It is not that Kǔng Rúng did not like to eat pears. Kǔng Rúng said: "I am the youngest, therefore when eating pears I should also eat the smallest." His father was very pleased because he was so intelligent. That's all.
Lit. Bro.: That's all? Well, now it's Mike's turn to tell.

Mike: Alright. Let me make it clear at the beginning. This is the last story.

Lit. Bro.: Fine.

Mike: Once upon a time there was a very clever child names Sžmǎ Gwāng. One day he was playing with many young playmates. One child climbed up on top of a huge water tank. He was a bit careless and suddenly he fell into the tank. It was full of water. If he was not pulled out immediately, he would have been drowned. All the other children were scared and didn't know what to do. Some of them ran away, and others while running away even tripped and fell. However, what do you think happened? Sžmǎ Gwāng was not scared at all, he quickly found a huge stone. He broke the tank and made a large hole in it. Water poured out from the hole. Thus the child was not drowned. Don't you think this boy was very clever?

Lit. Bro.: This story is too short. It's no good. Tell another.

Hwáng: I will tell you a long one. Once there was a farmer. In front of his house there was a mountain. It was very inconvenient for him to get in and out. One day he said to his son: "Let's move this mountain away." His son said: "Alright, let's move it right now." They then began to move the rocks one by one to the back of the house.

Lit. Bro.: What happened afterwards?

Hwáng: That mountain was so high and there were so many stones. At this moment they are still moving them.

B.

(The underlined characters are required.)

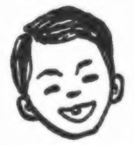
lí	N	梨	pear
shwěigāng	N	水缸	water tank
dùng	N	洞	hole
núngrén	N	農人	farmer
érdz	N	兒子	son
jǎng	V	長	grow
tyāu	V	挑	pick; choose
shwāi	V	摔	fall; throw
dyàu	V	掉	drop
yānsž	V	淹死	drown
jyòu	V	救	save (life)
lǎushr̀	A	老是	always
fēicháng	A	非常	extraordinarily
gǔshŕhour	TW	古時候	long time ago; once upon a time
chīngchu	Adj	清楚	clear
jyēshr	Adj	結實	solid
pwò	Adj	破	break
syàhwàile	IE	嚇壞了	scared to death
bìngbúshr̀	IE	並不是	not at all

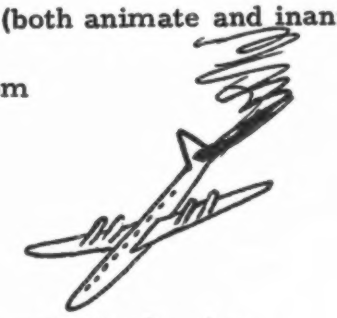
nǐ tsāi
dzěmma je? IE 你猜怎麼着？ guess what happened

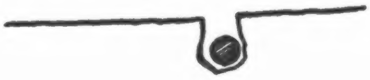
C. 字句用法

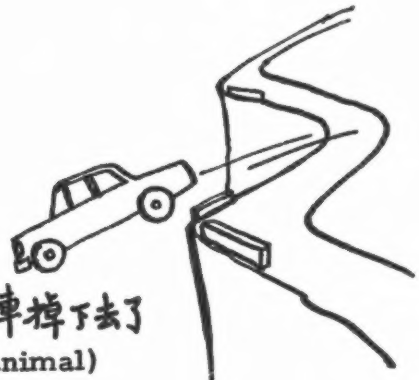
1. The uses of dyàu 掉 , shwāi 摔 , and dǎu 倒

掉
- a. Fall off, to drop off (both animate and inanimate things)
- b. Become detached from

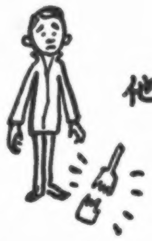

他的牙都掉了

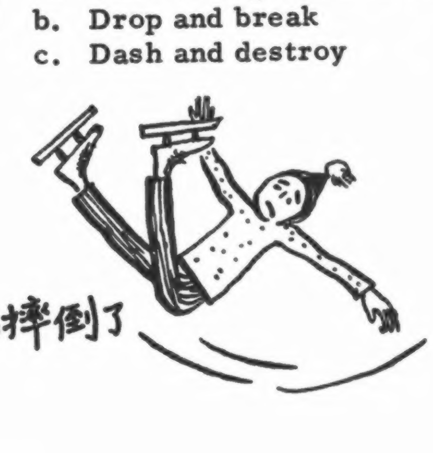

這個飛機掉下去了

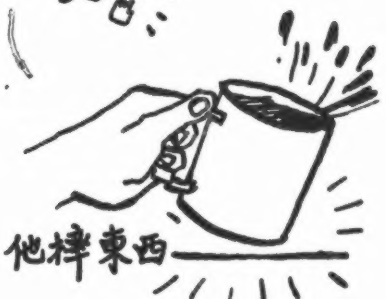

這個球掉在這個洞裡了


這輛汽車掉下去了

摔
- a. Fall off (a person or an animal)
- b. Drop and break
- c. Dash and destroy

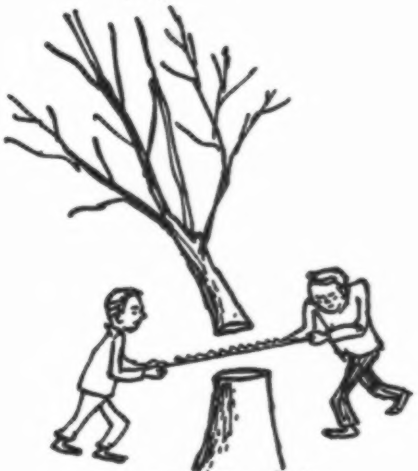

他把瓶子摔了


他摔倒了

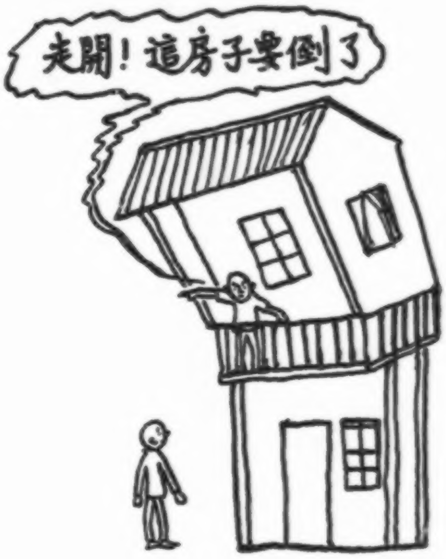

他摔東西

他的飛機掉下來,他摔倒了	He was killed when his plane crashed.

倒 Fall down



這棵樹倒了



2. The uses of wèi 為 , tī 替 and gei 給

為, 為了 , for, in behalf of, in order to, on account of, because of, etc.

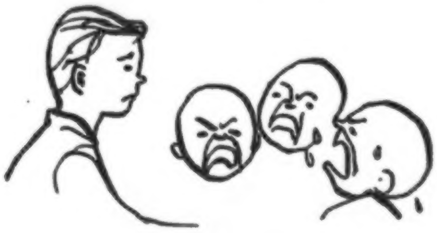
他爸爸為他這麼懂事非常高興	His father was very pleased because of his intelligence.
我們應該為他想一想	We must think in his behalf. (We must put ourselves in his shoes.)

替 is used as a verb and suggests "to be in place of"

我替麥克說一個故事	I will tell a story for Mike. (I will replace Mike to tell a story.)
明天你要是不能來,我替你做這件事	If you cannot come tomorrow, I will do it for you.

給 also may be used as "to" or "for"

我給他把東西拿來了	I brought the things for him.
我給他們說了一個故事	I told a story to them. (I told them a story.)



D. 對話應用

A. Nǐ kàn héli yǒu hěn dwō yú.
B. Shr̀ a! Nèisyē yú jēn kwàilè a!

A. Nǐ dzěmma jr̄dau ne?
B. Nǐ kàn tāmen dzài shwéili yǒu lai yǒu chyu, búshr hěn kwàilè ma?

A. Nǐ yòu búshr̀ yú, ní dzěmma jr̄dau nèisyē yú kwàilè ne?
B. Kěshr̀, nǐ yòu búshr̀ wǒ. Ní dzěmma jr̄dau wǒ bùjr̄dau nèisyē yú kwàilè ne?

E. ORAL DRILLS

FLUENCY DRILL

Dyàu
Dyàu syàchyule
Nèiběn shū dyàu syàchyule
Nèiběn shū tsúng jwōdz shang dyàu syàchyule.

Dùng
Jèige dùng
Dyàu dzài jèige dùnglile
Chyóu dyàu dzài jèige dùnglile.

Dyàu
Dyàule
Yá dōu dyàule
Tāde yá dōu dyàule.

Shwāi
Shwāile
Pǐngdz shwāile
Tā bǎ pǐngdz shwāile.

CHINESE-MANDARIN III

Shwāi
Shwāidǎu
Shwāidǎule
Tā shwāidǎule
Tā bùsyǎusyīn shwāidǎule.

Dǎu
Dǎule
Nèikē shù dǎule
Tāmen jyā chyántou nèikē
shù dǎule.

Gāusyìng
Wèi tā gāusyìng
Wèi tā jèmma dǔngshr̀
fēicháng gāusyìng
Tā bàba wèi tā jèmma
dǔngshr̀ fēicháng gāusyìng.

Gùshr
Shwō gùshr
Wǒ shwō gùshr
Wǒ shwō yíge gùshr
Wǒ tì Mài-ke shwō yíge
gùshr.

Yīshang
Mǎile yíjyàn yīshang
Wó mǎile yíjyàn yīshang
Wó gěi ta mǎile yíjyàn
yīshang.

REPLACEMENT DRILL

Tā shàng lóutīde shíhour bùsyǎusyīn shwāi dǎule.
syà lóutīde
shwāi syàchyule

Nèikē shù dǎule.
dǎu syàchyule
Nèige shū jyàdz

Tā bàba wèi tā jǎngde nèmma jyēshr hěn gāusyìng.
tā nèmma tsūngming
fēicháng gāusyìng

Wǒ tì ta bǎ nèijyàn shr̀ching dzwòle.
nèilyàng dz̀syíngchē syōuhǎule
nèige rén

Wó gěi ta mǎile yílyàng dz̀syíngchē.
hwàle yìjāng hwàr
shwōle yíge gùshr
nèige háidz

Yàushr bùbǎ tā jyòu chūlai, tā jyòu hwèi yānsz.
Yàushr bújyòu ta,
tā jyòu hwèi shwāisz
èsz

RESPONSE DRILL

A. Dzài jwōdz shangde nèiběn shū ne?
B. Nèiběn shū dyàu syàchyule.
dyàu dzài yǐdz shangle
yǐdz pángbyār
yǐdz hòubyār

A. Nèibyār chūle shémma shr̀le ma?
B. Nèibyār yíge lǎu tàitai syàchēde shŕhour shwāi dǎule.
shàngchē
shànglóutī
syàlóutī

A. Shémma dūngsyi dǎule?
B. Nèikē shù dǎule.
tāmen jyāde fángdz
nèige yǐdz

A. Tā bàba wèi shémma gāusyìng?
B. Tā bàba wèi tā nèmma dǔngshr̀ hěn gāusyìng.
nèmma tsūngming
nèmma hwèi shwōhwà
nèmma syǐhwan kàn shū

A. Shéi bǎ tāde nèige shóubyǎu syōuhǎule?
B. Wǒ tì ta bǎ nèige shóubyǎu syōuhǎule.
Nèige syōubyǎude
Tā bàba
Nèige dài yǎnjìngrde lǎutóur

A. Nǐ jīntyan syàwu dǎswàn dzwò shémma?
B. Wǒ dǎswàn chyù géi wo dìdi mǎi yìběn shū.
shwō yíge gùshr
syě yìféng syìn

A. Yàushr bùbǎ tā jyòu chūlai, tā hwèi dzěmma yang?
B. Yàushr bújyòu ta, tā jyòu hwèi yānsž.
è
shwāi

F. 練習

1. Complete the following sentences with tì or gěi or wèi:
用"替, 給, 為"填空

a. Tā syǐhwan wǒ chwān húng yīshang. Wǒ měityān __________ ta chwān húng yīshang.
b. Chǐng nǐ ________ wǒ bǎ nèijyàn dūngsyi nálai.
c. Wǒ __________ tā mǎile yíge màudz.
d. Tā ________ sywé Jūngwén, chyùnyan dàu Jūnggwo chyùle.
e. Wǒ jīntyan bùnéng chyù. Tā ________ wǒ chyù.

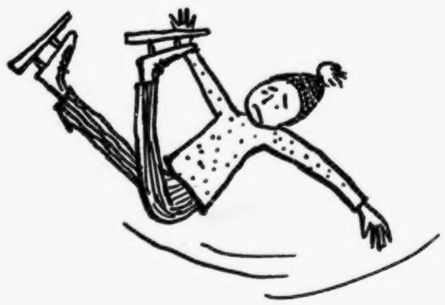
2. State in Chinese: 用中國話說

a. This house is going to fall down.
b. He fell on the ground.
c. An airplane fell on the mountain.
d. He dropped his ball in a hole. He could not find it.
e. A big rock fell off from the top of the mountain.

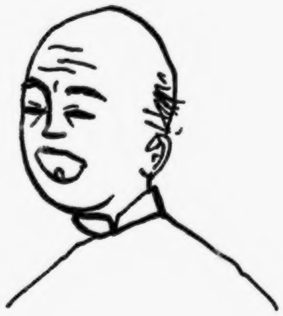
3. Answer the following questions: 回答問題

a. Mài-ke dàu shéide jyāli chyù wárle?
b. Kǔng Rúng wèi shémma nále yíge dzwèi syǎude lí?
c. Kǔng Rúngde bàba wèi shémma fēicháng gāusyìng?
d. Sz̄mǎ Gwāng wèi shémma yùng yíkwài dà shítou bǎ shwěigāng dǎle yíge dùng?

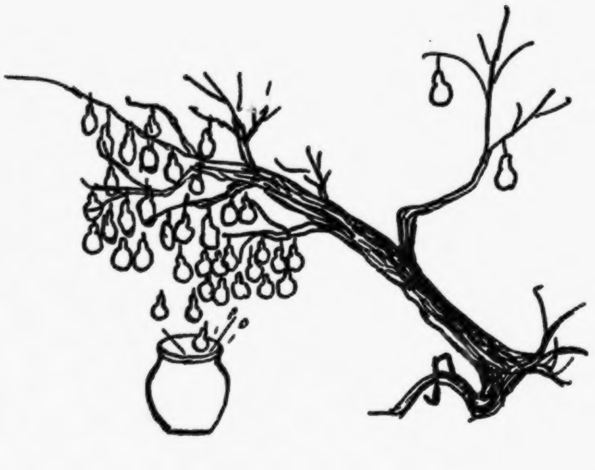
4. **Describe the pictures below:**



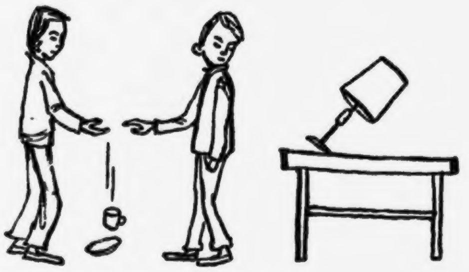
1



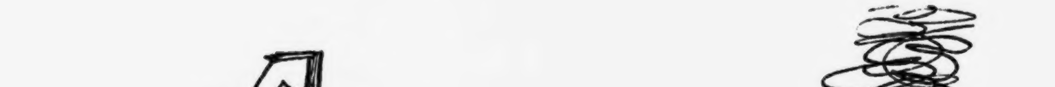
2



3



4



5

Unit X

①説　書　的

（節自現代青年文選）

借着遠處的②燈光，看見在③廣場上有很多人④圍了一⑤層層的圓圈子。這⑥圓圈的中間，放着一個高脚的椅子，上面坐着一個很瘦的中年人。這就是差不多每天晚上都在這兒説故事的那個人。

聽説故事的人有老的，有少的，有男的，但是很少有女的。他們做了一天很累的工作。吃完了晚飯，只要花一兩毛錢，就可以讓那⑦生動的故事來⑧鬆弛一下緊張的⑨情緒。

「我説那個老人手裏拿着⑩寶劍，穿着長衣，忽然來到了……」説到緊張的時候，説書的就⑪舞動他的瘦手，做出各種不同的姿勢，想把故事説的很生動。其實對一些坐在小椅子上的老人是無所謂的。他們只是⑫彎着身體⑬閉着眼睛靜靜地聽着。

天上黑黑的一個星星也沒有。一陣冷風刮過，説書的打了一個⑭冷顫。這已是深秋了，他身上穿的還是很薄的衣裳。

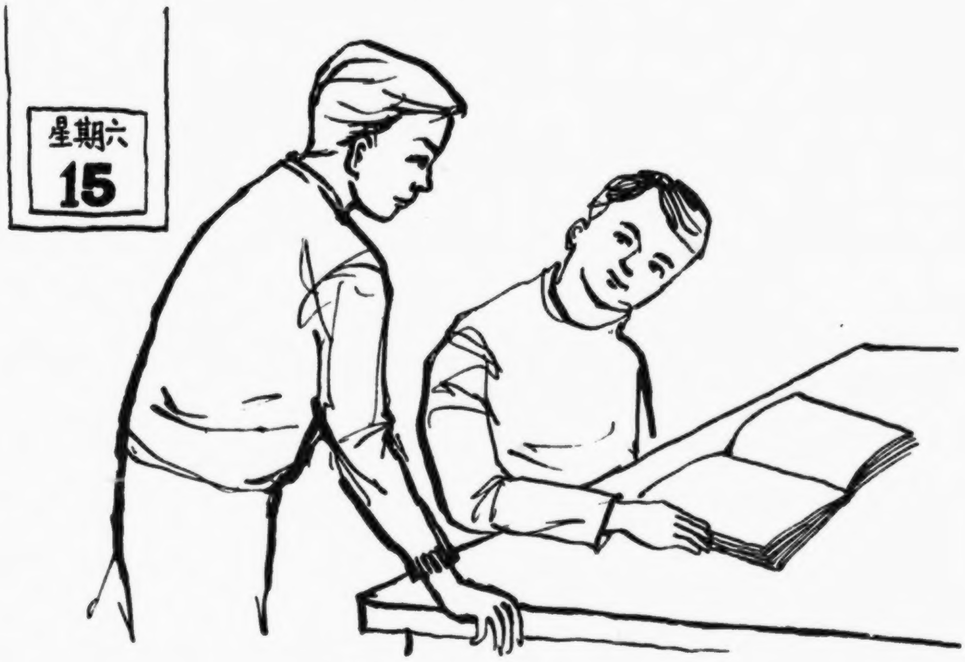
遠處響起了雷的聲音。説書的心在雷聲中⑮震了一下。他在冷風中忍耐着。「轟……」這是第二次的雷聲。人們開始動了。説書的忽然在高椅子上站起來，用了最大的勁喊着，手跟脚都動了起來。他想這樣也許可以拉住人們的情緒。只要雨一時不下來，他就可以很快地把今天要説的説完。

打了一個很亮的閃，接着又是雷聲。冷風中掉下來一些大雨點，掉在一些人的臉上。「啊！下雨了！」「啊！雨來了！」人們往外⑯散去。説書的⑰急忙從椅子上跳下來，喊着：「各位幫助！」可是很多人早就跑了。只有幾個老人往他手上扔了一毛錢，也急急忙忙地走了。

雨越下越大。廣場上就剩下了説書的一個人。一個閃⑱照亮了他的臉。他深深地⑲嘆了一口氣。

CHINESE-MANDARIN III

1.	說書的	shwōshūde	story teller
2.	燈光	dēnggwāng	light
3.	廣場	gwángchǎng	plaza
4.	圍	wéi	surround
5.	層	tséng	layer
6.	圓圈	ywánchywān	circle
7.	生動	shēngdùng	lively
8.	鬆弛	sūngchí	relax
9.	情緒	chǐngsyù	feeling
10.	寶劍	bǎujyàn	sword
11.	舞動	wǔdùng	wield
12.	彎	wān	bend
13.	閉	bì	close
14.	冷顫	lěngjan	shiver
15.	震	jèn	quake
16.	散	sàn	scatter
17.	急忙	jǐmáng	hurry
18.	照	jàu	throw light on
19.	嘆一口氣	tàn yikǒu chì	heave a sigh



第十一課

週　末

對　話

李元今天有點兒不高興

黃：從星期三起，我就一直等着週末。
李元，這個週末到那兒去玩？

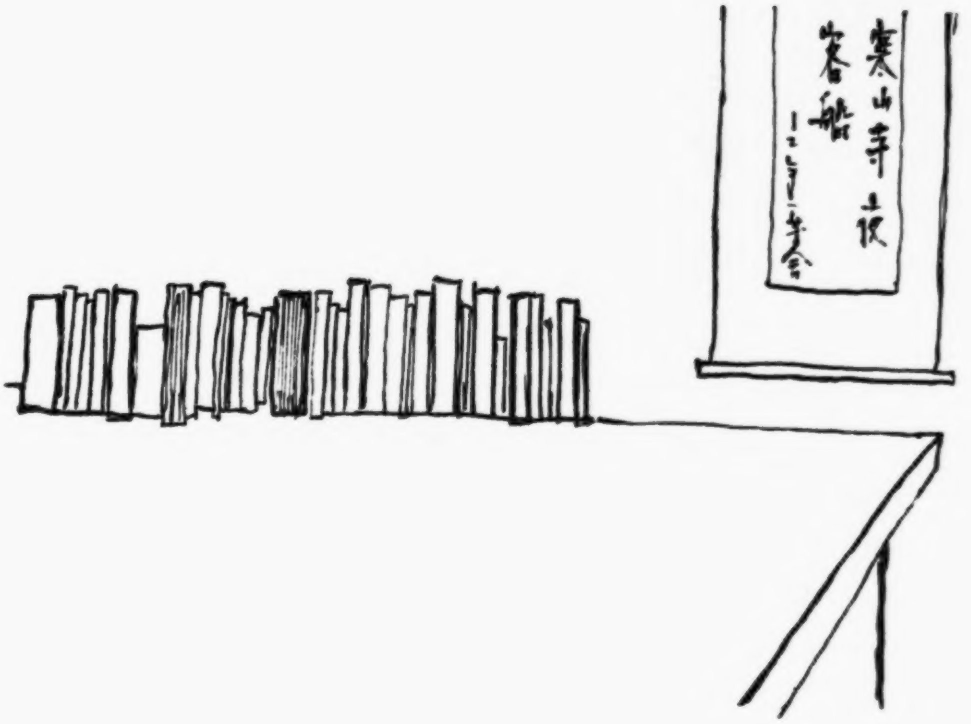
李：那兒也不去。星期一得把這個報告
趕出來。

黃：算了，何必那麼認真呢？

李：你倒是挺開心的。從開學到現在
你好像一直都這麼開心的樣子。

黃：週末應該輕鬆點兒。宿舍裏的人都

Unit XI



UNIT XI

JŌUMWÒ

A. DIALOGUE

Lǐ Ywán jīntyan yóu dyǎr bùgāusyìng

Hwáng: Tsúng syīngchīsān chǐ, wǒ jyòu yìjŕ děngje jōumwò.
Lǐ Ywán, jèige jōumwò dàu nǎr chyù wár?

Lǐ: Nár yě búchyù. Syīngchīyī déi bǎ jèige bàugàu
gǎn chūlai.

Hwáng: Swànle. Hébì nèmma rènjēn ne?

Lǐ: Nǐ dàushr̀ tǐng kāisyīnde. Tsúng kāisywé dàu syàndzài
nǐ hǎusyàng yìjŕ dōu jèmma kāisyīnde yàngdz.

Hwáng: Jōumwò yīnggāi chīngsūng dyǎr. Sùshèlide rén dōu

出去玩兒了。你看從昨天起你就
不停的寫。

李：不趕完不行啊！下星期一得交。

黃：走，走•到老張的屋子去•他們讓
我來找你打橋牌。

李：不行，我得快點兒把這個報告寫好。

黃：他們就缺一個人湊不起來。

李：那很抱歉！

黃：就打一個鐘頭怎麼樣？

李：說一個鐘頭，可是一打下去就沒完了。

黃：你看你這個人真是有點兒彆扭•說
一個鐘頭就一個鐘頭，現在是七點
半•九點鐘一定讓你回來•

李：別到時候兒說了不算，一直打下去我
可受不了。

黃：說了就算，頂多多玩兒二十分鐘。

李：你看，剛說了就變卦。

chūchyu wárle. Nĭ kàn tsúng dzwótyan chĭ, nĭ jyòu bùtíngde syĕ.

Lĭ: Bù gănwán bùsyíng a! Syà syīngchīyī dĕi jyāu.

Hwáng: Dzŏu, dzŏu. Dàu Lău Jāngde wūdz chyù. Tāmen ràng wŏ lái jáu nĭ dă chyáupái.

Lĭ: Bùsyíng. Wó dĕi kwài dyár bă jèige bàugàu syé hău.

Hwáng: Tāmen jyòu chywē yíge rén tsòu bùchĭlái.

Lĭ: Nà hĕn bàuchyàn!

Hwáng: Jyòu dă yíge jūngtóu dzĕmma yàng?

Lĭ: Shwō yíge jūngtóu, kĕshr̀ yìdăsyachyu jyòu méi wánle.

Hwáng: Nĭ kàn nĭ jèige rén jēn shr̀ yóu dyăr byènyou. Shwō yíge jūngtóu jyòu yíge jūngtóu. Syàndzài shr̀ chīdyăn bàn. Jyóudyăn jūng yídìng ràng nĭ hwéilai.

Lĭ: Byé dàu shŕhòur shwōle búswàn, yìjŕ dăsyàchyu wó kĕ shòubulyău.

Hwáng: Shwōle jyòu swàn. Dĭngdwō dwō wár èrshŕfēn jūng.

Lĭ: Nĭ kàn, gāng shwōle jyòu byàngwà.

黃：好，好•不變，不變•

李：好吧。

黃：哈！好極了，謝天謝地，快點兒走吧！

（這時候兒老張跑了進來。）

張：嘿，小黃•對不起，我們不想打橋牌了•我們打算去看電影兒•

黃：可是………你不是說打橋牌嗎？

張：橋牌，改天打吧！我現在去看八點鐘的電影兒，一會兒見！

黃：喂，喂，喂………

Unit XI

Hwáng: Háu, hǎu. Búbyàn, búbyàn.

Lǐ: Hǎu ba.

Hwáng: Ha! Hǎujíle. Syètyān syèdì. Kwài dyár dzǒu ba!

(Jèi shŕhour Lǎu Jāng pǎule jìnlai.)

Jāng: Hei, Syǎu Hwáng. Dwèibuchǐ. Wǒmen bùsyáng dǎ chyáupáile. Wǒmen dǎswàn chyù kàn dyànyǐngr.

Hwáng: Kěshr̀... Nǐ búshr̀ shwō dǎ chyáupái ma?

Jāng: Chyáupái, gǎityān dǎ ba! Wǒ syàndzài chyù kàn bādyǎnjūngde dyànyǐngr. Yìhwěr jyàn!

Hwáng: Wei, wei, wei...

CHINESE-MANDARIN III

WEEKEND

A. DIALOGUE

Today Lǐ Ywán appears to be a little unhappy.

Hwáng: I've been waiting for the weekend since Wednesday. Lǐ Ywán, where are you going this weekend?
Lǐ: I'm not going anywhere. Next Monday I have to rush out this report.

Hwáng: Oh, forget it. Why do you take it so seriously?
Lǐ: You seem to be very lighthearted. From the very beginning of the semester till now you seem to have always been so carefree.

Hwáng: On weekends we ought to be less serious. The people in the dormitory are all going out to have a good time. Look, since yesterday you've been writing without stop.
Lǐ: It won't do if I don't finish it. I must hand it in next Monday.

Hwáng: Let's go. Let's go to Lǎu Jāng's room. They asked me to come here to look for you to play bridge with them.
Lǐ: No. I have to hurry up to finish this report.

Hwáng: They are just short of one, and cannot make the game.
Lǐ: I'm very sorry about that.

Hwáng: Let's play just one hour, how about it?
Lǐ: You say one hour, but once started there is no end.

Hwáng: Look, you are such an uncooperative fellow. If we say an hour, it's an hour. It's 7:30 now. By 9:00 we definitely will let you come back.
Lǐ: Don't forget what you said when the time comes, and carry on with the game. That I cannot stand.

Hwáng: We'll keep our word. At most we will play 20 extra minutes.
Lǐ: Look, you have just said it, and you changed it right away.

Hwáng: Alright, alright, let's not change it.
Lǐ: Fine.

Hwáng: Ha, excellent! Thank heavens.

(At this moment Lǎu Jāng runs into the room.)

Jāng: Hey, Syǎu Hwáng, I'm sorry, we don't want to play bridge anymore. We plan to go to see a movie.
Hwáng: But...didn't you say we were going to play bridge?

Jāng: Bridge, let's play it some other day. I'm going to see the 8:30 movie. See you later.
Hwáng: Wei, wei, wei...

B. 生字

(The underlined characters are required.)

bàugàu	N	報告	report
pyāndz	N	片子	movie film (cf. Syībùpyāndz)
gǔjwāng	N	古裝	ancient costume
shr̀gwāng	N	時裝	modern costume
wényì	N	文藝	literary art
gǎn	V	趕	rush; hurry to complete some work (gǎnchulai, RV)
kāisywé	VO	開學	school begins
tíng	V	停	stop

jyāu	V	交	hand in
chywē	V	缺	miss; be short of
hébǐ	Adv	何必	why must; why have to
dǐngdwō	Adv	頂多	most
gǎityān	TW	改天	some other day
rènjēn	Adj	認真	serious
kāisyīn	Adj	開心	carefree; happy
chīngsūng	Adj	輕鬆	light; light-hearted
shèyǐng	N, V	攝影	photograph
byènyou	Adj	彆扭	uncooperative
bàuchyàn	Adj	抱歉	sorry (polite apology)
chénmèn	Adj	沉悶	dull
byàngwà	IE	變卦	change (mind, plans, etc.)
syètyān syèdì	IE	謝天謝地	Thank heavens!
shwōle búswàn	IE	說了不算	what's said does not count; break promise

C. 字句用法

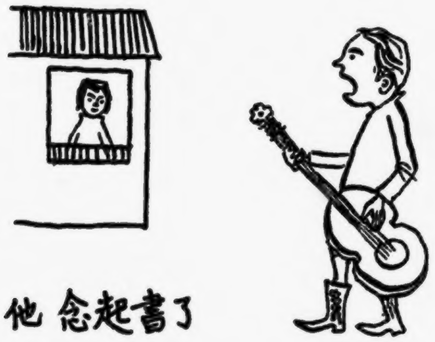
1. The uses of chǐlai 起來 and syàchyu 下去

起來 as a resultative verb ending suggests that the action or state depicted by the verb has just begun.

小弟弟聽了這個故事就笑起來了	The Little Brother started laughing when he heard the story.

他一看見她就唱起來了

He started serenading the moment he saw her.



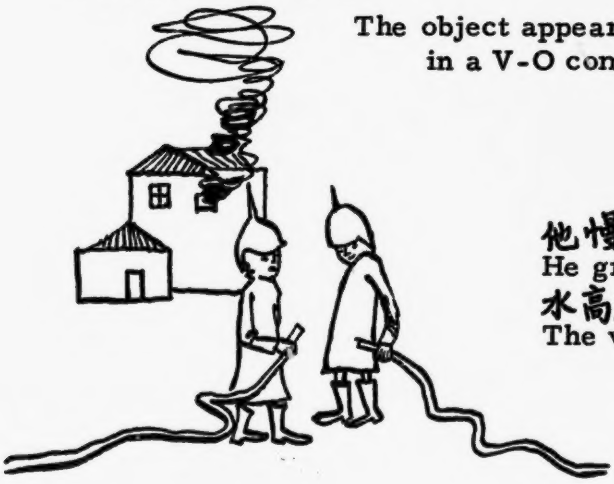
他念起書了

He started studying.

他們談起話來了

They began to converse.

The object appears in between 起 and 來 in a V-O compound sentence.



他慢慢兒胖起來了
He gradually grew fat.
水高起來了
The water was rising.

With certain verbs, it indicates the state of being organized or put together.

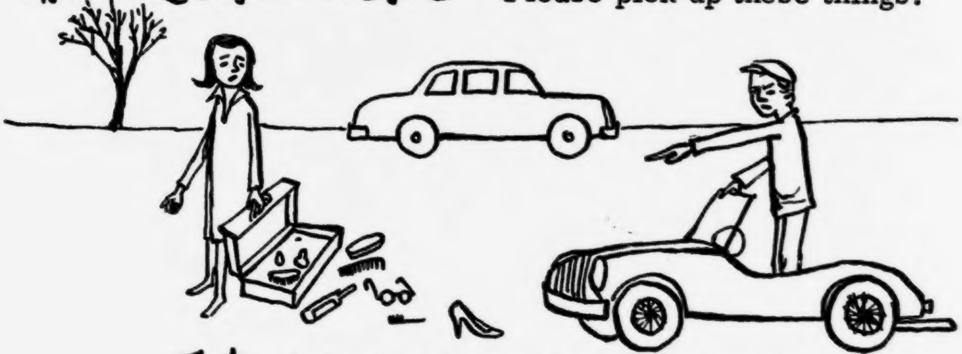
他們就缺一個人湊不起來

They lack only one person and cannot make it.

他把這些花兒擺起來了

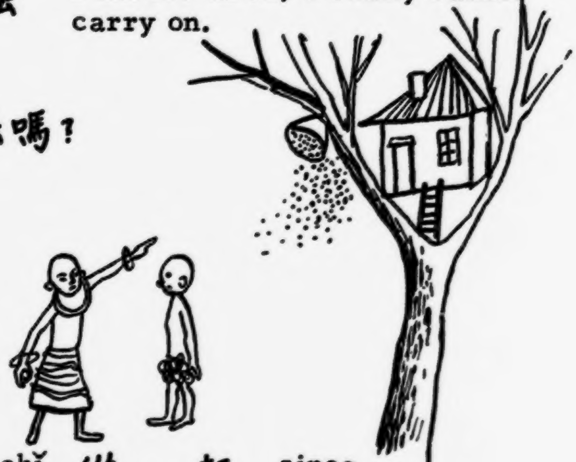
He arranged these flowers.

請你把這些東西收起來吧	Please pick up these things.



下去 indicates the continuation of an action

橋牌一打下去就沒完	Once a bridge game begins, there is no end.
請你說下去	Please go on with what you are saying.
我太累了.我實在做不下去了	I am too tired, I really cannot carry on.
你還打算在那兒住下去嗎?	



2. Tsúng ...chǐ **從... 起** since ...

從星期三起我一直等着週末 jōumwò	Since Wednesday I have been waiting for the weekend.
從去年起我的牙就疼	My toothache began last year. (My teeth have been hurting since last year.)

從現在起我不吃飯	From now on I will not eat rice.
從明天起我要早起	Starting tomorrow I will get up early.

Tsúng 從 ... dàu 到 ... is also used as an adverbial modifier of time as well as of place.

從開學到現在你一直這麼開心	From the beginning of the semester til now you have been so happy.
從十一點到十二點正好是一個鐘頭	From 11 to 12, it's exactly an hour.

3. The uses of yìdyǎr 一點兒 and yǒu yìdyǎr 有一點兒

"A little bit" is an adverbial modifier and also a measure word. The word " 一 " is often omitted when 一點兒 is not at the beginning of a sentence.

我有點兒糖 táng	I have a little bit of sugar.
一點兒就夠了	Just a little bit will be enough.
輕鬆點兒	A little more lively.
走快點兒也許還能趕得上 yésyǔ	Walk a little faster, perhaps (we will) still make it.

有一點兒 is a verb-object construction functioning as an adverbial expression.

李元有點兒不高興	Lǐ Ywán is a little unhappy.
他有點兒冷	He is (feels) a little cold.

你真是有點兒彆扭 byènyou	You are really a little uncooperative.
我有點兒受不了	I have had a bit too much of it.
我有點兒不想去了	I am somewhat reluctant to go.

D. 對話應用

A. Jōumwò dàu nǎr chyù?
B. Wǒ dǎswàn chyù kàn dyànyǐngr.

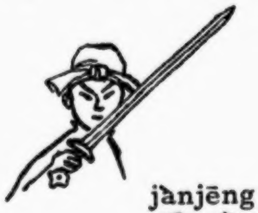
A. Kàn shémma dyànyǐngr?
B. Shr̀ yíbù yīnywè pyāndz shwō yíge yīnywèjyāde gùshr. Tīngshwō jèi pyāndz de shèyǐng hén hǎu.

A. Nǐ syǐhwan gǔjwāng pyāndz ma?
B. Gǔwāng pyāndz, shŕjwāng pyāndz, wǒ dōu syǐhwan.

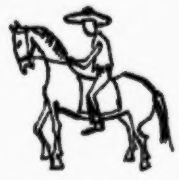
A. Wǒ bǐjyáu syǐhwan wényì pyāndz. Nǐ ne?
B. Yǒu shŕhour wényì pyāndz tai chénmènle. Wǒ háishr bǐjyáu syǐhwan chīngsūng dyǎrde yīnywè syǐjyù.

A. Kěshr̀ wǒ syǐhwan bēijyù.

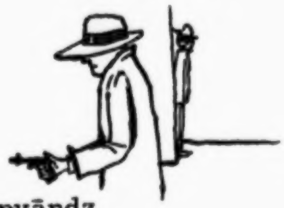
wǔsyá pyāndz
武俠 片子



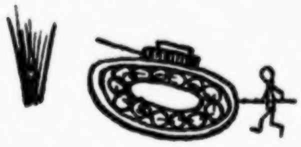
Syībù pyāndz
西部 片子



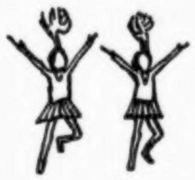
jēntàn pyāndz
偵探 片子



jànjēng pyāndz
戰爭 片子



gēwǔ pyāndz
歌舞 片子



E. ORAL DRILLS

FLUENCY DRILL

Chàng
Chàngchilai
Tā chàngchilaile
Tā yí kànjyan nèige nyǔ háidz jyòu chàngchilaile.

Tsòu
Tsòuchilai
Tsòubuchilai
Chywē yíge rén tsòubuchilái
Tāmen chywē yíge rén tsòubuchilái
Tāmen jyòu chywē yíge rén tsòubuchilái.

Shwō
Shwōsyachyu
Nǐ shwōsyachyu
Chǐng nǐ shwōsyachyu
Syàndzài chǐng nǐ shwōsyachyu.

Dǎ
Dǎ chyáupái
Tāmen dǎ chyáupái
Tāmen dǎ chyáupái, yì dǎsyachyu jyòu méiwán.

Jōumwò
Děngje jōumwò
Jyòu yìjŕ děngje jōumwò
Tsúng syīngchīsān chǐ, wǒ jyòu yìjŕ děngje jōumwò.

Yá
Wǒde yá téng
Tsúng chyùnyan chǐ, wǒde yá jyòu téng.

Jyāu
Jyāushū
Bùjyāushūle
Tsúng chyùnyan chǐ, wǒ jyòu bùjyāushūle.

Kāisyīn
Jèmma kāisyīn
Yìjŕ jèmma kāisyīn
Tsúng kāisywé dàu syàndzài nǐ yìjŕ jèmma kāisyīn.

Byènyou
Yóudyǎr byènyou
Nèige háidz yóudyǎr byènyou
Nèige háidz jēn yóudyǎr byènyou.

REPLACEMENT DRILL

Tāmen jyòu chywē yíkwài chyán tsòubuchilai.
yíge yǐdz
shǎu

Jèiyàng shwōsyachyu yídìng hén yǒu yìsz.
sywé
ywèlái ywè rúngyi
dzwò

Tsúng shàngge ywè chǐ, wǒ jyòu syáng dǎ chyáupái.
shàng syīngchī chǐ
chyù kàn ni
shàng Syīngchīyī

Tsúng kāisywé dàu syàndzài nǐ yìjŕ dōu jèmma kāisyīn.
jèmma byènyou
dzwótyan wǎnshang
jèige háidz
méi chr̄fàn

Lǐ Ywán yóudyǎr bùgāusyìng.
bùshūfu
Syǎu Hwáng
bùsyǎng chyù
Syǎu Hwáng hái méi kànwán shū
Syàyǔle Syǎu Hwáng

RESPONSE DRILL

A. Tāmen dǎ chyáupái dǎle dwōshau shŕhourle?
B. Tāmen dzwótyan wǎnshang jyòu dáchilaile.
hén dzǎu
yíge jūngtóu yǐchyán
hái méi chr̄ dzǎufàn

A. Nǐ wèi shémma búdzài nèr jùle?
B. Nèige dìfang bùānjing, wǒ jùbusyàchyùle.
Fángdzū ywèlái ywè gwèi

A. Tā wèi shémma bùdǎ chyáupái ne?
B. Tā yóudyǎr yá téng.
bùshūfu
bùgāusyìng
byènyou

A. Nǐ bǎ nèisyē dūngsyi fàngdzài nǎrle?
B. Tā bǎ nèisyē shū shōuchilaile.
báichilaile
náchilaile
shōushrchilaile

A. Jèige háidz dzěmmale?
B. Bùjr̄dau, tsúng jīntyan dzǎushang chǐ tā jyòu bùshūfu.
tsúng dzwótyan chǐ
tsúng chr̄le nèikwài táng chǐ
tsúng syàtyan chǐ

A. Nǐ shémma shŕhour yǒu gūngfu? Wó syǎng lái kàn ni.
B. Tsúng syàndzài dàu syàwu wúdyǎn jūng wǒ dōu yǒu gūngfu.
Tsúng mīngtyan shàngwu dàu míngtyan syàwu
Tsúng jèi syīngchī dàu syà syīngchī

F. 練 習

1. Make a sentence by using chǐlai together with each verb given below: 造句

syàu chr̄fàn nyànshū tsǒu pàng

Make a sentence by using syàchyu together with each verb given below:

shwō dǎ dyànhwà dǎ chyóu tán gāngchín jù

2. State in Chinese: 用中國話說

a. Since then I have been studying Chinese.
b. I have been having a headache since last night.
c. From 1945 to 1954 I was in China.
d. It is farther from here to Shanghai than from here to Hankow.
e. He has been writing since this morning.

3. Answer the following questions: 回答問題

   a. Lǐ Ywán wèi shémma yóu dyǎr bùgāusyìng?
   b. Syǎu Hwáng jáu Lǐ Ywán dzwò shémma?
   c. Lǐ Ywán syě bàugàu, syěle dwōshau shŕhourle?
   d. Lǐ Ywán shwō tsúng jǐdyan dàu jǐdyan kèyi gēn Syǎu Hwáng dǎ chyáupái?
   e. Hóulai tāmen wèi shémma méi dǎ chyáupái?

Unit XI

中學生生活

（節自今天的臺灣）

廖期才是第一中學高中二年級的學生。因為他的家離學校太遠，他的父母要他住在臺北。他在臺北和同學合租了一間屋子，有四張雙層床。每一學期只要交150塊錢住宿費。另外交學校的①學費，②雜費，③體育費，這些一切的④費用，一共八百塊錢。吃飯每個月差不多要用三百塊錢。所以他一個學期家裏要給他兩千八百塊錢左右。

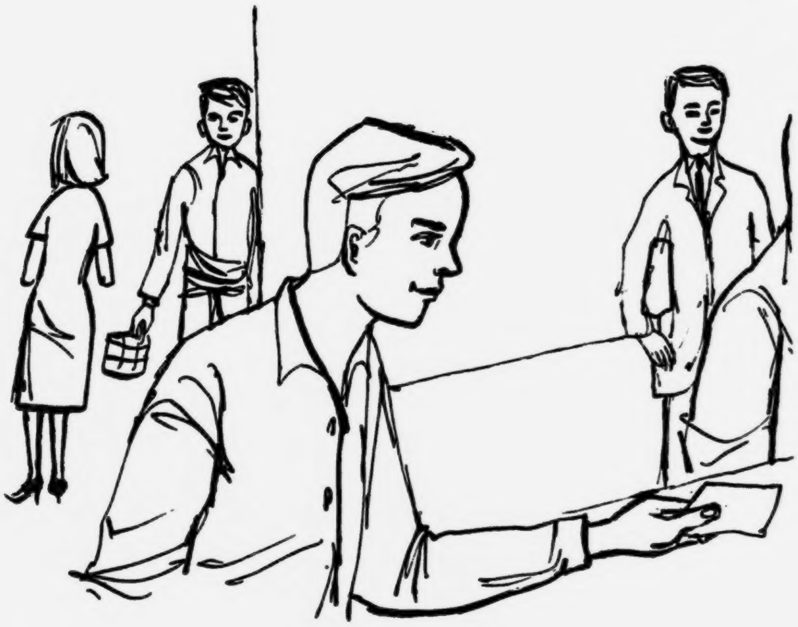
他每個禮拜，從禮拜一起到禮拜五每天上六個鐘頭的課，從早上八點到下午三點。禮拜六只有上午上課，下午沒有課。他的功課⑤包括歷史、地理，⑥化學，⑦生物、數學、英文、⑧國文、⑨美術、音樂、體育。

他的國文成績很好，因為他從前在家裏跟他父親唸了很多書，都是古書。可是他覺得數學跟英文很難，所以每年暑假他還⑩補習英文跟數學。

上課的時候，廖期才那一班有四十幾個學生。大家坐在教室裏差不多沒甚麼問問題的⑪機會。就是記筆記。晚上⑫溫習功課的時候就是看筆記。看⑬教科書的時候也沒有別的⑭參考書。要是把先生講的記得很熟，把教科書唸得很⑮熟，就可以考得很好。只有做數學習題，跟作文的時候，要自己好好的想一想。

CHINESE-MANDARIN III

1.	學費	sywéfèi	tuition
2.	雜費	dzáfèi	miscellaneous fee
3.	體育費	tǐyùfèi	physical education fee
4.	費用	fèiyùng	expenses
5.	包括	bāukwò	include
6.	化學	hwàsywé	chemistry
7.	生物	shēngwù	biology
8.	國文	gwówén	national language (Chinese)
9.	美術	měishù	art
10.	補習	bǔsyí	remedial instruction
11.	機會	jīhwèi	opportunity
12.	温習	wēnsyí	review
13.	教科書	jyàukēshū	text book
14.	参考書	tsānkǎushū	reference book
15.	熟	shóu	familiar



第十二課

猜一猜包裹裏邊兒是甚麼？

對　　話

麥克接到了一張郵局的通知，通知他有
一個從美國寄來的包裹・麥克跟王
先生到郵局來取。

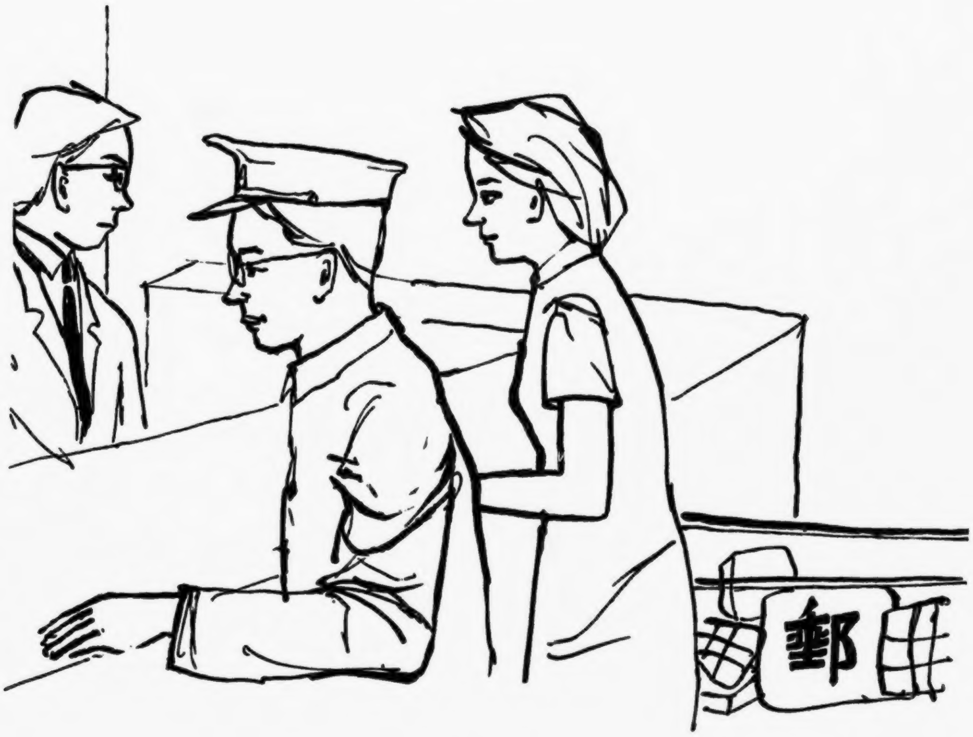
麥 ： 對不起・我有一個從美國寄來的包裹
這是你們給我的通知。

郵局職員 ： 請你等一等・我去把你的
包裹找出來。

（郵局職員把包裹找了出來。）

郵 ： 請你蓋章。

Unit XII



UNIT XII

TSĀIYITSĀI BĀUGWǑ LǏBYĀR SHR̀ SHÉMMA?

A. DIALOGUE

Mài-ke jyē dàule yìjāng yóujyúde tūngjr̄, tūngjr̄ ta yǒu yígè tsúng Měigwó jìláide bāugwǒ. Mài-ke gēn Wáng Gwāngshēng dàu yóujyú lái chyǔ.

Mài: Dwèibuchǐ. Wó yǒu yíge tsúng Měigwó jìláide bāugwǒ. Jèi shr̀ nǐmen géi wǒde tūngjr̄.

Yóujyú Jŕywán: Chǐng ni děng yísyà. Wǒ chyù bá nǐde bāugwó jǎu chūlai.

(Yóujyú Jŕywán bǎ bāugwó jǎule chūlai.)

Yóu: Chǐng nǐ gài jāng.

麥：我沒圖章怎麼辦？簽字行不行？

郵：沒問題。只要你有身份證就行。

（麥克簽了字•把包裹取了出來。）

麥：王先生，你們貴國用圖章取包裹真沒道理。

王：怎麼沒道理？

麥：你看，那邊兒有好幾個刻圖章的，誰都可以花一毛錢刻一個。

王：你説的對，可是你們貴國簽字取包裹也容易做假啊！

麥：簽假名字犯法。

王：這兒做假圖章也犯法。噯，其實這些都不是完全可靠的辦法。

麥：對了，要是誰都不相信誰，就甚麼事都不能做了。王先生，你猜一猜這裏邊兒是甚麼？

王：唱片兒？

Unit XII

Mài: Wŏ méiyou tújāng dzĕmma bàn? Chyāndz̀ syíng busying?

Yóu: Méi wèntí. Jřyàu nĭ yŏu shēnfènjèng jyòu syíng.

(Mài-ke chyānle dz̀. Bă bāugwó chyŭle chūlai.)

Mài: Wáng Gwāngshēng, nĭmen gwèigwó yùng tújāng chyŭ bāugwŏ jēn méi dàuli.

Wáng: Dzĕmma méi dàulĭ?

Mài: Nĭ kàn, nèibyār yóu háu jĭgè kè tújāngde. Shéi dōu kéyi hwā yìmáu chyán kè yígè.

Wáng: Nĭ shwōde dwèi, kĕshr̀ nĭmen gwèigwó chyāndz̀ chyŭ bāugwŏ yĕ rúngyì dzwòjyă a!

Mài: Chyān jyă míngdz fànfă.

Wáng: Jèr dzwò jyăutújāng yĕ fànfă. Aì, chíshŕ jèisyē dōu búshr̀ wánchywán kĕkàude bànfa.

Mài: Dwèile. Yàushr̀ shéi dōu bùsyāngsyìn shéi, jyòu shémma shr̀ dōu bùnéng dzwòle. Wáng Gwāngshēng, nĭ tsāiyitsāi jèi lĭbyār shr̀ shémma?

Wáng: Chàngpyār?

麦：嘿，你怎麼知道？

王：我的眼睛最利害，只要一看就
知道了。

麦：瞎貓碰死耗子，碰對了。

王：我不但知道是唱片兒，而且還知道
是甚麼唱片兒。

麦：你說。

王：貝多芬的第七交響樂。

麦：噢！我知道了·一定是上個月我接
到南瑟的信以後，告訴你他要給我
寄唱片兒來·要不然就是小黃
告訴你的。

王：是你自己告訴我的。

麦：怪不得你知道呢。哎呀！你看天上
那些黑雲，要下雨了，走快點兒吧！

Unit XII

Mài: Hei! Nĭ dzĕmma jr̄dau?

Wáng: Wŏde yănjing dzwèi lĭhai. Jr̆yàu yĭkàn jyòu jr̄daule.

Mài: Syāmāu pèng sz̆hàudz, pèng dwèile.

Wáng: Wŏ búdàn jr̄dàu shr̀ chàngpyār, érchyĕ hái jr̄dau shr̀ shémma chàngpyār.

Mài: Nĭ shwō.

Wáng: Bēidwōfēnde Dìchī Jyāusyăngywè.

Mài: Ou! Wŏ jr̄daule. Yĭdìng shr̀ shàngge ywè wŏ jyē dàu Nánsède syìn yĭhòu, gàusu ni tā yàu géi wo jì chàngpyār lái. Yàuburán jyòu shr̀ Syău Hwáng gàusu nĭde.

Wáng: Shr̀ nĭ dz̀jĭ gàusu wŏde.

Mài: Gwàibudé nĭ jr̄dàu ne. Aīyā! Nĭ kàn tyānshàng nèisyē hēiyún. Yàu syàuyŭle. Dzŏu kwài dyăr ba!

CHINESE-MANDARIN III

GUESS WHAT'S IN THE PACKAGE

A. DIALOGUE

Mike has received a post office notice informing him that he has a package from America. Mike goes to the post office with Wáng Gwāngshēng to claim it.

Mike: Pardon me, there is a package from America for me. This is the notice you sent me.

Postal Clerk: Please wait just a second. I will go to find your package for you.

(The postal clerk finds the package.)

Clerk: Please affix your seal here.

Mike: I don't have a seal, what can I do? Is it alright if I sign for it?

Clerk: No problem. As long as you have an identification card, there is no problem.

(Mike signs for it and claims the package.)

Mike: Wáng Gwāngshēng, using a seal to claim packages in your country is really nonsense.

Wáng: Why nonsense?

Mike: Look, over there there are quite a few places where one can get a seal carved. Anybody can get one for a dime.

Wáng: You are right, but signing for a package in your country also lends itself to ready forgery.

Mike: Forging a signature is a violation of law.

Wáng: Here, if one forges a seal it is also illegal. Ah, actually all these are not completely foolproof methods.

Mike: That's correct. If nobody trusts anybody, then nothing can be done. Wáng Gwāngshēng, you guess what's in here.

Wáng: Phonograph records?

Mike: Hei, how did you know?

Wáng: My eyes are particularly sharp. I only need to glance at it and then I know.

Mike: You are just taking a shot in the dark, and lucky you, you've hit it.

Wáng: I not only know it's phonograph records, but also know what kind of records they are.

Mike: Alright, tell me.

Wáng: It's Beethoven's Symphony No. 7.

Mike: I know. It must be that last month when I received Nancy's letter I told you she was going to send me some records. If not that, then it must be Syǎu Hwáng who told you.

Wáng: It's you yourself who told me.

Mike: No wonder you knew it. Aiya, look at the black clouds in the sky. It's going to rain very soon. Let's walk a little faster.

B.

(The underlined characters are required.)

tūngjr̄	N	通知	notice
tújāng	N	圖章	seal; chop
hàudz	N	耗子	rat
jyāusyǎngywè	N	交響樂	symphony
Bēidwōfēn	N	貝多芬	Beethoven
shēnfènjèng	N	身份證	identification card

gàijāng	VO	蓋章	sign name
pèng	V	碰	hit
chyǔ	V	取	claim
dzwòjyǎ	V	作假	forge; falsify
fànfǎ	V	犯法	violate law
méi wèntí	IE	沒問題	no question; no problem
syāmāu pèng sžhàudz	IE	瞎貓碰死耗子	blind cat bumps into a dead rat (shot in the dark)
méi dàuli	IE	沒道理	no reason; nonsense
chyāndz̀	VO	簽字	sign
kěkàu	Adj	可靠	dependable; reliable

C. 字句用法

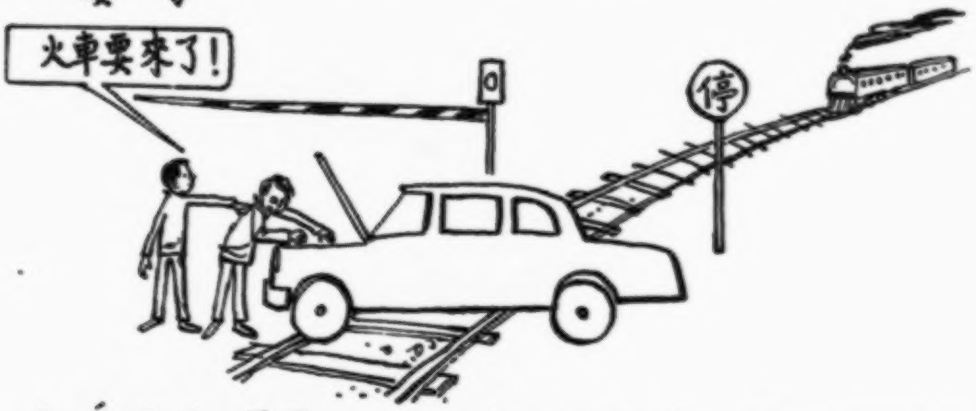
1. The use of yàu...le 要 … 了 construction

要…了 is used to express an action or state that is about to occur.

汽車要開了	The car is about to start.
天氣要冷了	The weather is about to turn cold.
房子要倒了	The house is threatening to topple.
要下雨了	It's going to rain soon.
你再吃就要生病了	If you eat any more, you are going to get sick.

你在這兒等一等.他就要來了	You wait here a minute, he is coming right away.
他的病快要好了	He will soon recover from his illness.

就, 快 , an adverbial modifier accentuates the sense of 要…了



2. Érchyě 而且 as a conjunction does not go between two nouns.

這個帽子好看而且便宜	This hat is pretty as well as expensive.
他學過法文.而且教過法文	He has studied French and even taught French before.
他開汽車開的快.而且開的好	He drives cars fast, and well.

In the sentence above, both 開的快 and 開的好 are stressed, while 不但…而且 suggests that the second element is even more important.

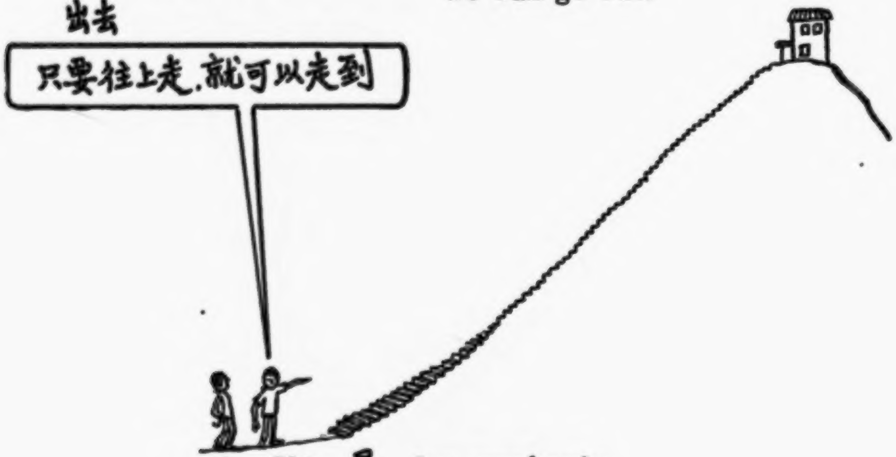
他開汽車不但開的快而且開的好

這個帽子不但好看而且便宜

他不但學過法文而且教過法文

3. jřyàu...jyòu 只要 ... 就 (if only...then) is more emphatic than yàushr̀...jyòu 要是 ... 就 (if...then).

我只要一看就知道了	If I only glance at it, I will know.
只要你喜歡這件衣裳,我就買	If you like this dress, I will buy it.
只要不下雨,我們就可以出去	So long as it does not rain, we can go out.


只要往上走,就可以走到

4. Shr̀ 是 for emphasis.

他是有點兒蹩扭,怎麼說他都不去	He is indeed a little stubborn. No matter how you put it he would not go.
他是吃的多,已經吃了五碗 wǎn 飯了	He really ate a lot, having already put away five bowls of rice.

Jyòu shr̀ 就是 also for emphasis.

我就是不喜歡他	I just don't like him.
他就是找不着他的眼鏡兒	He simply cannot find his eyeglasses.

D. 對話應用

Yǒu yíge rén syáng mǎi yìběn shū. Tā dǎ dyànhwà gěi shūdyàn. Syàndzài chǐng tīng tāmende dwèihwà...

A. Wó syáng mǎi yiběn.
B. Jǐběn?

A. Yìběn.
B. Chīběn?

A. Búshr̀ chīběn, shr̀ yìběn.
B. Ou! Shŕyìběn.

A. Bu, bu, bu. Jyòu shr̀ yìběn.
B. Ou, jyǒushŕyìběn?!

E. ORAL DRILLS

FLUENCY DRILL

Hwǒchē
Hwǒchē láile
Hwǒchē yàu láile
Hwǒchē jyòu yàu láile.

Jèige màudz
Jèige màudz haukàn
Jèige màudz haukàn eŕchyě pyányi
Jèige màudz búdàn hǎukàn eŕchyě pyányi.

Tā hwèi kāi chìchē
Tā hwèi kāi chìchē eŕchyě hwèi syōu chìchē
Tā búdàn hwèi kāi chìchē eŕchyě hwèi syōu chìchē.

Tā kāi chìchē kāide kwài
Tā kāi chìchē kāide kwài eŕchyě kāide hǎu
Tā kāi chìchē búdàn kāide kwài eŕchyě kāide hǎu.

Jèijyàn yīshang
Syǐhwan jèijyàn yīshang
Yàushr ní syǐhwan jèijyàn
yīshang wǒ jyòu mǎi
Jřyàu ní syǐhwan jèijyàn
yīshang wǒ jyòu mǎi.

Tā búchyù
Tā yóudyǎr byènyou, tā
búchyù
Tā shr̀ yóudyǎr byènyou,
dzěmma shwō tā dōu
búchyù.

Chr̄de dwō
Tā chr̄de dwō
Tā chr̄de dwō, tā chr̄le
sānwǎn fànle
Tā shr̀ chr̄de dwō, tā yǐjing
chr̄le wúwǎn fànle.

Nèishwāng syé
Nèishwāng syé hén hǎukàn
Nèishwāng syé hén hǎukàn
kěshr wǒ bùsyǐhwan
Shéi dōu shwō nèishwāng syé
hén hǎukàn kěshr wǒ
jyòushr bùsyǐhwan.

REPLACEMENT DRILL

Wǒ búdàn jr̄dàu shr̀ chàngpyār eŕchyě jr̄dau shr̀ shémma chàngpyār.
hwèi chànggēr, hwà hwàr
méi chyán, péngyou
méidài tújāng, shēnfènjèng
bùsyǐhwan kàn dyànshr̀, dyànyǐngr

Jřyàu yí kàn jyòu jr̄daule.
yí wèn
dǔng
hǎuhāurde yìsyǎng
syíng
wàng chyán dzǒu
yǒu shēnfènjèng

Bùjr̄dau wèi shémma wǒ jyòushr bùsyǐhwan yīnywe.
tā
chànggēr
búywànyi
nèi háidz

Shéi dōu kéyi hwā yìmáu chyán kè yíge tújāng.
mǎi yìjāng pyàu
Něige rén
gài tújāng chyǔ bāugwǒ
Rénrén

RESPONSE DRILL

A. Ní dzŏude nèmma kwài gàn shémma?
B. Yīnwei yàu syàyŭle.
yàu wănle
hwŏchē yàu kāile

A. Tā hwèi shwō Jūnggwo hwà ma?
B. Ta búdàn hwèi shwō eŕchyĕ hwèi syĕ.
shwōde hău shwōde lyóuli
shwōde lyóuli shwōde pyàulyang

A. Nĭ jr̄dau nèige nyŭ háidz shr̀ shéi ma?
B. Wŏ búdàn jr̄dau tā shr̀ shéi eŕchyĕ jr̄dau tā syìng shémma.
eŕchyĕ jr̄dau tāde dyànhwà
hàumăr
búdàn jr̄dau tā syìng shémma

A. Wŏ méiyou tújāng dzĕmma bàn?
B. Jr̆yàu ní yŏu shēnfènjèng jyòu syíngle.
chyāndz
bá nĭ jùde dìfang syĕshang

A. Nĭ dōu syĭhwan shémma yīnywè?
B. Wŏ jyòu syĭhwan jyāusyăngywè.
Bēidwōfēnde Dìwŭ Jyāusyăngywè
jywéshr̀ yīnywè
Pītóude yīnywè

A. Nĭ dōu syĭhwan shémma yīnywe?
B. Wŏ shémma dōu syĭhwan jyòushr bùsyĭhwan jyāusyăngywè.
jywéshr̀ yīnywè

A. Nĭ jăujáu nĭde tújāngle méiyou?
B. Wó năr dōu jăule jyòushr jăubujáu.
jăule lyăngge jūngtóule
jăulái jăuchyù

F. 練習

1. Change the following sentences into búdàn. . .érchyě construction 用"不但…而且"造句

   Wǒ hwèi shwō Dégwohwà, yě hwèi shwō Égwohwà.
   Wǒ búdàn hwèi shwō Dégwohwà, érchyě hwèi shwō Égwohwà.

   a. Jèige sywésheng yǒu tsūngming yǒu yùnggūng.
   b. Tā yǒu chyán yǒu yǒu sywéwen.
   c. Tā sùng gei wo yíge syīn màudz, hai sùng géi wo yìshwāng shǒutàur.
   d. Tā syǐhwan chàng gēr yě syǐhwan tán gāngchín.
   e. Sz̄mǎ Gwāng méiyou pǎu, hěn kwài jǎudàule yíkwài dà shŕtou bá shwěigāng dǎ le yíge dà dùng.
   f. Syǎu Hwáng shwō dzài nèr jàusyàng bái dzāuta jyāujywǎr, nèige pǔbù yìdyǎr yě bùhǎu, shù yǒu lwànchī bādzāu.

2. Complete the following sentences by using jǐryàu. . .jyòu and other appropriate words. 用"只要…就"填空

   a. Ta jr̄dau dzěmma chyù ________ gēnje ta dzǒu ________ búhwèi tswò.
   b. ________ tā ywànyi ________ méi wènti.
   c. ________ tā chyù, wǒ ________ chyù.
   d. Wǒ ________ hwèi shwō Fàgwohwa, wǒ ________ dàu fàgwo chyù.
   e. Wǒ jǐryàu Hwèi shwō Jūnggwo hwà ________.
   f. ________ míngtyan tyānchi hǎu ________.
   g. ________, wǒmen jyòu chyù yětsān.
   h. ________, wo jyòu dàu Jūnggwo chyù.

3. Answer the following questions: 回答問題

   a. Mài-kede bāugwǒ shr̀ tsúng shémma dìfang jìlaide?
   b. Yóujyúde jŕywán chǐng Mài-ke gaǐjāng. Kěshr̀ Mài-ke méiyou tújāng dzěmma ban?
   c. Bāugwǒli byār shr̀ shémma?
   d. Shr̀ shéi jìlaide?
   e. Wèi shémma Wáng Gwāngshēng jr̄dau lǐbyār shr̀ shémma?

Unit XII

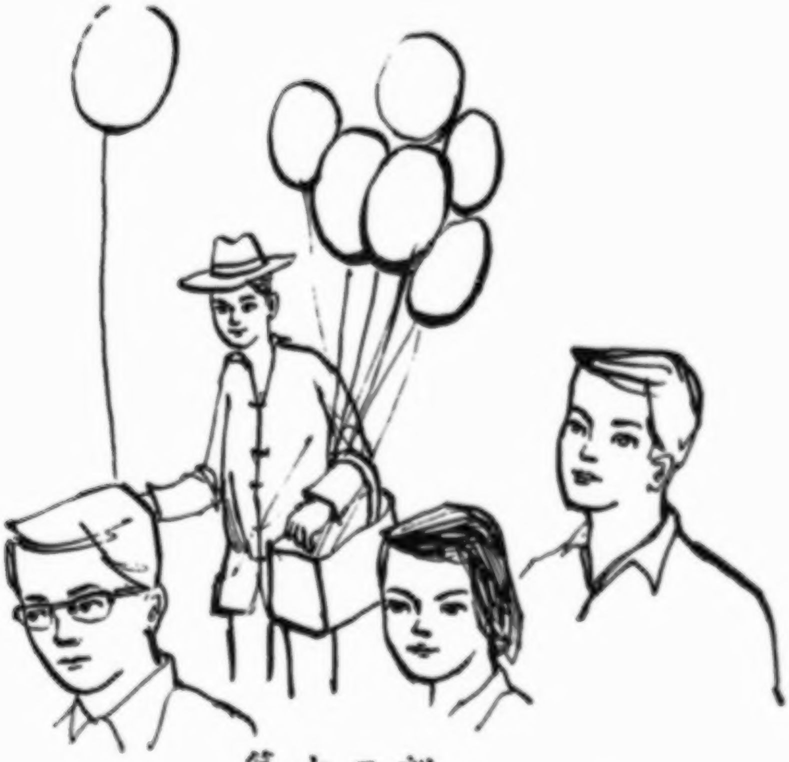
中國古時候的郵政

中國古時候，用馬送①郵件，如果想把一封重要的信很快的送到遠地方去，就用不同的馬互相接替地快跑。每個②接替的地方叫③驛站，可是這些驛站只有④政府才可以使用。⑤民間只靠旅行的人順便帶信件，這樣就慢多了。

當時在外頭做事的人要跟家裏的人寫信是件很不方便的事情。要是打算送比較重的東西到遠地方去，那更不容易了。所以中國有一句俗話說：「⑥千里送鵝毛，禮輕人意重。」

現在交通發達了。不但信件送的快，而且可以打電話。美國離中國雖然很遠，可是送信三天就可以到。打電話的時候聲音很清楚。遇到天氣好的時候，兩頭打電話的人就好像都在同一個城裏一樣。可是其中一個人也許是在美國東北部，那兒的時間是早上兩點，窗外正在下大雪；而另外一個人呢，在⑦亞熱帶的臺灣，屋子外頭的大太陽正熱得利害呢！

1.	郵件	yóujyàn	mail
2.	接替	jyētì	relay
3.	驛站	yǐjàn	pony express station
4.	政府	jèngfǔ	government
5.	民間	mínjyān	among the people
6.	千里送鵝毛 禮輕人意重	chyānlǐ sùng émáu, lǐchīng rényì jùng	presenting a goose feather to someone 1000 li away. The intention is serious even though the present is trivial.
7.	亞熱帶	yàrèdài	subtropic



第十三課

排隊買票

對　　話

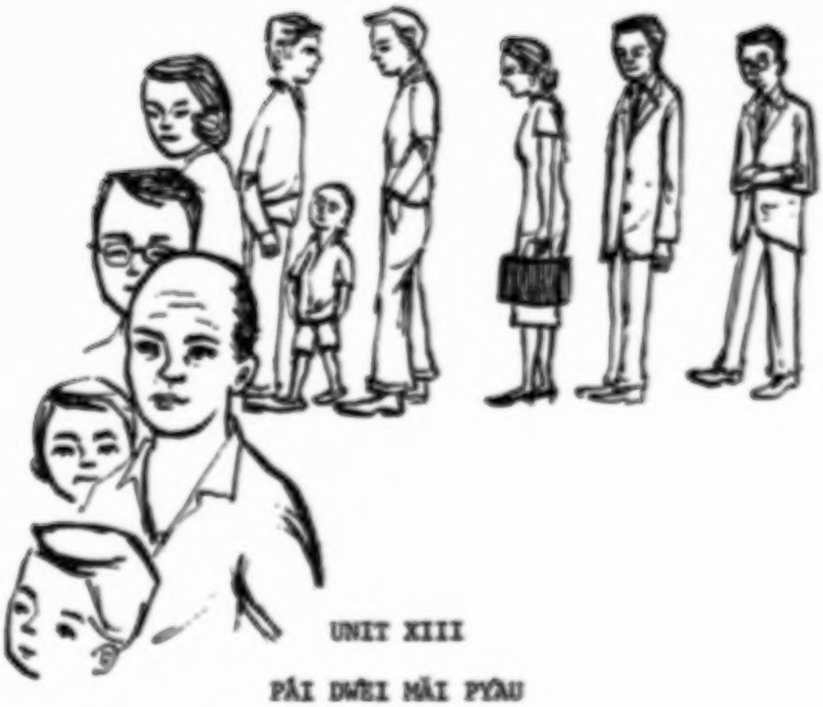
今天的天氣非常好。動物園裏人山
人海。賣票的地方排了好幾條長龍。
小黃跟麥克帶着小黃的小弟弟正在
排隊買票。

黃：這樣兒等下去，得等多少時候兒啊？

麥：我們真應該帶一個手電筒來。

黃：帶手電筒來幹嗎？

麥：看這個樣子，我們進去的時候兒，沒有
　　手電筒，就看不見老虎了。



UNIT XIII

PÁI DWÈI MǍI PYÀU

A. DIALOGUE

Jīntyānde tyānchī fēicháng hǎu. Dùngwùywánli rénshān rénhǎi. Mài pyàude dìfāng páile hǎu jǐtyáu chánglúng. Syǎu Hwáng gēn Mài-ke dàije Syǎu Hwángde syǎu dìdi jèng dzài pái dwèi mǎi pyàu.

Hwáng: Jèiyàngr děngsyàchyù, déi děng dwōshau shŕhour a?

Mài: Wǒmen jēn yīnggāi dài yíge shǒudyàntǔng lái.

Hwáng: Dài shǒudyàntǔng lái gàmmá?

Mài: Kàn jèige yàngdz, wǒmen jìnchyùde shŕhour, méiyǒu shǒudyàntǔng jyòu kànbujyàn láuhule.

黃：早知道是這樣兒，我們應該帶把椅子來，坐着慢慢兒的等。

李：既然來了，就只好等吧！今天天氣真熱啊！

黃：誰說不是呢！我出了很多汗，背心全濕透了。這樣兒曬下去，我非暈了不可。

李：今天來了不少人，大概總有好幾千吧！

黃：要是把所有賣了票的錢都給了我，那我就闊了。

李：只要給我十分之一就行了。

黃：門票一張兩塊錢。要是五千個人就是一萬塊錢。

李：我算一算。要是我一個月花七十塊錢，一年就用八百四十塊錢，十年用八千四百塊錢。

黃：那麼把一天的門票錢都給你，你十年以內就不用發愁了。

Unit XIII

Hwáng: Dzǎu jr̄dau shr̀ jèiyàngr, wǒmen yīnggāi dài bá yǐdz lái, dzwòje mànmārde děng.

Mài: Jìrán láile, jyòu jŕháu děng ba! Jīntyan tyānchi jēn rè a!

Hwáng: Shéi shwō búshr̀ ne! Wǒ chūle hěn dwō hàn. Bèisyīn chywán shr̄ tòule. Jèiyàngr shài syàchyu, wǒ fēi yūnle bùkě.

Mài: Jīntyan láile bùshau rén. Dàgài dzúngyóu háu jǐchyān ba!

Hwáng: Yàushr̀ bá swóyǒu màile pyàude chyán dōu gěile wǒ, nà wǒ jyòu kwòle.

Mài: Jřyàu géi wǒ shŕfēn jr̄yī jyòu syíngle.

Hwáng: Ménpyàu yìjāng lyǎng kwài chyán. Yàushr wǔchyānge rén jyòu shr̀ yíwànkwài chyán.

Mài: Wǒ swànyiswàn. Yàushr wǒ yíge ywè hwā chīshŕkwài chyán, yìnyán jyòu yùng bābǎisz̀shrkwài chyán. Shŕnyán yùng bāchyānsz̀bǎikwài chyán.

Hwáng: Nèmma bǎ yìtyānde ménpyàu chyán dōu géi ni, nǐ shŕnyán yǐnèi jyòu búyùng fāchóule.

（一個賣氣球的走了過來。）

麥：怎麼賣？多少錢一個？

賣氣球的：大的一個一塊五毛錢。小的一個八毛錢。

麥：小弟弟，我買一個氣球給你。挑一個你最喜歡的。

（小弟弟挑了一個小的。麥克給了賣氣球的一塊錢，賣氣球的找了他兩毛錢。）

麥：嘿，小黃，你看那個人跟你招手呢！

黃：那一個？

麥：那個戴眼鏡兒的小姐。

黃：奇怪！我不認識他呀！

麥：對不起，我看錯了。他是跟我們右邊兒那個抱着孩子的太太招手呢。

（麥克跟小黃一邊兒談着話，一邊兒排着隊，到了賣票的地方。買了票就進動物園裏去了。）

Unit XIII

(Yíge mài chìchyóude dzŏule gwò lai.)

Mài: Dzĕmma mài? Dwōshau chyán yíge?

Mài Chìchyóude: Dàde yíge yíkwài wŭmáu chyán. Syăude yíge bāmáu chyán.

Mài: Syău dìdi, wó măi yíge chìchyóu géi ni. Tyāu yíge nĭ dzwèi syĭhwande.

(Syău dìdi tyāule yíge syăude. Mài-ke gĕile mài chìchyóude yíkwài chyán. Mài chìchyóude jăule ta lyăngmáu chyán.)

Mài: Hei, Syău Hwáng, nĭ kàn nèige rén gēn nĭ jāushŏu ne!

Hwáng: Nĕi yíge?

Mài: Nèige dài yănjìngrde syáujye.

Hwáng: Chígwài! Wŏ búrènshr̀ tā ya!

Mài: Dwèibuchĭ. Wŏ kàn tswòle. Tā shr̀ gēn wŏmen yòubyār nèige bàuje háidzde tàitai jāushŏu ne.

(Mài-ke gēn Syău Hwáng yìbyār tánje hwà, yìbyār p[illegible]e dwèi, dàule màipyàude dìfang. Măile pyàu jyòu jìn dùngwùywánli chyùle.)

CHINESE-MANDARIN III

STANDING IN LINE TO BUY TICKETS

A. DIALOGUE

The weather is excellent today. There are many visitors in the zoo. Several long lines are formed at the ticket office. Syǎu Hwáng and Mike, bringing Syǎu Hwáng's little brother, are standing in the line to buy tickets.

Hwáng: Waiting this way, how long must we wait?
Mike: We should have brought a flashlight.

Hwáng: Why should we bring a flashlight?
Mike: The way this thing looks, when we get in we will not be able to see the tigers without a flashlight.

Hwáng: If we knew it would be this way we could have brought a chair to sit down and take our time waiting.
Mike: Since we have come already, we can only wait. It's really hot today.

Hwáng: You said it. I sweated a lot. My T-shirt is all soaked. If I stay under the sun like this, I am definitely going to faint.
Mike: Many people have come today. Probably there are over several thousand.

Hwáng: If they gave me all the money from the ticket sales, I would really be rich.
Mike: Just give me one tenth of it, that will do.

Hwáng: The ticket is sold for $2.00 each. If there are 5,000 people, there would be $10,000.
Mike: Let me figure it. If I spend $70.00 a month, I would use $840 a year. In ten years I need $8,400.

Hwáng: If they give you one day's receipt from the tickets, you have not a thing to worry about in ten years.

(A man selling balloons approaches them.)

Mike: How do you sell them? How much each?

Balloon Seller: $1.50 for the large ones. 80¢ for the small ones.

Mike: Little Brother, I'll buy you a balloon. Choose the one you like best.

(Little Brother picks a small one. Mike gives a dollar to the balloon seller. The balloon seller gives him 20¢ change.)

Mike: Hey, Syǎu Hwáng, look, that person over there is waving at you.

Hwáng: Which one?

Mike: That lady wearing glasses.

Hwáng: That's strange, I don't know her.

Mike: I'm sorry, I made a mistake. She is waving at the lady carrying a child to our right.

(Mike and Syǎu Hwáng carry on their conversation while waiting in line. When they reach the box office they buy the tickets and enter the zoo.)

B. 生字

(The underlined characters are required.)

chánglúng	N	長龍	long-dragon (the long waiting line)
rénchyún	N	人群	crowd of people
shǒudyàntǔng	N	手電筒	flashlight
ménpyàu	N	門票	admission ticket
chìchyóu	N	氣球	balloon

shǔsyang	N	屬相	the animal symbols associated with the cycle of years
shwùnsyù	N	順序	order; sequence
bèisyīn	N	背心	T-shirt
jū	N	猪	pig
shé	N	蛇	snake
hóur	N	猴	monkey
shǔ	N	鼠	rat
tù	N	兔	rabbit
yáng	N	羊	sheep
láuhǔ (hǔ)	N	虎	tiger
páidwèi	V	排隊	form a line
shr̄tòu	V	濕透	soak; drench
yūn	V	暈	faint
fāchóu	VO	發愁	worry
shēng	V	生	bear; be born
shǔ	V	屬	belong to
lwún	V	輪	turn; rotate
kwò	Adj	濶	rich
jīrán	MA	既然	since
yǐnèi	PW	以內	within

rénshān rénhǎi	IE	人山人海	mountains and seas of people
shéi shwō búshr̀ ne!	IE	誰說不是呢!	You said it! (Who'd say it isn't so!)

C.

1. er̀ 二 and lyǎng 兩

Immediately before measure words, 兩 is preferred.

兩個人，兩本書，兩百個人，兩千塊錢

In numbers above ten, 二 is more commonly used.

But 二百八十 and 兩百八十 are interchangeable.

2. The uses of jǐge 幾個 and dwōshau 多少

幾個 can be used in either a declarative or an interrogative sentence. When 幾個 is used, a small number, under ten, is implied.

這個屋子裡有幾個人	There are several persons in this room.
我買了幾支鉛筆	I bought several pencils.
幾本書?	How many books?

多少 is used in an interrogative or a negative sentence and may be used to ask about any number or amount.

你有多少本書?	How many books do you have?
你有多少錢?	How much money do you have?
我們沒有多少水了.	We don't have much water (now).

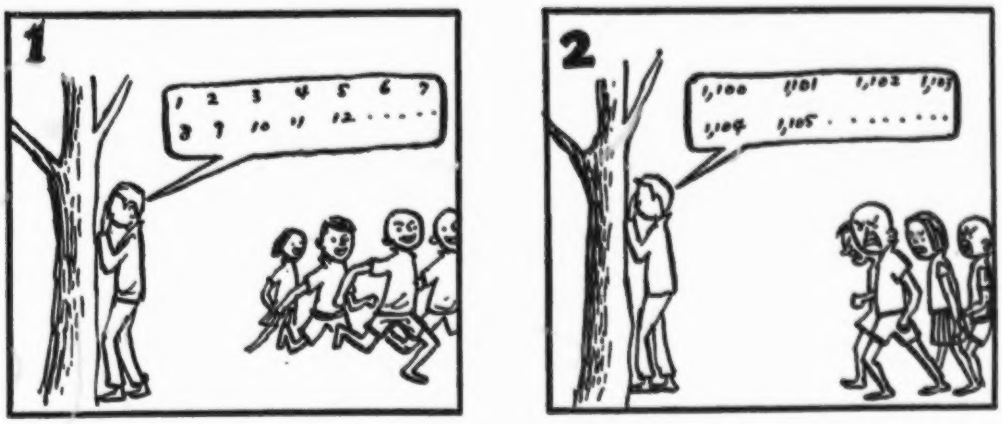
3. From one to hundred million

億(萬萬) yi	hundred million
千萬	ten million
百萬	million
十萬	hundred thousand
萬	ten thousand
千	thousand
百	hundred
十	ten
個	one

4. Swànchyán 算錢

萬 10,000- 90,000	千 1,000- 9,000	百 100- 900	十 10- 90				
				一		五毛(錢)	.50
				一	塊	五毛(錢)	1.50
				一	塊	多(錢)	1.00-2.00
				一	塊	多一點兒	a little more than 1.00
				一	塊	(錢)	1.00
			十		塊	(錢)	10.00
			十		塊	多(錢)	10.00-11.00
			十	多	塊	(錢)	10.00-20.00
			十	二	塊	(錢)	12.00
			十	幾	塊	(錢)	10.00 and some
			二十	多	塊	(錢)	20.00 and more

10,000-90,000	1,000-9,000	100-900	10-90				
			三,四十		塊	(錢)	30.00 or 40.00
			幾十		塊	(錢)	10 - 90
		一百			塊	(錢)	100.00
		一百			塊	多一點兒	a little more than 100.00
		一百		多	塊	(錢)	100.00 and more
		兩三百			塊	(錢)	200.00 or 300.00
		幾百			塊	(錢)	100.00 - 900.00
兩萬	兩千	兩百	五十	二	塊	(錢)	22,252.00


1
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 ......
2
1,100 1,101 1,102 1,103 1,104 1,105 ......

年	月	天	星期	
一年	一個月	一天	一個星期	我在英國住了兩個月 我在法國玩兒了三個星期 我在中國住了一年 我在日本就停了三天
今年	這個月	今天	這個星期	這個月是幾月？ 這個月是五月
去年	上個月	昨天	上個星期	上個星期我的母親來了 去年的天氣比今年的好
明年	下個月	明天	下個星期	下個月是六月 下個星期我們到中國去
一九六六	四月	九日	星期五	今天是一九六六年四月九號

D. 對話應用

A. Nǐ shr̀ neǐnyán shēngde?
B. Wǒ shr̀ yijǒusz̀jyǒu nyán shēngde.

A. Yījyǒusz̀jyǒu nyán shēngde rén shǔ shémma?
B. Ràng wo swànyiswàn, yījyǒusz̀jyǒu nyán shr̀ nyóu nyán. Nǐ yīnggāi shǔ nyóu.

A. Ní dzěmma swàndechulai ne?
B. Jūnggwo yǒu shŕèrge bùtúngde shǔsyang. Dōu shr̀ ànjàu yídìngde shwùnsyù páide. Swóyi měi shŕèr nyán jyòu lwún dàu yíyàngde shǔsyang.

A. Shŕèrge shǔsyang dōu shr̀ syē shémma? Dzěmma páide?
B. Jīnnyan shr̀ shé nyàn. Yàushr tsúng jīnnyan swàn chǐ jyòu shr̀:

1. shé 2. mǎ 3. yáng 4. hóur 5. jī 6. gǒu
7. jū 8. shǔ 9. nyóu 10. hǔ 11. tù 12. lúng

E. ORAL DRILLS

FLUENCY DRILL

Chyānbǐ
Jǐjr̄ chyānbǐ
Mǎile jǐjr̄ chyānbǐ
Ní mǎile jǐjr̄ chyānbǐ?

Chyānbǐ
Dwōshau jr̄ chyānbǐ?
Mǎile dwōshau jr̄ chyānbǐ?
Ní mǎile dwōshau jr̄ chyānbǐ?

Shwěi
Dwōshau shwěi
Méiyou dwōshau shwěi
Wǒmen méiyou dwōshau shwěile.

Yíkwài chyán
Wó yǒu yíkwài chyán
Wó yǒu yíkwài dwō chyán
Wó yǒu shŕkwài dwō chyán
Wó yǒu shŕèrkwài chyán
Wó yǒu shŕjǐkwài chyán
Wó yǒu èrshr dwō kwài chyán
Wó yǒu jǐshrkwài chyán
Wó yóu lyǎngchyān lyángbǎi èrshŕèrkwài chyán.

CHINESE-MANDARIN III

Syīngchī
Sānge syīngchī
Dzài Fàgwo wárle sānge syīngchī
Wǒ dzài Fàgwo wárle sānge syīngchī.
Wǒ dzài Fàgwo wárle sānge ywè.
Wǒ dzài Fàgwo wárle sāntyān.
Wǒ dzài Fàgwo jùle sānnyán.

Dàu Jūnggwo chyù
Yàu dàu Jūnggwo chyù
Wǒmen yàu dàu Jūnggwo chyù
Syàge syīngchī wǒmen yàu dàu Jūnggwo chyù.

Shàngge syīngchī
Shàngge syīngchī dàu Jūnggwo chyùle
Shàngge syīngchī tāmen dàu Jūnggwo chyùle.

Lěng
Chyùnyan lěng
Chyùnyan bǐ jīnnyan lěng.

REPLACEMENT DRILL

Déi děng dwōshau shŕhour a?
jǐge jūngtóu
jǐge ywè
jù
jīnyán
dwōshau tyān

Jèiyàng shàisyàchyu wǒ fēi yūnle bùkě.
pǎusyàchyu
bìngle bùkě
chr̄syàchyu
fāchóusyàchyu

Wǒ yíge syīngchī hwā lyǎngkwài dwō chyán.
shŕkwài dwō chyán
yìtyān
èrshŕdwōkwài chyán
yíge ywè
èrsānshŕkwài chyán
yìnyán
lyángbǎidwōkwài chyán

Tā gēn nèige rén jāushǒu ne.
shwō hwà
nèige syáujye
nèige dài yǎnjìngrde syáujye
nèige chwān húng yīshangde syáujye
nèige chūle hěn dwō hànde syáujye

Dōu shr̀ ànjàu yídìngde shwùnsyù páide.
syěde
bànfǎ
dzwòde

RESPONSE DRILL

A. Nǐ yàu dwōshau?
B. Wǒ yàu yǐdyǎr shwěi.
lyǎngbēi shwěi
búyàu dwōshau
yǐdyǎr dōu búyàu
yíge dōu búyàu

A. Nǐ dzěmma bùpǎule ne?
B. Dzài pǎusyàchyu wǒ fēi yūnle bùkě.
bìngle
shwāidǎu

A. Nǐ píngcháng yíge ywè hwā dwōshau chyán?
B. Wǒ píngcháng yíge ywè hwā èrshrdwōkwài chyán.
lyángbǎidwōkwài chyán
lyǎngchyāndwōkwài chyán
jyòu hwā lyǎngkwài chyán
èrsānshŕkwài chyán
shŕer̀kwài chyán
shŕjǐkwài chyán
jǐshŕkwài chyán

A. Nǐ dzěmma jr̄dàu jīnnyan shr̀ lúngnyán?
B. Yīnwei jèisyē shǔsyang dōu shr̀ ànjàu yídìngde shwùnsyù páide.
lwúnde
swànde

A. Nǐ shr̀ něi yìnyán shēngde? Shǔ shémma?
B. Wǒ shr̀ yìjyǒusz̀chī nyán shēngde, shǔ nyóu.
yìjyóuwǔlíng lúng
yìjyóuwǔer̀ mǎ
yìjyóuwúwu jī
yìjyóuwǔlyòu gǒu
yìjyóuwújyǒu nyóu
yìjyǒu lyòuèr lúng

F. 練習

1. State in Chinese: 用中國話說

a. He could not find those two books.
b. He spent eleven thousand five hundred and twenty five dollars last year.
c. She is twenty years old.
d. He has a little more than a dollar.

2. Complete the following sentences: 填空

a. Chyùnyan wǒ dzài Fàgwo jùle ________ ywè.
b. ______ syīngchī tāmen dàu dùngwùywán chyùle.
c. Yìnyán yǒu _____ ywè? Yíge ywè yǒu ______ tyān?
d. Yìnyánde dìyíge ywè shr̀ _______. Měige ywède dìyìtyān shr̀ _________.
e. Jīntyan shr̀ _________.

3. Answer the following questions in Chinese: 回答問題

a. Mài-ke yíge ywè hwā dwōshau chyán?
b. Mài-ke mǎile shémma géi Syǎu Hwángde syǎu dìdi?
c. Shéi gēn syǎu Hwáng jāushǒur ne?
d. Ni shr̀ něi yìnyán shēngde? Shǔ shemma?
e. Nǐ jyālide dyànhwà shr̀ dwōshau hàu?

Unit XIII

該死的已經死了

(節自三百字故事第十二册第二十五頁)

從前有一個喜歡賭錢的黄先生，在 ①賭場裏 ②賭錢。開始的時候，他的運氣很好。他用一萬塊錢的本錢，慢慢的贏了兩萬塊，三萬塊，五萬塊，十萬塊，二十萬塊。後來一共有了一百萬塊。他的朋友站在他後頭，輕輕的碰了一碰他的手，③勸他不要賭了，他不聽。

後來他就開始輸起來了。他贏的一百萬塊錢很快的就只剩九十萬，八十萬，十萬，八萬，兩萬，最後連他自己的一萬塊錢 ④本錢也完全輸了。他氣極了，馬上就暈了。找醫生來看，給他藥吃，已經太晚了。

他的朋友不能不去告訴黄太太。可是他怎麼說呢？真是去也不好，不去也不好。最後那個朋友到了黄家，想了半天，才跟黄太太說：「黄先生又賭錢了。」黄太太聽了這句話，臉都 ⑤青了，正要生氣的時候，那位朋友又說：「黄太太，他贏了很多錢，差不多有一百萬塊。」黄太太馬上高興起來，她笑着問那位朋友：「是真的嗎？」

那位朋友說：「當然是真的。不過他又輸了。我勸他他不聽。後來他把自己的一萬塊錢本錢也都輸完了。」黄太太的臉又青了，就大聲的罵了一句：「⑥真該死！」

那位朋友趕快說：「不錯，黄太太，真該死的已經死了。」

1.	賭場	**dúchǎng**	**gambling casino**
2.	賭錢	**dǔchyán**	**gamble**
3.	勸	**chywàn**	**urge**
4.	本錢	**běnchyán**	**capital**
5.	青	**chīng**	**blue**
6.	真該死	**jēngāisž**	**really should drop dead!**

第十四課

下大雨

對話

黃：下雨下了兩個多鐘頭了，真討厭！

李：這種天氣最沒準兒了，說下
就下，說停就停。

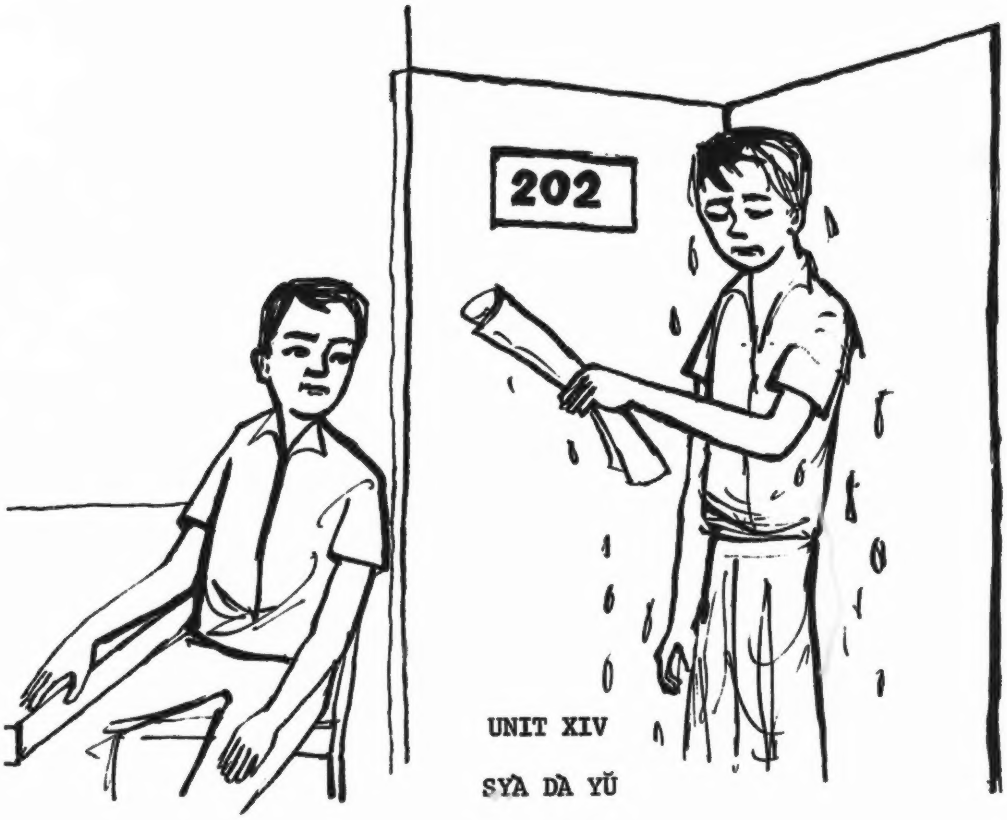
黃：看樣子還得下很久。

李：麥克到那兒去了？下這麼大雨，我
真替他担心。

王：到街上買紙去了。

黃：我跟他說馬上要下雨了。他說
不會的。連雨傘都沒帶就走了。

王：雨好像越下越大了。



UNIT XIV

SYÀ DÀ YŬ

A. DIALOGUE

Hwáng: Syàyŭ syàle lyăngge dwō jūngtóule. Jēn tăuyàn!

Lĭ: Jèijŭng tyānchi dzwèi méi jwĕrle. Shwō syà jyòu syà. Shwō tīng jyòu tīng.

Hwáng: Kàn yàngdz hái dĕi syà hén jyŏu.

Lĭ: Mài-ke dàu năr chyùle? Syà jèmma dà yŭ. Wŏ jēn tì tā dānsyīn.

Wáng: Dàu jyēshang mái jř chyùle.

Hwáng: Wŏ gēn tā shwō măshàng yàu syà yŭle. Tā shwō búhwèide. Lyán yúsăn dōu méi dài jyòu dzŏule.

Wáng: Yú hăusyàng ywè syà ywè dàle.

黃：不但雨下的很大，而且風也刮的
　　很利害。

王：這樣兒下去非鬧水災不可。
　　（天上忽然打了一個大雷。）

黃：好傢伙！這個雷就好像在我們
　　頭上一樣。可把我嚇壞了。

李：有甚麼可怕？一定是你做了壞事了。
　　人家說一個人要是做了壞事或是
　　對父母不好，雷就會打他。

黃：原子時代了，還這麼迷信。
　　（天上打了一個很亮的閃，打閃的
　　時候兒參克進來了，全身都濕了。）

李：嘿，參克。你幹甚麼去了？看你淋的
　　這個可憐樣兒！

參：別提了，真倒霉！買了紙出來不久
　　就下起雨來了。買的紙都完了。

黃：真可惜！快去換衣服吧！別
　　回頭着了涼。

Hwáng: Búdàn yŭ syàde hĕn dà, érchyĕ fēng yĕ gwāde hĕn lìhai.

Wáng: Jèiyàngr syàchyu fēi nàu shwĕidzāi bùkĕ.

(Tyān shang húrán dăle yíge dà léi.)

Hwáng: Hăujyāhwo! Jèige léi jyòu hăusyàng dzài wŏmen tóushang yíyàng. Ké bá wŏ syà hwàile.

Lĭ: Yŏu shémma kĕpà? Yídìng shr̀ nĭ dzwòle hwài shr̀le. Rénjya shwō yíge rén yàushr̀ dzwòle hwài shr̀ hwòshr̀ dwèi fùmŭ bùhău, léi jyòu hwèi dă ta.

Hwáng: Ywándž shŕdàile, hái jèmma mísyìn.

(Tyān shang dăle yíge hĕn lyàngde shăn. Dá shănde shŕhour, Mài-ke jìnlaile. Chywánshēn dōu shr̄le.)

Lĭ: Hèi, Mài-ke. Nĭ gàn shémma chyùle? Kàn nĭ lìnde jèige kĕlyán yàngr!

Mài: Byé tīle. Jēn dăuméi! Măile jř chūlai bùjyŏu jyòu syàchiyŭláile. Măide jř dōu wánle.

Hwáng: Jēn kĕsyī! Kwài chyù hwàn yīfu ba! Byé hwéitóu jáule lyáng.

CHINESE-MANDARIN III

A HEAVY RAIN

A. DIALOGUE

Hwáng: It has been raining for over two hours. It's really annoying.
Lǐ: This kind of weather is most unreliable. It may start raining any moment, and stop any moment.

Hwáng: It looks as if it is going to rain for quite a while yet.
Lǐ: Where did Mike go. It's raining so hard. I'm worried about him.

Wáng: He went out to buy some paper.
Hwáng: I told him it was going to rain immediately. He said it would not. He left without even bringing an umbrella.

Wáng: The rain seems to be getting heavier and heavier.
Hwáng: Not only it's raining hard, the wind is also very strong.

Wáng: If it keeps on this way, there is going to be a flood.

(Suddenly there is a thunderbolt.)

Hwáng: Good gracious! This thunderbolt seems to have been directly above our heads. I'm scared to death.
Lǐ: Why so scared? You must have done something evil. People say if a man has done something wrong or has been mistreating his parents, thunder would strike him.

Hwáng: This is an atomic age, and you are still so superstitious.

(There is a very bright flash of lightning in the sky. At this moment Mike walks in. He is all drenched.)

Lǐ: Hi, Mike. Where did you go? Look how pitifully drenched you are.

Mike: Let's not talk about it anymore. It's really my bad luck. Soon after I bought the paper and walked out of the shop it started raining. All the paper I bought is gone.

Hwáng: What a shame. Hurry up and change your clothes. Otherwise you're going to catch cold.

B. 生字

(The underlined characters are required.)

tyānchi	N	天氣	weather
yúsǎn	N	雨傘	umbrella
Lǎutyānyé	N	老天爺	Heaven
ywándž shŕdài	N	原子時代	atomic age
tǎuyàn	V	討厭	annoy
tíngbulyǎu	RV	停不了	cannot stop
nàu shwěidzāi	V	鬧水災	flood
lín	V	淋	become wet in the rain
báifèi	V	白費	spend in vain; waste
kěpà	Adj	可怕	fearful; terrifying
mísyìn	Adj, N	迷信	superstition
tùngkwài	Adj	痛快	delightful
kělyàn	Adj	可憐	pitiful
fán	Adj	煩	boring
gùyì	A	故意	on purpose
hūrán	A	忽然	suddenly

dīdī dādāde	A	滴滴答答的	drip and drop (the sound of dripping)
yíjèndz	TW	一陣子	a spell; a short while
hwéitóu	TW	回頭	in a minute; a little later
gwòbuchyù	IE (RV)	過不去	cause trouble; make it difficult (cannot pass)
shr̄	Adj	濕	wet
méijwěr	IE	沒準兒	no certainty; unreliable
hǎujyāhwo!	IE	好傢伙	terrific!
byétíle	IE	别提了	Don't bring it up; Let's not talk about it anymore.
chàyidyǎr	IE	差一點兒	almost; missing by a little bit

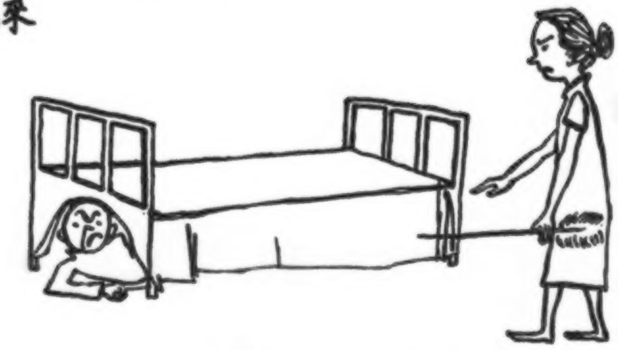
C. 字句用法

1. Shwō...jyòu 說…說

說 . . . 說 suggests prompt action

說下就下, 說停就停	It rains and stops all so suddenly.
說走就走	The moment (he) mentions leaving, (he) is on his way.
說做就做	No sooner said than done. (If we want to do it, let's do it right now.)
我說到中國去就到中國去	I said I was going to China, and I did.

說不出來就不出來



2. The uses of kĕlyán 可憐 and kĕsyī 可惜

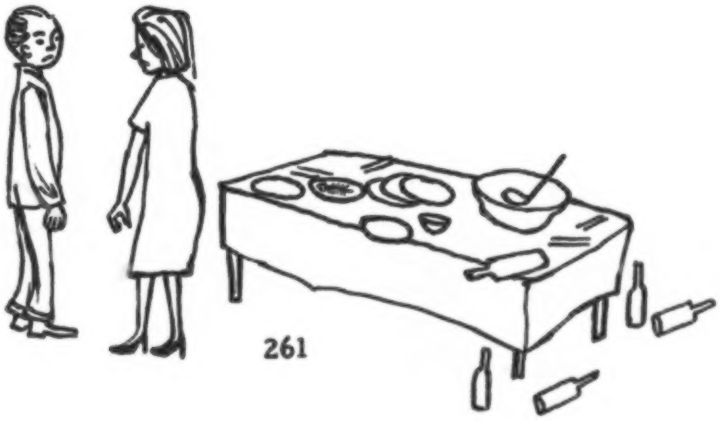
可憐, to pity, be pitiful or pitiable

看你淋的這個可憐樣兒	Look how pitifully wet you've gotten.
那個孩子真可憐,病了一個月了	That child is really pitiful, having been sick for a month already.
請你可憐可憐他吧	Please, have pity on him.

可惜, too bad, what a pity, or unfortunately

真可惜: 剛買的紙都濕了 gāng	It's a shame. The paper I have just bought is all wet.
那個孩子真可惜,那麼聰明不學好	It's really a pity. The child is so intelligent yet does not behave.

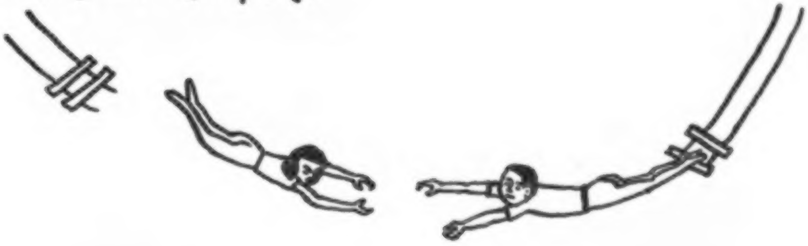
可惜,我們來晚了.他們已經走了



3. The uses of dānsyīn 擔心 and fāchóu 發愁

In general use, their difference seems to be: to worry about a potential situation; 發愁 , to worry about an exiting situation.

我真擔心他出了甚麼事兒了	I am really worried about what might have happened to him.
他開車開的太快,我很擔心	He drives too fast. I am very upset.
我擔心他會掉下來	I fear that he might fall.



我很發愁,我們每個月的錢都不夠用.	I am very concerned that every month we run short of money.
那個孩子就是不念書,我真替他發愁	The child just won't study. I am worried about him.

D. 對話應用

A. Yǔ tíngle ba!
B. Hái méi tíng ne! Syàle yìtyānle. Wǒ syīnli jēn fán.

A. Wó yě bùsyǐhwan jèijǔng syáuyū, dīdi dādāde bujr̄dau děi syà dàu shémma shŕhour!
B. Wó syǐhwan syà dàyǔ. Tùngtungkwàikwārde sya yíjèndz, jyòu chū tàiyang.

A. Kěshr̀ jīntyande yǔ, kan yàngdz yìshŕ tíngbulyǎu.
B. Nǐ kàn jèi yíge Syīngchītyan yòu jèiyang báifèile.

A. Hǎusyàng yídàu Syīngchītyan jyou syà yǔ. Shémma dìfang dōu bùnéng chyù.
B. Lǎutyānyé gùyì gēn wǒmen gwòbuchyù.

E. ORAL DRILLS

FLUENCY DRILL

Yǔ
Jèijúng yǔ
Jèijúng yǔ shwō syà jyòu syà
Jèijúng yǔ shwō syà jyòu syà,
   shwō tíng jyòu tíng.

Shwō
Wǒ shwō
Wǒ shwō dàu Jūnggwó chyù
Wǒ shwō dàu Jūnggwó chyù
   jyòu dàu Jūnggwó chyù.

Kělyán
Jèmma kělyán
Kàn nǐ jèmma kělyán
Kàn nǐ línde jèmma kělyán
Kàn nǐ línde jèige kělyán
   yàngr!

Kěsyī
Jēn kěsyī!
Jēn kěsyī! jèisyē jř shr̄le
Jēn kěsyī! jèisyē jř dōu
   shr̄le
Jēn kěsyī! jèisyē gāng mǎide
   jř dōu shr̄le.

Dyàusyalai
Hwèi dyàusyalai
Tā hwèi dyàusyalai
Wǒ dānsyīn tā hwèi dyàusyalai.

Tài kwài
Kāide tài kwài
Kāichē kāide tài kwài
Tā kāichē kāide tài kwài
Tā kāichē kāide tài kwài, wǒ
   hěn dānsyīn.

Nèige háidz
Nèige háidz búnyànshū
Nèige háidz jyòushr búnyànshū
Nèige háidz jyòushr búnyànshū,
   wǒ jēn fāchóu
Nèige háidz jyòushr búnyànshū,
   wǒ jēn tì ta fāchóu.

Gwòbuchyù
Gēn wǒmen gwòbuchyù
Hǎusyàng gēn wǒmen gwòbuchyù
Hǎusyàng gùyì gēn wǒmen
   gwòbuchyù
Lǎutyānyé hǎusyàng gùyì gēn
   wǒmen gwòbuchyù.

REPLACEMENT DRILL

Jèijǔng tyānchi dzwèi méi jwěrle shwō syàyǔ jyòu syàyǔ.
shwō lěng jyòu lěng
shwō byàn jyòu byàn

Wǒ shwō chyù kàn ni jyòu chyù kàn ni.
sywè Jūnggwo hwà
dzwò
dzwò shémma
bùná yúsǎn

Kàn nǐ lǐnde jèige kělyán yàngr.
pǎude
jēn kělyán
nèige háidz
kūde
bìngde

Jēn kěsyī! Gāng mǎide jř dōu shr̄le.
chwānshangde syīn yīshang
Nèmma tsūngmingde háidz bùsywé hǎu
Nǐ lái wǎnle, tāmen bǎ nèisyē dūngsyi dōu chr̄le

Syà jèmma dà yǔ, wǒ jēn tì ta dānsyīn.
Gwā jèmma dà fēng
wǒ dānsyīn tā jáulyǎng
Tā chwān yīshang chwānde tài shǎu

Wó hěn fāchóu wǒmen méige ywède chyán dōu búgòu.
wǒmende chyán yùngwánle
jèisyē chyán yùngwánle yǐhòu dzěmma bàn
Wǒ yóudyǎr fāchóu
jèige háidz yǐjīng shŕswèile hái búhwèi shwō hwà

Hǎujyāhwo! Jèige léi jyòu hǎusyàng dzài wǒmen tōushang yíyàng.
Yǔ syàde jèmma dà!
Nèilyǎnglyàng chīchè chàyìdyǎr jyòu pèngshangle

Byé hwěitóu jáulelyáng.
yìhwěr
yòu wǎnle

RESPONSE DRILL

A. Nǐ kàn wǒ yàubuyau dài yúsǎn?
B. Nǐ dzwèihǎu dài, jèrde tyānchi shwō byàn jyòu byān.
shwō syàyǔ jyòu syàyǔ

A. Nǐ dàu Jūnggwo chyù ma?
B. Wǒ shwō chyù jyòu chyù.
búchyù

A. Nèige háidz wèi shémma bùtíngde kū?
B. Jèn kělyán! Tā sāntyān méi chr̄fànle.
bìngle
jǎubujáu tā māmale

A. Jīntyan nǐmen wárde tùngkwai ma?
B. Jēn kěsyī! Nǐ méi chyù.
Wǒ méidài yóuyǔngyī chyù
Nèmma dzǎu jyòu hwéilaile

A. Tā búhwèi chū shémma shr̀ ba?
B. Wǒ jēn dānsyīn.
Wǒ jēn tì tā dānsyīn
Byédānsyīn, tā búhwèi chūshr̀de
Búyùng dānsyīn
Yùngbujáu dānsyīn
Búbì dānsyīn
Chǐng búbì dānsyīn

A. Tā háishr̀ bùsyǐhwan nyàn shū ma?
B. Jèiyàng syàchyu, wǒ jēn fāchóu
dzěmma bàn ne?

F. 練習

1. State in Chinese: 用中國話說

a. She has lots of money. Too bad she is not very pretty.
b. Unfortunately it is raining again, otherwise we would go out and play basketball.

c. How pitiful that boy is!
d. The rich people do not pity poor people.
e. What a pity! Such a smart boy has learned only bad habits.

2. Complete the following sentences with dānsyīn 擔心 or fāchóu 發愁 填空

a. Chǐng ni búyàu ________ tā búhwèi chūshr̀.
b. Tā mǎibuchǐ fēijī pyàu, jèngdzài ________ ne!
c. Nèige háidz tyāntyān dàu hébyār chyù wár, wǒ jēn tī ta ________.
d. Wǒ hěn __________ ta hwèi bǎ nèijyàn shr̀ wàngle.
e. Yǒu méiyou chyánle, wǒ jēn ____________.

3. Answer the following questions: 回答問題

a. Syà yǔde shŕhour, Mài-ke dàu nǎr chyùle?
b. Mài-ke dài yúsǎnle méiyou? Wèi shémma tā méi dài?
c. Mài-ke géi yǔ lín shr̄le méiyou?
d. Dǎ léi dá shǎnde shŕhour, nǐ hāipà ma?

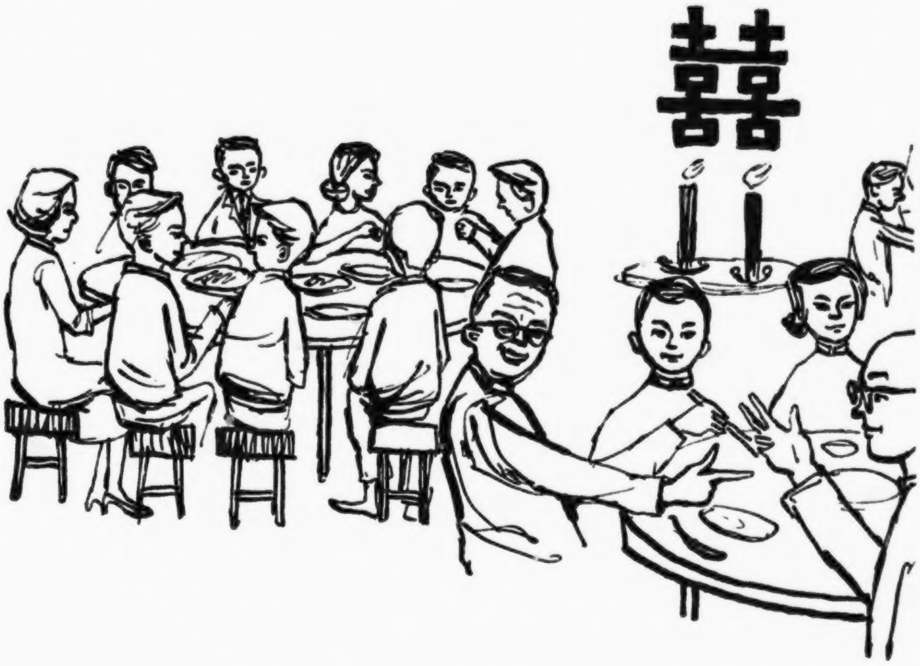
Unit XIV

苦雨

（節自周作人"苦雨"）

前天①十足下了一夜的雨，使我夜裏不知②醒了幾次。北平除了③偶然有人高興放幾個④鞭炮以外，夜裏總是還安靜。那樣嘩喇嘩喇的雨聲在我的耳朵已經⑤聽不很慣了，所以常常被吵醒。就是睡着的時候，也好像覺得有什麼東西在耳朵裏似的。睡的很不舒服。還有一樣，前天晚上按小孩子們的報告前面院子裏的水已經離⑥臺階不到一⑦寸。夜裏聽着雨聲，心裏糊里糊塗地總是想水已上了臺階，⑧浸入西邊的書房裏了。好容易到了早上五點鐘，光着脚，拿着⑨傘，跑到西屋一看，⑪果然不錯，水浸滿了全屋，大概有一寸深淺。這才⑪嘆了一口氣，覺得放心了。要是這樣高高興興地跑去，一看沒有水，恐怕那時反而會覺得⑫失望，沒有現在那樣的⑬滿足，也說不定。

1.	十足	shŕdzú	fully
2.	醒	syǐng	awake
3.	偶然	ǒurán	occasionally
4.	鞭炮	byānpàu	firecracker
5.	聽慣	tīnggwàn	accustomed to hearing
6.	台階	táijyē	steps
7.	寸	tswùn	inch
8.	浸	jìn	flood; soak
9.	傘	sǎn	umbrella (cf. yúsǎn)
10.	果然	gwǒrán	naturally
11.	嘆了一口氣	tànle yìkǒu chì	to sigh a sigh
12.	失望	shīwàng	disappointed
13.	滿足	mǎndzú	satisfied



第十五課

参加婚禮

對　話

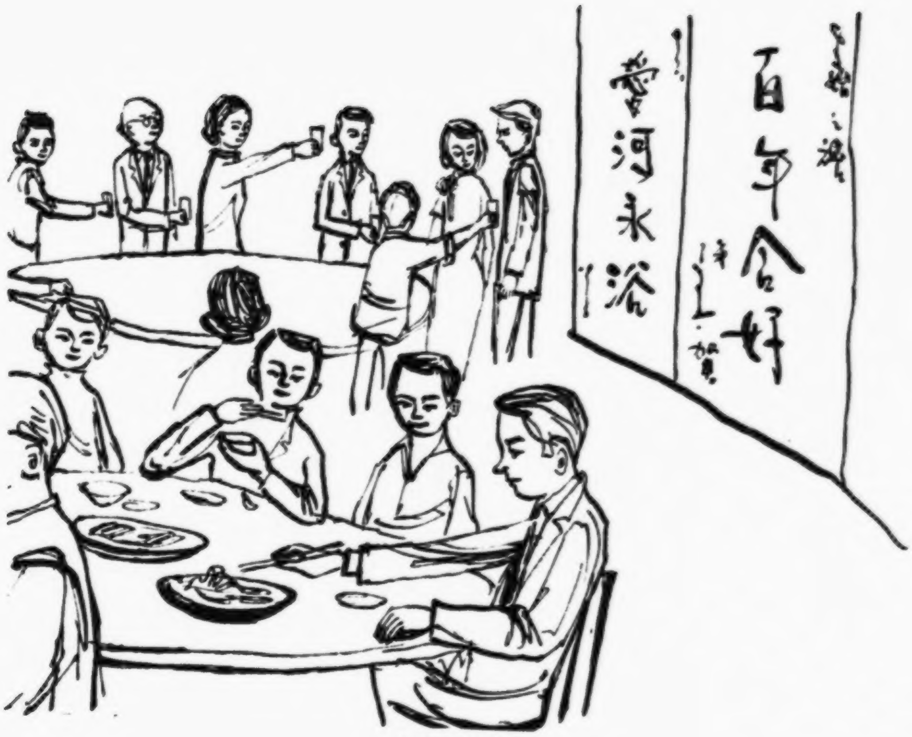
李元的大哥結婚。小黃，麦克跟王先生都被請去参加婚禮，婚禮完了以後，客人談着話等着吃酒席。

麦：新娘子很漂亮。

王：新娘子是李元的大哥的同學。他們已經好了幾年了。

黃：不像古時候兒，父母很早就給兒女訂婚，甚至於指腹為婚。

麦：甚麼叫指腹為婚？



UNIT XV

TSĀNJYĀ HWŪNLĬ

A. DIALOGUE

Lĭ Ywánde dà gē jyéhwūn. Syău Hwáng, Mài-ke gēn Wáng Gwāngshēng dōu bèi chĭng chyù tsānjyā hwūnli. Hwūnlĭ wánle yĭhòu, kèrén tánje hwà dĕnje chr̄ jyŏusyí.

Mài: Syīnnyángdz hĕn pyàulyang.

Wáng: Syīnnyángdz shr̀ Lĭ Ywánde dà gēde túngsywé.
Tāmen yĭjīng hăule jīnyánle.

Hwáng: Búsyàng gŭshŕhòur, fùmŭ hén dzău jyòu gĕi érnyŭ dìnghwūn, shènjr̀yú jř fù wéi hwūn.

Mài: Shémma jyàu jř fù wéi hwūn?

黃：指腹爲婚就是兩個好朋友的太太都有孩子了，還沒生的時候兒，就說：「要是我們的兩個孩子是一男一女，將來就讓他們結婚。

麥：啊？要是兩個孩子都是男的呢？

黃：那就算是兩兄弟。

麥：這真有點兒………要是結婚以後發現性格合不來，怎麼辦呢？

黃：那有甚麼辦法呢？只好互相將就一點兒囉！

麥：聽說古時候兒男女兩個人一直到結婚的那一天才見面，是嗎？

黃：是啊。從前婚禮的時候兒，新娘子是不可以讓人看的・頭上蒙了一塊紅布・一直到晚上進了洞房，就剩下新郎跟新娘子的時候兒，那塊紅布才能讓新郎拿下來。

麥：真有意思！新郎拿那塊紅布的時候兒，一定很緊張・把紅布一拿下來，就是自己的太太了。多方便啊！

黃：方便？把紅布一拿下來，一看是個醜八怪，你就不方便了。

（麥克忍不住笑起來了。這時候兒招待們叫客人們入席，大廳裏一共有二十幾張圓棹兒。

Unit XV

Hwáng: Jr̆ fù wéi hwūn jyòu shr̀ lyăngge hău péngyoude
tàitai dōu yŏu háidzle, hái méishēngde shŕhour,
jyòu shwō: "Yàu shr̀ wŏmende lyăngge háidz shr̀
yì nán yì nyŭ, jyānglái jyòu ràng tāmen jyéhwūn.

Mài: Oŭ? Yàu shr̀ lyăngge háidz dōu shr̀ nánde ne?

Hwáng: Nà jyòu swàn shr̀ lyăng syūngdì.

Mài: Jèi jēn yóudyăr... Yàushr̀ jyéhwūn yĭhòu fāsyàn
syìnggé hébulái, dzĕmma bàn ne?

Hwáng: Nà yŏu shémma bànfa ne? Jŕhău hùsyāng jyāngjyou
yìdyăr lou!

Mài: Tīngshwō gŭshŕhour nán nyú lyăngge rén yìjŕ dàu
jyéhwūnde nèi yìtyān tsái jyàn myàn, shr̀ ma?

Hwáng: Shr̀ a. Tsúngchyán hwūnlĭde shŕhòur, syīnnyángdz
shr̀ bùkéyi ràng rén kànde. Tóu shang méngle yĭkwài
húngbù. Yìjŕ dàu wănshang jìnle dùngfáng, jyòu
shèngsya syīnláng gēn syīnnyángdzde shŕhòur,
nèikwài húngbù tsái néng ràng syīnláng násyàlai.

Mài: Jēn yŏu yìsz! Syīnláng ná nèikwài húngbùde
shŕhour, yĭdìng hén jīnjāng. Bă húngbù yìnásyalai,
jyòu shr̀ dz̀jĭde tàitaile. Dwō fāngbyan a!

Hwáng: Fāngbyan? Bă húngbù yìnásyàlai, yĭ kàn shr̀ gè
chŏubágwài. Nĭ jyòu bùfāngbyanle.

(Mài-ke rĕnbujù, syàuchilaile. Jèi shŕhour jāudàimen jyàu
kèrénmen rùsyĭ. Dàtīngli yĭgùng yŏu èrshrjĭjāng ywánjwōr.

每一個圓棹兒坐了十二個人）

李：來，大家先喝點兒酒。

（大家拿起了酒杯：互相敬了酒，就吃起來了，大家一邊兒吃，一邊兒談。）

麦：現在的婚禮是不是變了很多？跟從前不一樣了吧？

李：可不是嗎。現在大家都是先交朋友。合的來才結婚，你看婚禮也跟從前不一樣了。

麦：我剛才看見他們也交換了戒指呢•

李：嘿，小黃，別客氣。吃菜啊！

麦：不用替他担心。他才不會客氣呢！你看那盤兒菜都叫他吃光了•

李：小黃，來，我們划拳好不好。

（新郎跟新娘子到每一個圓棹兒前面來敬酒。）

黃：乾杯！新娘子乾杯！

新：謝謝。我不會喝。

黃：沒關係•乾！乾！現在要是不聽話等一會兒鬧洞房的時候兒，我可就不客氣了。

Méi yíge ywánjwōr dzwòle shŕèrge rén.)

Lĭ: Lái, dàjyā syān hē dyár jyŏu.

(Dàjyā náchĭle jyŏubēi. Hùsyāng jìngle jyŏu, jyòu chr̄chĭláile. Dàjyā yìbyār chr̄, yìbyār tán.)

Mài: Syàndzàide hwūnlĭ shr̀ bushr byànle hĕn dwō? Gēn tsúngchyán bùyíyàngle ba?

Lĭ: Kĕ búshr̀ ma. Syàndzài dàjyā dōu shr̀ syān jyāu péngyou. Hédelái tsái jyéhwūn. Nĭ kàn hwūnlĭ yĕ gēn tsúngchyán bùyíyàngle.

Mài: Wŏ gāngtsái kànjyan tāmen yĕ jyāu hwànle jyèjr ne.

Lĭ: Hei, Syău Hwáng, byé kèchi. Chr̄ tsài a!

Mài: Búyùng tì tā dānsyīn. Tā tsái búhwèi kèchi ne! Nĭ kàn nèipár tsài dōu jyàu tā chr̄gwāngle.

Lĭ: Syău Hwáng, lái, wŏmen hwáchywán hău buhau?

(Syīnláng gēn syīnnyángdz dàu mĕi yíge ywánjwōr chyánmyàn lái jìngjyŏu.)

Hwáng: Gānbēi! Syīnnyángdz gānbēi!

Syīn: Syèsye. Wŏ búhwèi hē.

Hwáng: Méi gwānsyi. Gān! Gān! Syàndzài yàushr bùtīnghwà, dĕng yìhwĕr nàu dùngfángde shŕhòur, wó kĕ jyòu búkèchile.

CHINESE-MANDARIN III

OBSERVING A WEDDING CEREMONY

A. DIALOGUE

Lǐ Ywán's elder brother gets married. Syǎu Hwáng, Mike, and Wáng Gwāngshēng all are invited to observe the ceremony. After the ceremony, the guests are chatting while waiting for the banquet.

Mike: The bride is very pretty.
Wáng: The bride is a schoolmate of Lǐ Ywán's elder brother. They have been knowing each other for several years.

Hwáng: It's not like before when the parents betrothed their children very early, sometimes even before their births (betrothal by pointing at the abdomen).
Mike: What does this "betrothal by pointing at the abdomen" mean?

Hwáng: It means that when the wives of two good friends are pregnant, even before the births they would say to each other: "If our two children are one boy and one girl we will let them get married in the future."
Mike: Oh? What if both children turn out to be boys?

Hwáng: In that case they would be regarded as brothers.
Mike: This is really a bit... If after marriage they discover that they are incompatible, what would happen then?

Hwáng: What is there to do? They would have to try to accommodate each other, that's all.
Mike: In the past the boy and the girl would not see each other until the day of the wedding, is this true?

Hwáng: Yes. In the past during the wedding ceremony the bride was not to be seen by anyone. She wore a piece of red cloth over her head, until the evening after they entered the bridal chamber and there were just the bride and bridegroom, then the red cloth could be removed by the bridegroom.

Mike: This is really interesting. When the bridegroom was removing that red cloth, he must be very tense. The moment the red cloth was removed she would become his wife. Isn't that convenient?

Hwáng: Convenient? The moment the red cloth was removed and the first glance revealed that she was extremely ugly, that then would be quite inconvenient.

(Mike cannot help starting to laugh. At this moment the ushers ask the guests to take seats. In the main hall there are over twenty round tables. Twelve persons sit at each of the tables.)

Lǐ: Come, let's drink a little first.

(Everybody raises his cup, toasts each other, and starts eating. They eat while keeping up the conversation.)

Mike: Hasn't the wedding ceremony changed quite a bit? Very different from the past?

Lǐ: You are right. Nowadays everybody gets acquainted with the other party first. If they like each other, then they get married. You see the ceremony itself is also different from before.

Mike: I just noticed that they also exchanged rings.

Lǐ: Hey, Syǎu Hwáng, don't stand on ceremony. Help yourself.

Mike: You don't have to worry about him. He's not going to be standing on ceremony. You see, he has eaten up that dish all by himself.

Hwáng: Come, let's play the finger game.

(The bride and bridegroom come to every round table to offer wine to the guests.)

Hwáng: Bottoms up! The bride drink it up.
Bride: Thank you, I cannot drink.

Hwáng: That doesn't matter. Drink it up, drink it up. If you don't listen to us now, a little later when we come to cheer at the bridal chamber I will not be too considerate.

B. 生字

(The underlined characters are required.)

hwūnlǐ	N	婚禮	wedding ceremony
jyǒusyí	N	酒席	banquet
syīnnyángdz	N	新娘子	bride
syìnggé	N	性格	character; temperament
syīnláng	N	新郎	bridegroom
jāudài	N	招待	usher; attendant
jyèjr	N	戒指	ring
dwèifāng	N	對方	the opposite party
dìnghwūn	V	定婚	engage; betrothe
jyéhwūn	V	結婚	marry
fāsyàn	V	發現	discover
méng	V	蒙	cover
jyànmyàn	V	見面	encounter; face one another
nàu dùngfáng	V	鬧洞房	cheer the bridal chamber (a Chinese custom)

rùsyí	VO	入席	be seated at dinner table
bù	N	布	cloth
jìngjyǒu	VO	敬酒	offer wine, toast
hwáchywán	VO	划拳	play finger game (a drinking game)
jyāu péngyou	VO	交朋友	make friends
hébulái	RV	合不來	be incompatible
tīnghwà	Adj, VO	聽話	obey
jyāngjyou	V	將就	tolerate; adapt oneself to the situation
hùsyāng	A	互相	mutually
shènjr̀yú	MA	甚至於	to the extent that...
búkèchi	IE	不客氣	rude
chǒubāgwài	IE	醜八怪	ugly devil
rěnbujù	RV	忍不住	cannot help; cannot bear
gānbēi	IE, VO	乾杯	bottoms up (drain the wine cup)
lou	P	囉	(sentence suffix)

C. 字句用法

1. The uses of bèi 被, ràng 讓, and jyàu 叫

The passive voice can be expressed in Chinese without a special sentence structure (cf. Level I, Units 6, 14 and Level II, Unit 1). Using any one of these three passive agent words usually implies emphasis.

Receiver --- 被 / 讓 / 叫 --- Doer --- Verb --- Complement

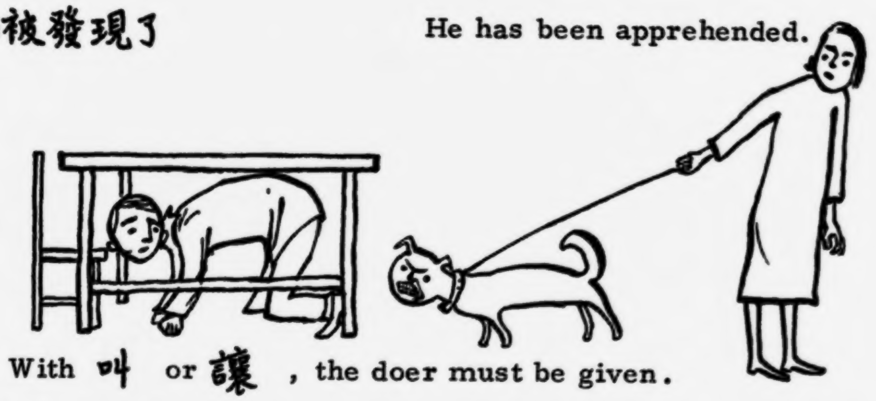
那塊紅布讓新郎拿下來了	The red cloth was removed by the bridegroom.
那盤菜叫小黃吃了	The dish was consumed by Syǎu Hwáng.

紅布 and 菜 are receivers of action; 新郎 and 小黃, doers, 下來 and 了, complements.

There are some distinctions among their functions:

a. 叫 and 讓 are more often used in colloquial speech. 被 is often used in writing and the doer may be understood.

小黃被請去參加婚禮	Syǎu Hwáng is invited to the wedding.
他被發現了	He has been apprehended.



b. With 叫 or 讓, the doer must be given.

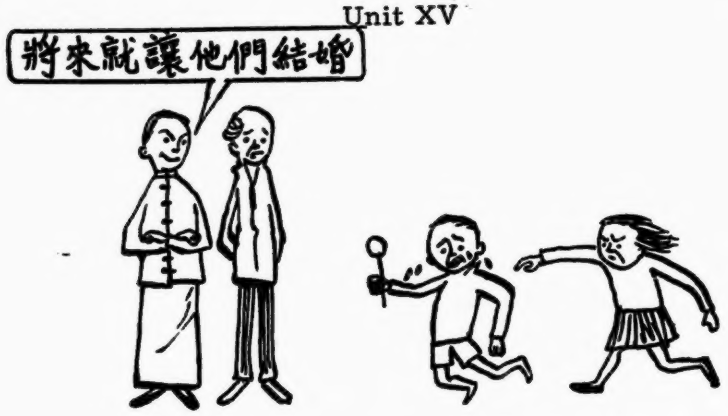
那本書讓他拿走了	The book was removed by him.

c. 人 may stand for an unknown or indefinite doer.

從前新娘子不可以讓人看	Formerly nobody was supposed to see the bride. (could not be seen by anybody)

d. When 叫 and 讓 are not used in the passive form, they mean to let, to call, to ask, etc.

招待們叫客人們入席	The ushers ask the guests to be seated.



D. 對話應用

A. Nǐ jyāu wo hwáchywán hǎu buhau?
B. Hwáchywán jyòu shr̀ lyǎngge rén hùsyāng tsāi dwèifāng shēnchū dwōshau shóujř.

A. Shr̀ bushr yùng lyǎngjr̄ shǒu?
B. Bù. Yíge rén jř néng yùng yìjr̄ shǒu. Swóyi dzwèi dwō jř kéyi shēnchū wǔge shóujř.

A. Nèmma dzěmma tsāi ne?
B. Yàushr nǐ tsāi ni péngyou yàu shēnchu sānge shóujř, nǐ jyòu shēnchu yíge shóujř shwō sz̀ge. Hwòshr shēnchu lyǎngge shóujř shwō wǔge. Hwòshr shēnchu sānge shóujř shwō lyòuge. Nǐde péngyou yě syàng jèiyàng tsāi nǐ yàu shēnchu dwōshau shóujř. Dǔngle mèiyou?

A. Dǔngle.
B. Hǎu. Wǒmen shr̀shr.

A. Lyǎngge...
B. Wǔge...
(simultaneously)

E. ORAL DRILLS

FLUENCY DRILL

Hwūnlǐ
Tsānjyā hwūnlǐ
Chyù tsānjyā hwūnlǐ
Syǎu Hwáng chyù tsānjyā hwūnlǐ
Syǎu Hwáng bèi chǐng chyù tsānjyā hwūnlǐ.

Ná
Násyàlai
Ràng syīnláng násyàlaile
Nèikwài húngbù ràng syīnláng násyàlaile.

Chr̄
Chr̄le
Syǎu Hwáng chr̄le
Jyàu Syǎu Hwáng chr̄le
Nèipár tsài jyàu Syǎu Hwáng chr̄le.

Kàn
Ràng rén kàn
Bùkéyi ràng rén kàn
Syīnnyángdz bùkéyi ràng rén kàn
Tsúngchyàn syīnnyángdz bùkéyi ràng rén kàn.

REPLACEMENT DRILL

Tāmen dōu bèi chǐng chyù tsānjyā hwūnlǐ.
chr̄fàn
Wǒmen
chǐng lái
jyàu lái
bān jwōdz

Ràng syīnláng násyàlai.
chyù jìngjyǒu
syīnnyángdz
Jyàu

Nèikwài húngbù ràng syínláng násyàlaile.
Nèijāng hwàr
jyàu
mǎile

Syīnnyángdz shr̀ bùkéyi ràng rén kànde.
Jèiběn shū
fāsyànde
Tā jùde dìfang
bùrúngyi

Jŕhǎu hùsyāng jyāngjyou yìdyǎr lou.
lyǎngge rén
dājyā
jyāngjyouje chr̄ lou
chwān
jù

Yìjŕ dàu jyèhwūnde nèi tyān tsái jyànmyàn.
chr̄fànde shŕhour
hwéijyā
kànwánle nèiběn shū

Yàushr syàndzài bùtīnghwà děng yìhwěr wǒ jyòu búkèchile.
hwéitou
bùtīng wǒde hwà

RESPONSE DRILL

A. Tāmen dōu dàu nǎr chyùle?
B. Tāmen dōu bèi chǐng chyù tsānjyā hwūnlǐ chyùle.
chr̄fàn
kàn dyànyǐngr

A. Wǒde jyèjr ne?
B. Ràng tā náchyule.
shōuchilaile
dàishangle

A. Syīnnyángdzde tóu shang wèi shémma méngle yíkwài húngbu?
B. Yīnwei syīnnyángdz bùkéyi ràng rén kàn.
syīnnyángdzde lyǎn

A. Yàushr nǐ bùsyǐhwan dzěmma bàn?
B. Jŕhǎu jyāngjyou yìdyǎr lou.
jyāngjyouje chr̄
kàn
jù

F. 練習

1. Complete the following sentences with bèi 被 , ràng 讓 or jyàu 叫 : 用被.讓.叫填空:

a. Tāde jř dōu ________ lín shr̄le.
b. Dzwèi dàde lǐ ________ wǒde syǎu dìdi náchyule.
c. Wǒ māma ________ chǐng chyù tsānjyā hwūnlǐ.
d. Jèisyē háidz yòu shàngle shùle, jēn ________ rén dānsyīn.

e. Tāde yúsǎn bùjr̄dau ________ shéi náchyule.
f. Nèige yúsǎn méiyou ________ Syǎu Hwáng nádzǒu.
g. Syīnnyángdz bùkěyi ________ rén kàn.
h. Tāde péngyou bù ________ tā dzǒu.

2. Change the following sentences into the passive form:
變成被動句法

a. Syǎu Hwáng bǎ tāde lí chr̄le.
b. Péngyou chǐng wo fùchin chyù chr̄fan.
c. Tāmen méiyou nádzóu wǒde shū.
d. Mài-ke bǎ nèige píngdz shwāile.
e. Fēng méiyou gwādǎu nèikē shù.

3. Answer the following questions: 回答問題

a. Jř fù wéi hwūn shr̀ shémma yìsz?
b. Jyéhwūn yǐchyán syīnnyángdz rènshr Lǐ Ywánde dà gē ma?
c. Tsúngchyán syīnnyángdz tóu shangde húng bù děi shémma shŕhour, ràng shéi násyalai?
d. Chr̄ jyǒusyíde shŕhour kèrénmen syān dzwò shémma?
e. Syàndzài Jūnggwo rénde hwūnlǐ gēn tsúngchyánde yíyàng ma? Syīnnyángdzde tóu hái méng shang húng bù ma?

Unit XV

舊式婚禮

（節自今天的臺灣）

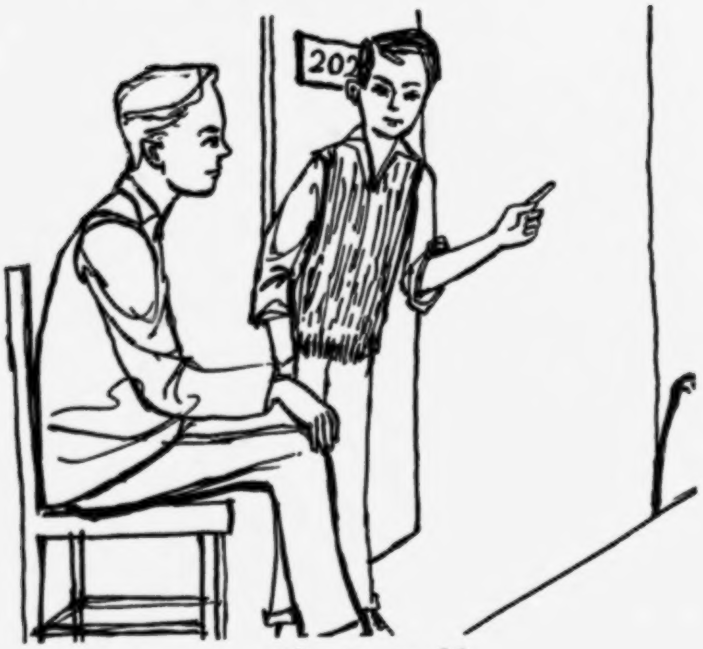
中國①舊式的婚禮是這樣兒的：新郎新娘的②家庭決定一件婚事。由③做媒的人先④分頭的跟兩邊兒的父母談這件婚事。做媒的人老是儘量的拉攏。跟男家說女家的姑娘怎麼好；跟女家說男家的家裏怎麼有錢，男的怎麼⑤有出息。

兩家人⑥同意了以後，就由男家送禮物到女家，算是訂了婚。然後再請⑦算命的先生把新郎跟新娘的⑧八字拿去算一算，看這兩個人的⑨命運合得來合不來。要是算命的先生說沒有問題了，就再請他決定一個好日子。這也是一種⑩宗教性的意思。相信的人怕挑的日子不好，以後新郎跟新娘就會合不來，或是結了婚以後不會有兒女。

到了結婚那一天，男家⑪抬着大紅大綠的⑫花轎跟禮物⑬吹吹打打的到女家去接新娘子。新娘子上了轎把⑭簾子放下來，不讓人看。到了男家，下了轎，在大廳裏頭⑮拜天地，拜父母，然後新娘子回到洞房裏去。等外頭的客人喝完酒吃完飯，才⑯單獨的跟新郎在洞房裏喝一杯酒，算是婚禮的⑰完成。

常常有些請來的客人喜歡鬧洞房，不願意很早回去，一定要新娘子出來見客人。客人還要跟她開玩笑，鬧到很晚還不走。

1.	舊式	jyòushr̀	old-fashioned
2.	家庭	jyātíng	family
3.	做媒	dzwòméi	serve as go-between
4.	分頭	fēntóu	separately
5.	有出息	yǒuchūsyi	potentially successful
6.	同意	túngyì	agree
7.	算命	swànmìng	tell fortune
8.	八字	bādz̀	the eight characters representing the hour, date, month, year, of a person's birth, used in fortune telling
9.	命運	mìngyùn	destiny
10.	宗教性	dzūngjyàusyìng	religious (religion nature)
11.	抬	tái	carry
12.	花轎	hwājyàu	bridal sedan chair
13.	吹々打々	chwēichweidádǎ	with musical accompaniment (blowing and beating)
14.	簾子	lyándz	curtain
15.	拜天地	bàityāndì	salute the spirits of heaven and earth
16.	單獨	dāndú	alone
17.	完成	wánchéng	complete



第十六課

去聽演講

對話

大家正在宿舍裏自習，小黃從外面走了進來。

黃：老師叫我通知你們，明天上午去聽演講。

李：誰演講？

黃：劉亮教授。

麥：噢，我知道了。就是常在報上發表文章的那位劉亮吧？

黃：對了，就是他。我讀過他的短篇小說跟話劇劇本。寫的非常好。

Unit XVI

UNIT XVI

CHYÙ TĪNG YÁNJYǍNG

A. DIALOGUE

Dàjyā jèngdzài sùshèli d̀zsyí. Syǎu Hwáng tsúng wàimyan dzǒule jìnlai.

Hwáng: Lǎushr̄ jyàu wǒ tūngjr̄ nǐmen, míngtyan shàngwu chyù tīng yánjyǎng.

Lǐ: Shéi yánjyǎng?

Hwáng: Lyóu Lyàng Jyàushòu.

Mài: Ou, wǒ jr̄daule. Jyòu shr̀ cháng dzài bàushang fābyǎu wénjāngde nèiwèi Lyóu Lyàng ba?

Hwáng: Dwèile. Jyòu shr̀ tā. Wǒ dúgwò tāde dwǎnpyān syǎushwō gēn hwàjyù jyùběn. Syěde fēicháng hǎu.

麥：那麼他明天要講甚麼呢？

黄：老師說他要講「看過紅樓夢的幾點感想」麥克，你看過紅樓夢沒有？

李：上次我借給你的那本紅樓夢，你看過了沒有？

麥：看過了，寫的真好。我想再看一次。

李：你說有甚麼好？

麥：那本小說裏的人物都是活的。從那本書裏可以看得出中國十八世紀的社會情形。

黄：聽說這位劉教授不但小說寫的好，而且對紅樓夢很有研究。

麥：紅樓夢是一部偉大的作品。明天的演講一定很有意思。

黄：所以老師讓我特別通知你們。

李：在甚麼地方講？

Unit XVI

Mài: Nèmma tā míngtyan yàu jyǎng shémma ne?

Hwáng: Lǎushr̄ shwō tā yàu jyǎng "Kàngwò Húng Lóu Mèngde jǐdyǎn gǎnsyǎng". Mài-ke, nǐ kàngwò Húng Lóu Mèng méiyou?

Lǐ: Shàngtz̀ wǒ jyè géi nǐde nèibĕn Húng Lóu Mèng, nǐ kàngwòle méiyou?

Mài: Kàngwòle. Syěde jēn hǎu. Wǒ syǎng dzài kàn yítsz̀.

Lǐ: Nǐ shwō yǒu shémma hǎu?

Mài: Nèibén syǎushwōlide rénwù dōu shr̀ hwóde. Tsúng nèibén shūli kéyi kàndechū Jūnggwó shŕbā shr̀jìde shèhwèi chíngsyíng.

Hwáng: Tīngshwō jèiwèi Lyǒu Jyàushòu búdàn syǎushwō syěde hǎu, érchyě dwèi Húng Lóu Mèng hén yǒu yánjyou.

Mài: Húng Lóu Mèng shr̀ yíbù wěidàde dzwòpǐn. Míngtyande yánjyǎng yídìng hén yǒu yìsz.

Hwáng: Swóyi lǎushr̄ ràng wo tèbyé tūngjr̄ nǐmen.

Lǐ: Dzài shémma dìfang jyǎng?

黃：在中國大學的大禮堂。

李：我還沒去過中國大學的大禮堂呢。

黃：沒關係，我去過。我知道在那兒，
明天我們早一點起來。演講
上午八點鐘開始，我們七點鐘
就得離開宿舍。

麦：李元，今天下午老師發的講義你
看完了嗎？

李：看完了。

麦：借給我看一看好不好？我把講義
放在教室了，忘了拿回來了。

李：好。

Unit XVI

Hwáng: Dzài Jūnggwó Dàsywéde dàlĭtáng.

Lĭ: Wŏ hái méichyùgwò Jūnggwó Dàsywéde dàlĭtáng ne.

Hwáng: Méi gwānsyi. Wŏ chyùgwò. Wŏ jr̄dàu dzài năr. Míngtyan wŏmen dzău yìdyár chĭlai. Yánjyăng shàngwŭ bādyăn jūng kāishř. Wŏmen chīdyăn jūng jyòu dĕi lĭkai sùshè.

Mài: Lĭ Ywán, jīntyan syàwu lăushr̄ fāde jyăngyì nĭ kàn wánle ma?

Lĭ: Kàn wánle.

Mài: Jyè géi wo kànyikàn hău buhau? Wŏ bá jyăngyì fàng dzài jyàushr̀le. Wàngle náhwéiláile.

Lĭ: Hău.

CHINESE-MANDARIN III

GOING TO A LECTURE

A. DIALOGUE

Everybody is studying in the dormitory. Syǎu Hwáng comes in from outside.

Hwáng: The teacher asked me to tell you to go to a lecture tomorrow morning.

Lǐ: Who is lecturing?

Hwáng: Professor Lyóu Lyàng.

Mike: Oh, I know. Isn't he the Lyóu Lyàng who often writes for the newspapers?

Hwáng: Yes. That's him. I have read his short stories and plays. They are very well written.

Mike: What's he going to lecture on tomorrow?

Hwáng: The teacher said he would lecture on "Several Thoughts after Reading Dream of the Red Chamber." Mike, have you read Dream of the Red Chamber?

Lǐ: Have you read the Dream of the Red Chamber which I loaned you last time.

Mike: I've read it. It's very well written. I want to read it once more.

Lǐ: What's good about it?

Mike: The characters in that novel are all alive. From that book one can learn about the social conditions of eighteenth century China.

Hwáng: People say that this Professor Lyóu not only writes novels very well, but is very well versed on Dream of the Red Chamber.

Mike: Dream of the Red Chamber is a great literary work. The lecture tomorrow is definitely going to be very interesting.

Hwáng: That's why the teacher especially wants me to let you know.

Lǐ: Where is the lecture going to take place?
Hwáng: In the auditorium of the Chinese University.

Lǐ: I have never been to the auditorium of the Chinese University.
Hwáng: That's all right, I have been there. I know where it is. Let's get up a little earlier tomorrow. The lecture begins at 8:00 in the morning. We must leave the dormitory at 7:00 o'clock.

Mike: Lǐ Ywán, have you finished reading the lecture notes distributed by the teacher this afternoon?
Lǐ: I'm through with them.

Mike: Can you loan them to me to look at? I left mine in the classroom and forgot to bring them back.
Lǐ: Fine.

B. 生字

(The underlined characters are required.)

wénjang	N	文章	writing
dzwòpǐn	N	作品	work (created work, writing, sculpture, etc.)
dwǎnpyān syǎushwō	N	短篇小說	short story
gánsyǎng	N	感想	thought; reflection
Húng Lóu Mèng	N	紅樓夢	Dream of the Red Chamber
Gwāng Hwá R̀ Bàu	N	光華日報	Gwāng Hwa Daily News
chǐngsying	N	情形	condition; situation
shr̀jī	N	世紀	century

jyǎngyì	N	講義	lecture notes; syllabus
dàlǐtáng	N	大禮堂	auditorium
tǐyù	N	體育	physical education
bǎn	N	版	section (of newspaper)
dú	V	讀	read
dzìsyí	V	自習	self-study
fā	V	發	issue; distribute
yánjyǎng	V	演講	lecture
dìng	V	訂	subscribe
fābyǎu	V	發表	publish
hwóde	Adj	活的	living
gwójì	Adj	國際	international
wěidà	Adj	偉大	great
yoǔ yánjyou	Adj	有研究	well-versed; having studied
jyā	M	家	for newspaper institution, business concern, etc.

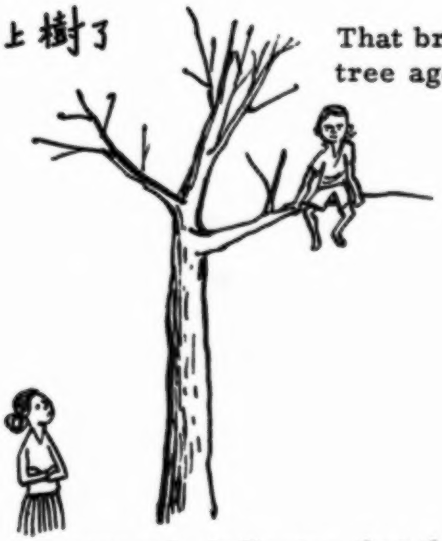
C. 字句用法

1. The uses of yòu 又, dzài 再 and hái 還

又 and 再 both indicate repetition of action, but shows that the repetition has already taken place.

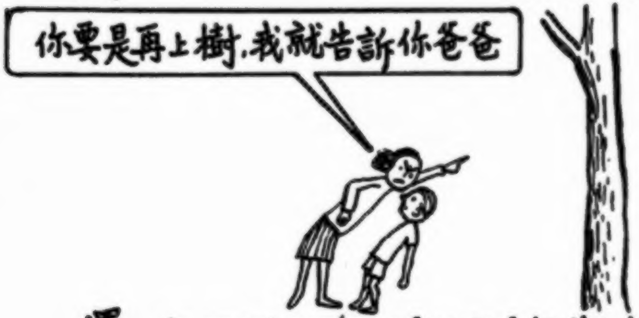
我又看了一次紅樓夢	I have read Dream of the Red Chamber once again.

這孩子又上樹了 That brat! He got on the tree again.



再 , in general, indicates that the repetition is yet to occur.

紅樓夢寫得真好.我想再看一次 Dream of the Red Chamber is really well written, I want to read it once more.


你要是再上樹.我就告訴你爸爸

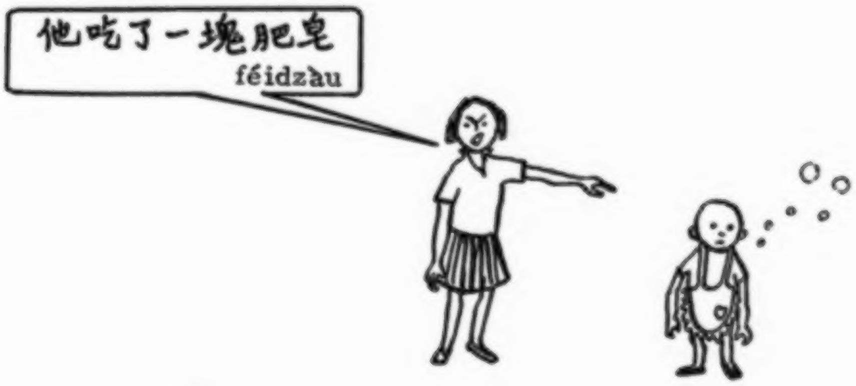
還 is most commonly used in the interrogative sense.

我今天來了.明天還來嗎? I have come today, am I to come again tomorrow?

2. Gwò 過 and le 了

Generally they indicate completed action.

我把講義放在教室裡了 I left the lecture notes in the classroom.



過 indicates experience

我讀過他的短篇小說	I have read his short stories.
你開過飛機沒有？	Have you ever flown a plane before?

But both can be used together.

紅樓夢你看過了沒有？	Have you read (through) Dream of the Red Chamber before?
你吃過了早飯了沒有？	Have you had your breakfast?

The difference becomes quite clear in the following:

他到那個學校的大禮堂去了	He has gone to the auditorium of that school.
他到那個學校的大禮堂去過	He has been to the auditorium of that school before.

3. The use of chyù as a verb alone

The dàu - PW - chyu construction often can be replaced by chyù - PW:

我到中國去	我去中國
你到美國去過嗎？	你去過美國嗎？

D. 對話應用

A. Nǐmen jyāli dìngle bàu méiyou?
B. Dìngle.

A. Shémma bàu?
B. Wǒmen dìngde shr̀ Gwāng Hwá R̀ Bàu. Nǐ ne?

A. Wó syǎng hwàn yìjyā kànkan, kěshr wǒ bujr̄dau něi yijyāde hǎu.
B. Gwāng Hwá R̀ Bàude tǐyùbán hén hǎu. Wényìbán yě bútswò.

A. Wó syǐhwan kàn wényìbǎn gēn shèhwèi syīnwén.
B. Gwāng Hwá R Bàude shèhwèi syīnwén gēn gwójì syīnwén yě dōu hén hǎu.

A. Nèmma wǒ jyòu dìng Gwāng Hwá R̀ Bàu ba.

E. ORAL DRILLS

FLUENCY DRILL

Húng Lóu Mèng
Kànle yítsz̀ Húng Lóu Mèng
Wǒ yòu kànle yítsz̀ Húng Lóu Mèng
Wǒ chyùnyan yòu kànle yítsz̀ Húng Lóu Mèng.

Syǎushwō
Nèibén syǎushwō
Kàn nèibén syǎushwō
Wó syǎng kàn nèibén syǎushwō
Wó syǎng dzài kàn yítsz̀ nèibén syǎushwō.

Shù
Shàngshù
Nǐ yàushr dzài shàngshù wǒ jyòu gàusu nǐ bàba.

Jèiběn shū
Jèiběn shū nǐ kànle
Jèiběn shū nǐ kànle, nǐ hái syǎng kàn ma?

Láile
Jīntyan láile
Wǒ jīntyan láile
Wǒ jīntyan láile, míngtyan hái děi lái ma?

Jyàushr̀
Fàng dzài jyàushr̀li
Bá jyǎngyì fàng dzài jyàushr̀li
Wó bá jyǎngyì fàng dzài jyàushr̀lile.

Fēijī
Kāi fēijī
Tā kāi fāijī
Tā kāigwo fēijī
Tā kāigwo fēijī méiyou?

Fābyǎu
Fābyǎude wénjāng
Tā dzwótyan fābyǎude nèipyān wénjāng
Tā dzwótyan fābyǎude nèipyān wénjāng wǒ kàngwole.

Dàlǐtáng
Sywésyàude dàlǐtáng
Dàu sywésyàude dàlǐtáng chyùle.

Dàlǐtáng
Sywésyàude dàlǐtáng
Nèige sywésyàude dàlǐtáng
Tā dàu nèige sywésyàude dàlǐtáng chyùgwo.

REPLACEMENT DRILL

Wǒ chyùnyan yòu kànle yǐtsz̀ Húng Lóu Mèng.
nèibén syǎushwō
shàngge ywè

Wó syǎng dzài kàn yǐtsz̀ nèipyān wénjāng.
yàu
dyànyǐngr
dǎswàn

Tā míngtyān hái lái ma?
chyù
syàge syīngchī
chyù tīng yánjyǎng
syàge ywè

Wó bá jyǎngyì fàng dzài jyàushr̀lile.
syǎushwō
dàlǐtánglile
shǒutàur
wàng

Wǒ dzwótyan dàu tāde jyā chyùgwo, wǒ jr̄dau dzài nǎr.
dzěmma chyù

Wǒ chyùgwo Shànghǎi
Wǒ dzài Shànghǎi jùgwo

Nǐ sùng gěi wode nèijyàn yīshang wǒ yǐjing chwāngwole.
nèige màudz dài
Nǐ tì wo mǎide

RESPONSE DRILL

A. Nǐ búshr̀ kàngwo nèibén syǎushwōle ma? Wèi shémma hái yàu ne?
B. Jèibén syǎushwō hén hǎu, wǒ syǎng dzài kàn yítsz̀.
dzài mǎi yìběn
ràng tā kàn yítsz̀
dúyidú

A. Jùdzài nǐmen jyāde nèige syǎu háidz dàu nǎr chyùle?
B. Tā dzǒule.
hwéijyā
hwéichyu
líkai wǒmen jèr
dàu ta bàba nèr chyu

A. Nǐ chr̄gwo tā dzwòde fàn ma?
B. Wǒ chr̄gwo tā dzwòde fàn.
méichr̄gwo
hái méichr̄gwo ne

A. Nǐ chyùgwo Jūnggwo méiyou?
B. Wǒ chyùgwo Jūnggwo.
dàu Jūnggwo chyùgwo
chyùgwo lyǎngtsz̀
dzài Jūnggwo jùgwo
dzài Jūnggwo jùgwo lyǎngnyán
méichyùgwo

A. Chíng nǐ dzài wǒmen jèr chr̄fàn hǎu buhau?
B. Syèsye. Wǒ yǐjing chr̄le.
yǐjing chr̄gwole
yǐjing chr̄gwo wǎnfànle
wǔfàn
dzǎufàn

F. 練習

1. State in Chinese: 用中國話說

   a. The food in that restaurant is too expensive. I don't want to eat there again.
   b. Please come again.
   c. What? He got married again!
   d. We came here again last month.
   e. Are you mad at him again? (生他的氣)

2. Complete the following sentences with gwò or le:
   用"過"或"了"填空

   a. Wǒ dàu nèige fàngwǎn chyu ________. Wo jr̄dau dzěmma chyu.
   b. Tāde fùchin búdzài jyā, dàu sywésyàu chyù ________.
   c. Nǐ dàu R̀běn chyu ________ méiyou?
   d. Ní yǐjīng chr̄ ________ fàn ________, dzěmma hái chr̄?
   e. Nǐ kàn ________ nèibén syǎushwō méiyou?

3. Answer the following questions: 回答問題

   a. Lyóu Jyàushòu jyǎng shémma?
   b. Syǎu Hwáng dúgwo Lyóu Jyàushòu syěde wénjang ma? Dōu shr̀ shémma?
   c. Lyóu Jyàushòu dwèi shémma shū hén yǒu yánjyou?
   d. Lyóu Jyàushòu yàu dzài shémma dìfang yánjyǎng? Shémma shŕhou kāishř?
   e. Mài-ke bǎ shémma fàngdzài jyàushr̀lile?

Unit XVI

中國的小說

（節自今天的台灣）

中國的小說開始得晚。古代有①簡單的故事，歷史的②傳說，或是民間的傳說。③民間的傳說沒有人寫。只有漢④朝的⑤歷史家司馬遷寫了一百多個人的故事叫做“列⑥傳”，有很大的歷史⑦價值，也有很大的文學價值。因為他把那些歷史上的人物寫得很生動。

民間的故事都是由說故事的人嘴裏傳下來的。說故事的人有的時候也需要把故事的⑧大綱寫下來。這些寫下來的故事的大綱就是中國短篇小說的開始。到了唐朝就已經有好些這樣的故事書了。可惜留下來的不很多，現在只能找到一些最⑨有名的。

佛經在⑩公元開始的時候傳到中國，傳佛教的人要讓中國的鄉下人也懂一點兒佛經⑪的道理，就把裏頭的故事先⑫翻譯出來，講給不會看佛經的人聽。這些故事後來也成了中國古代故事的一部份。

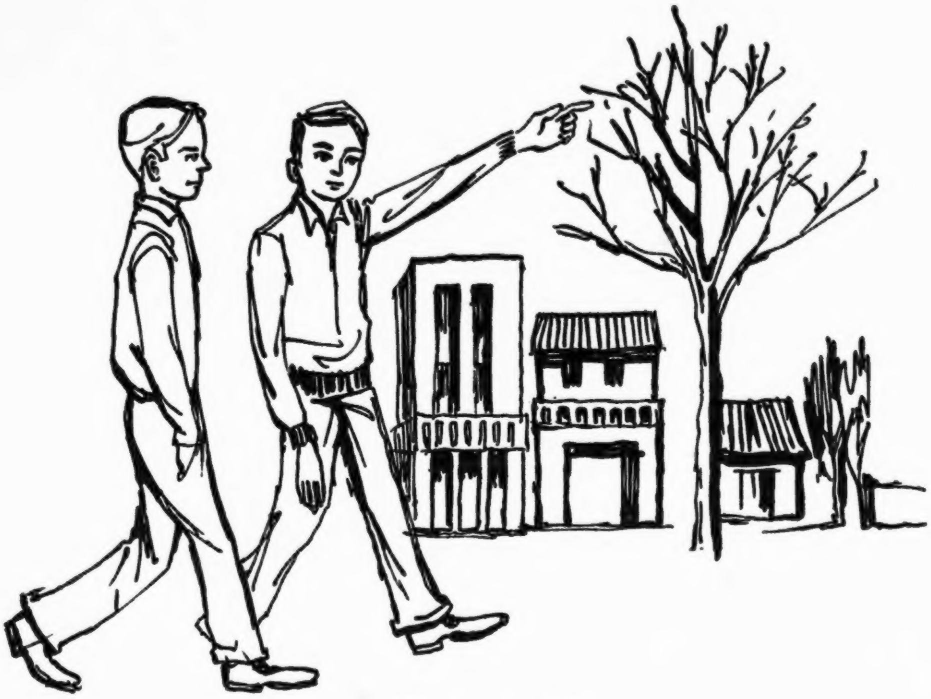
唐朝宋朝人寫的小說就是這些短篇的故事。故事說的多半兒是一些⑬神怪的傳說• 跟一些很不平常的人做的事。第三世紀的三國時代傳下來很多故事。到了明朝開始的時候，有人把三國的故事放在一塊兒寫了中國的第一部長篇小說三國演義。以後有名的長篇小說還有水滸傳，是說一些⑭土匪的故事。這些土匪都是很有⑮本事的人，也很有⑯義氣。西遊記說的是一個⑰猴子幫助唐朝的⑱和尚到印度去找佛經的故事。

十七世紀跟十九世紀中間，中國的小說包括了很⑲真實的生活故事，像紅樓夢、儒林外史、老殘遊記、浮生六記等。

二十世紀新文學開始。寫出來很多用社會做⑳中心的小說。這些小說已經受了不少西方小說的影響了。

1.	簡 單	jyǎndān	simple
2.	傳 說	chwánshwō	legend
3.	民 間	mínjyān	among the people (cf. Level III, Unit 12, Reading Material)
4.	朝	cháu	dynasty (漢朝, 唐朝, 明朝等)
5.	歷 史 家	lìshřjyā	historian (科學家, 文學家, 藝術家)
6.	傳	jwàn	biography
7.	價 值	jyàjŕ	value
8.	大 綱	dàgāng	outline
9.	有 名	yǒumíng	famous
10.	公 元	gūngywán	the Christian era
11.	道 理	dàulǐ	reason
12.	翻 譯	fānyì	translate
13.	神 怪	shéngwài	ghosts and spirits
14.	土 匪	túfěi	bandit
15.	本 事	běnshr	ability
16.	義 氣	yìchì	upright
17.	猴 子	hóudz (hóur)	monkey (cf. III, 13)

18.	和尚	héshang	monk
19.	真實	jēnshŕ	true
20.	中心	jūngsyīn	center



第十七課

八月節

對話

小黃跟麥克下了公共汽車，順着路
走回宿舍。

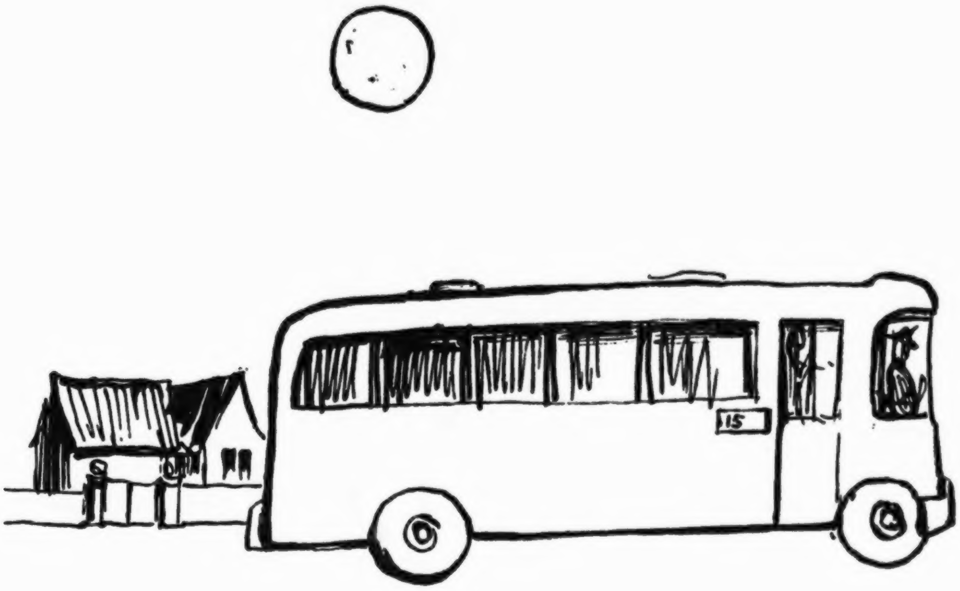
黃：時間過的真快！下星期一又是
　　八月節了。

麥：真的嗎？怪不得這兩天月亮這麼
　　圓呢！

黃：下星期一你打算到那兒去玩兒嗎？

麥：希望八月節那天跟誰出去玩兒玩兒，
　　看看月亮。

Unit XVII



UNIT XVII

BĀYWÈJYÉ

A. DIALOGUE

Syǎu Hwáng gēn Mài-ke syàle gūnggùng chìchē, chwùnje lù dzǒuhwéi sùshè.

Hwáng: Shŕjyān gwòde jēn kwài! Syà syīngchīyī yòu shr̀ Bāywèjyéle.

Mài: Jēnde ma? Gwàibudé jèilyǎng tyān ywèlyang jèmma ywán ne!

Hwáng: Syà syīngchīyī, nǐ dǎswàn dàu nǎr chyù wár ma?

Mài: Syīwàng Bāywèjyé nèityān gēn shéi chūchyù wárwar, kànkan ywèlyang.

黃：那麼你到我們家來過節好不好？

麥：好吧，先謝了。

黃：八月節也叫中秋節，是中國陰曆八月十五，就是陽曆十月左右。

麥：八月節最早的來歷是甚麼呢？

黃：最早是農人慶祝豐收的節日。

麥：為甚麼吃月餅？看月亮？

黃：據說一年裏頭八月十五的月亮最圓，中國人的家庭觀念很深……

麥：所以就用月餅跟月亮象徵團圓是不是？

黃：對了，到了那一天，家裏甚麼人都得回家。

麥：要是外面做事很忙呢？

黃：怎麼忙也得趕回來，除非離家太遠。否則不論是誰，在那兒，怎麼樣都得想辦法趕回來過節。

麥：這種風俗真有人情味兒，在美國過聖誕節也有一點兒這個意思。

Unit XVII

Hwáng: Nèmma nĭ dàu wŏmen jyā lái gwòjyé hău buhau?

Mài: Hău ba. Syān syèle.

Hwáng: Bāywèjyé yĕ jyàu Jūngchyōujyé, shr̀ Jūnggwó yīnlì bāywè shŕwŭ, jyòu shr̀ yánglì shŕywè dzwŏyòu.

Mài: Bāywèjyé dzwèi dzăude láilì shr̀ shémma ne?

Hwáng: Dzwèi dzău shr̀ núngrén chìngjù fēngshōude jyēr.

Mài: Wèi shémma chr̄ ywèbĭng, kàn ywèlyang?

Hwáng: Jyùshwō yīnyán lĭtou bāywè shŕwŭde ywèlyang dzwèi ywán. Jūnggwó rénde jyātíng gwānnyàn hĕn shēn...

Mài: Swóyi jyòu yùng ywèbĭng gēn ywèlyang syàngjēng twánywán shr̀ bushr?

Hwáng: Dwèile. Dàule nèi yìtyān, jyāli shémma rén dōu dĕi hwéi jyā.

Mài: Yàushr wàimyàn dzwòshr̀ hĕn máng ne?

Hwáng: Dzĕmma máng yé déi găn hwéi lai. Chúfēi lí jyā tài ywăn. Fŏudzé búlwùn shr̀ shéi, dzài năr, dzĕmma yàng dōu déi syăng bànfa găn hwéilai gwòjyé.

Mài: Jèijŭng fēngsú jēn yŏu rénchìngwèr. Dzài Mĕigwó gwò Shèngdànjyé yé yŏu yìdyăr jèige yìsz.

CHINESE-MANDARIN III

THE MID-AUTUMN FESTIVAL

A. DIALOGUE

Syǎu Hwáng and Mike get off the bus and walk along the road to the dormitory.

Hwáng: Time really passes very fast. Next Monday will be the Festival of the Eighth Month.

Mike: Really? No wonder this couple of days the moon has been so full.

Hwáng: Where do you plan to go next Monday?

Mike: I hope to go out somewhere with somebody on the Festival of the Eighth Month to look at the moon.

Hwáng: Won't you come to our house to spend the festival day?

Mike: Fine. Thank you in advance.

Hwáng: The Festival of the Eighth Month is also called the Mid-Autumn Festival. It is the fifteenth day of the eighth month according to the Chinese lunar calendar. It's about in October of the Western calendar.

Mike: What's the early history of the Festival of the Eighth Month?

Hwáng: At first it was a festive day for the farmers to celebrate their harvest.

Mike: Why do they eat moon cakes and watch the moon?

Hwáng: It is said that during the year the moon is the fullest on the fifteenth day of the eighth month. The Chinese have a strong family sense...

Mike: Therefore, the mooncake and the full moon symbolize family reunion. Is that right?

Hwáng: Yes. On that day all the members of the family must go home.

Mike: If one is very busy working away from home, what about him?

Hwáng: No matter how busy he is, he must rush home, unless he is located too far away from home. Otherwise, regardless of who he is, where he is, and how, he must try to rush home to spend the festival.

Mike: This custom is really very human. In America, the way people spend their Christmas also involves something like this idea.

B. 生字

(The underlined characters are required.)

Bāywèjyé	N	八月節	The Festival of the Eighth Month (Mid-Autumn Festival)
Dwānwǔjyé	N	端午節	Festival of the Fifth Day of the Fifth Month
ywèbǐng	N	月餅	mooncake
fēngshōu	N	豐收	good harvest
jyér̀	N	節日	festive day; festival
jyātíng	N	家庭	family
gwānnyàn	N	觀念	concept; idea
twánywán	N, V	團圓	family reunion
yīnlì	N	陰曆	Chinese lunar calendar
yánglì	N	陽曆	the solar calendar
fēngsu	N	風俗	custom
láilì	N	來歷	origin; history
shr̄rén	N	詩人	poet
gwòjyé	VO	過節	pass the festive day

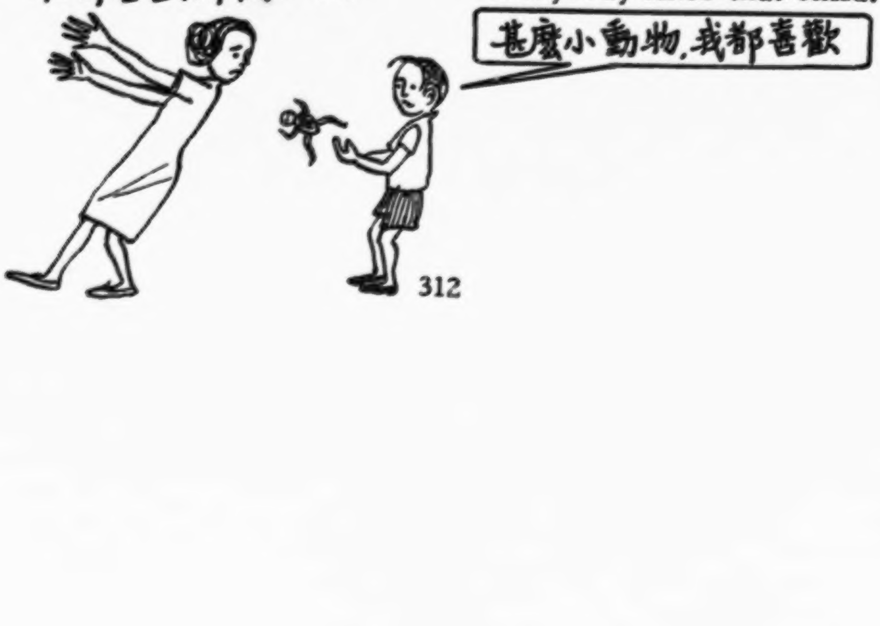
syàngjēng	V	象徵	symbolize
chìngjù	V	慶祝	celebrate
jìnyàn	V	記念	commemorate
syāngdāngyú	Adj	相當於	equal to; corresponding to
àigwó	Adj	愛國	patriotic
fǒudzé	MA	否則	otherwise
chúfēi	MA	除非	unless
jyùshwō	MA	據說	it is said that; reportedly
rénchíngwèr	IE	人情味兒	with human feeling

C. 字句用法

1. Some extended uses of question words

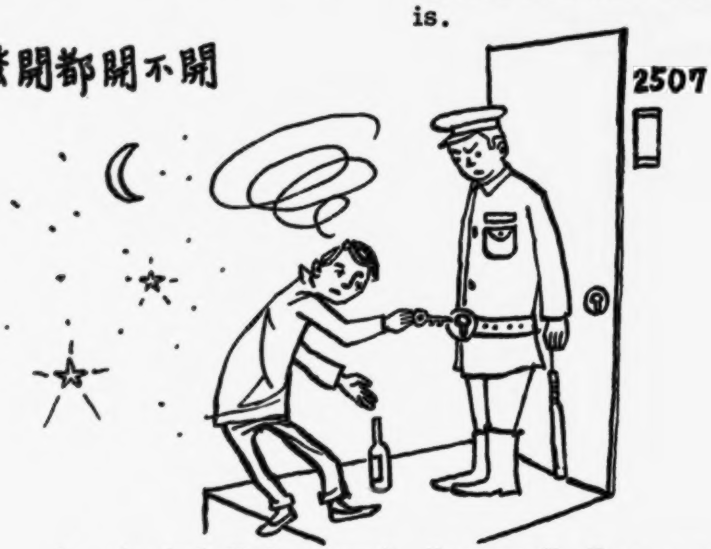
a. Plus 都 or 也 , expresses the all-inclusive "anyone", "everybody", "regardless of which one", etc.

不論是誰都得趕回來過節	Everybody, regardless of who he is, must rush home for the festival.
八月節的時候,家裡甚麼人都得回家過節	On the Festival of the Eighth Month, everyone of the family must ~~go h~~ome to observe the occasion.
誰都喜歡那個小孩	Everybody likes that child.



怎麼想也想不起來他的名字	No matter how (I) try, I still cannot recall his name.
天氣怎麼冷他都出去打球	He goes out to play ball no matter how cold the weather is.

怎麼開都開不開



b. As indefinite "any", "anyone", "some one", etc.

我希望誰能跟我出去散散步	I hope that someone can go for a walk with me.
我打算到那兒去玩兒一玩兒	I plan to go somewhere to enjoy myself for a while.

c. Reduplicated and plus 就 to express, "whoever", "whichever", etc.

誰中文好.誰就到中國去	Whoever knows Chinese well will go to China.
那個棹子大.就用那個棹子	Whichever table is big, use it.

D. 對話應用

A. Chúle Bāywèjyé yǐwài, dzài Jūnggwo hái yǒu shémma jǔyàude jyér̀?
B. Háiyou Wǔywèjyé. Shr̀ Jūnggwo yīnlì wǔywède dì wǔtyān. Wǔywèjyé yě jyàu Dwānwǔjyé.

A. Wèi shémma jyàu Dwānwǔjyé ne?
B. Dwānwǔde "dwān" dz̀ shr̀ jèngde yìsz. Jyùshwō měinyán jŕyǒu yíge jūngwǔ, tàiyang shr̀ dzwèi jèngde. Nèi jyòu shr̀ yínlìde wuywè wǔr̀.

A. Hén yǒu yìsz. Nèmma Dwānwǔjyéde láilì shr̀ shémma ne?
B. Yǒu rén shwō, shr̀ jìnyàn lyǎngchyān sānbǎi nyán chyánde yíwèi àigwó shr̄rén.

A. Dwèile. Wó syǎngchilaile. Nèi wèi shr̄rén shr̀ bushr jyàu Chyū Ywán?
B. Yìdyár yě bútswò.

E. ORAL DRILLS

FLUENCY DRILL

Shémma
Shémma rén
Shémma rén hwéijyā
Shémma rén hwéijyā gwòjyé
Shémma rén děi hwéijyā gwòjyé
Shémma rén dōu děi hwéijyā gwòjyé.

Shéi
Shéi syǐhwan
Shéi syǐhwan nèige syǎu háidz
Shéi dōu syǐhwan nèige syǎu háidz
Shéi dōu bùsyǐhwan nèige syǎu háidz.

Dyànyǐngr
Shémma dyànyǐngr
Shémma dyànyǐngr, wǒ dōu syǐhwan
Shémma dyànyǐngr, wǒ dōu bùsyǐhwan.

Tyānchi
Tyānchi lěng
Tyānchi lěng, tā chūchyu dǎchyóu
Tyānchi dzěmma lěng, tā dōu chūchyu dǎchyóu.

Syăng
Dzĕmma syăng
Dzĕmma syăng yé syăngbuchilai
Wó dzĕmma syăng yé syăngbuchilai tāde míngdz.

Shéi
Shéi néng gēn wo chūchyu
Shéi néng gēn wo chūchyu sànsanbù
Wó syĭwang shéi néng gēn wo chūchyu sànsanbù.

Năr
Dàu năr chyù
Dàu năr chyù wárwar
Wó dăswàn dàu năr chyù wárwar.

Shéi
Shéi syĭhwan
Shéi syĭhwan jèilyàng dz̀syíngchē
Shéi syĭhwan jèilyàng dz̀syíngchē shéi jyòu măi.

Néibén syăushwō
Néibén syăushwō yŏu yìsz
Néibén syăushwō yŏu yìsz jyòu kàn néibĕn.

REPLACEMENT DRILL

Shéi dōu dĕi hwéilai gwòjyé.
Búlwùn shr̀ shéi
dzài năr
dzĕmma yàng

Shéi dōu syĭhwan chr̄ ywèbĭng.
Shémma rén
chyán
Búlwùn shémma rén
nèibén syăushwō
kàngwo

Tyānchi dzĕmma lĕng dōu chūchyu wár.
dwóma lĕng
sànbù
búlwùn dzĕmma lĕng
hwéijyā gwò Bāywèjyé

Wó dzĕmma kàn dōu kànbūdŭng.
shwō tā dōu bùtŭng
dōu syíng

Wŏ syīwang shéi néng gēn wo chūchyu sànsanbù.
kànkan ywèlyang
shéi jyè géi wo wŭkwài chyán

Wó dăswan dàu năr chyù wárwar.
syăng
shémma dìfang
syĭhwan

Shéi ywànyi lái shéi lái.
búywànyi

Nĕige hău mái nĕige.
pyányi
Shémma
jŕde
fāngbyan

RESPONSE DRILL

A. Dzĕmma jèi lyàngtyan ywèlyang jèmma ywán ne?
B. Syà syīngchīyī jyòu shr̀ Bāywèijyéle.
Jūngchyōujyé
yīnlì Bāywè shŕwŭ
shŕwŭ

A. Yàushr dzài wàimyàn dzwòshr̀ hĕn máng, yé déi găn hwéilai gwòjyé ma?
B. Dzĕmmayàng yé déi găn hwéilai gwòjyé.
Shéi
Dzài năr

A. Dōu shr̀ shémma rén syĭhwan chr̄ ywèbing?
B. Shémma rén dōu syĭhwan chr̄ ywèbĭng.
Shéi
Nĕige rén
Búlwùn nĕige rén

A. Jèibĕn shū rúngyi dǔng ma?
B. Dzĕmma kàn dōu kànbudung.
Búlwùn dzĕmma kàn

A. Nǐ syǐhwan shémma?
B. Wǒ swéibyàn shémma dōu syǐng.
dzĕmmayàng
shémma dūngsyi

A. Nǐ dǎswan jèige jōumwò dzwò shémma?
B. Wó dǎswan dàu shémma dìfang chyù wárwar.
gēn shéi
jǎu shéi

A. Nǐ dǎswan bǎ jèige dūngsyi sùng gei shéi?
B. Shéi yǒu chyán jyòu sùng gěi shéi.
Shéi Jūnggwo hwà shwōde hǎu
Shéi syǐhwan wo
Wó syǐhwan shéi

F. 練習

1. Complete the following sentences with question words:

填空白

a. Jèige jōumwò wó dǎswàn dàu ________ chyù wárwar.
b. Jèige shān tai gāule ________ *dōu pábushàngchù.*
c. ________ syǐhwan jeijāng hwàr ________ jyòu bǎ jèijāng hwàr náchyu.
d. ________ syǐhwan jèijāng hwàr, wo jyòu bǎ jèijāng hwàr sùnggei ________.
e. ________ jwōdz dōu kěyi.
f. Wǒ ________ syǎng dou syǎngbuchilai tāde míngdz.
g. ________ pyányi, wǒ jyòu mǎi ________.
h. Tā ________ dìfang jǎngde dōu bùhǎukàn jyòu shr yǎnjing hǎukàn.
i. Wo syīwang ________ néng jyè gěi wo shŕkwài chyán.
j. Tāde chyán ________ dwō wó yě bùsyǐhwan ta.

2. Answer the following questions: 回答問題

   a. Jūnggwode Bāywèjyé yòu jyàu shémma? Shr̀ yǐnyánde něi yǐtyān?
   b. Bāywèjyé dzwèi dzǎude láilǐ shr̀ shémma?
   c. Jūnggwo rén dzěmma gwò Bāywèjyé?
   d. Jūnggwo rén dzài Bāywèjyé chr̄ ywèbǐng, kàn ywèlyang shr̀ syàngjēng shémma?
   e. Mài-ke dǎswàn dzài Bāywèjyé nèityān dzwò shémma?

Unit XVII

民間宗教習慣

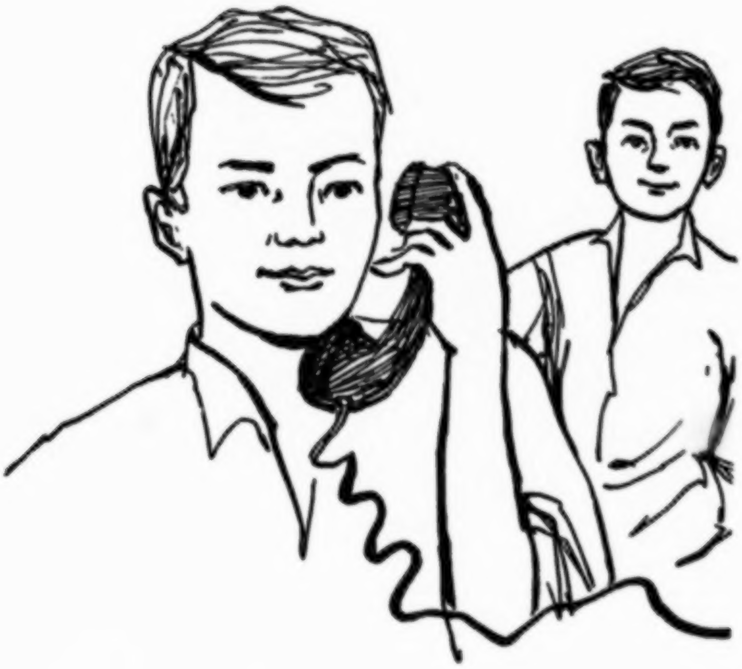
（節自今天的臺灣）

很多對於宗教比較①認真的人，每月的②初一跟十五都在家裏的③神像前邊④燒香。每一家人都有他們自己⑤祭祖先的日子。這多半是某一個祖先的生日或是死的日子。在那一天這一家人一定預備很多酒菜，買一些⑥紙錢。有的用黃色跟銀色的紙做成從前用的⑦金錠，⑧銀錠；有些就用紙做的⑨假鈔票，一塊兒拿到神像前邊⑩燒。把酒菜放在神像前邊，然後祭祖先的人就⑪叩頭，⑫行禮。等一會兒紙錢燒完了，全家就坐下來大吃一頓。

很多人相信中國⑬傳統的傳說。⑭宇宙可以分作三界；天上是一界，有⑮德行的人死了以後，就上天。按照⑯佛教的說法，天上這一界就是西方⑰極樂世界了。人生活的世界又是一界，叫做陽間。人死了以後，普通都到陰間。陰間是第三界。很多人相信祖先的⑱靈魂，要不是上天⑲成佛，就是留在陰間。在陰間的靈魂也好像在陽間一樣，有種種不同的需要。吃、住各種生活的需要都跟陽間的人差不多。要是在陽間的人不常常燒紙錢，送東西給陰間的祖先，那麼在陰間的祖先的生活就不好過了。有時候還可能聽見人說，他們夢見他們的祖先從陰間回來向他們⑳訴苦，希望他們多燒些紙錢去。

1.	認真	rènjēn	serious
2.	初一	chūyī	first day of month
3.	神像	shénsyàng	sacred image or statue
4.	燒香	shāusyāng	burn incense
5.	祭祖先	jìdzǔsyān	worship ancestors
6.	紙錢	jřchyán	paper money (to be burned for the dead)
7.	金錠	jīndìng	gold ingot
8.	銀錠	yíndìng	silver ingot
9.	假鈔票	jyǎchāupyàu	mock banknotes (cf. Level III, Unit 5, reading material and Level III, Unit 12)
10.	燒	shāu	burn
11.	叩頭	kòutóu	kowtow
12.	行禮	syínglǐ	salute
13.	傳統	chwántǔng	tradition
14.	宇宙	yǔjòu	universe
15.	德行	désyíng	virtuous conduct
16.	佛教	Fwójyàu	Buddhism
17.	極樂世界	jílèshr̀jyè	land of extreme happiness

18.	靈魂	línghwún	soul
19.	成佛	chéngfwó	attain Buddhahood
20.	訴苦	sùkǔ	complain



第十八課

56412？56421？

對　　話

小黃想打電話約一位他喜歡的女同學出去玩兒，可是他怎麼也找不着記電話號碼的小册子了。

李： 別着急，慢慢兒找，一定找得着。

黃： 真是怪事！明明記得上次放在這個棹子的抽屜裏了。

李： 我看，還是查查電話本子吧。

黃： 可是電話本子裏登記的不是他的名字。

李： 沒關係，我替你查，你那個同學姓

Unit XVIII

UNIT XVIII

56412? 56421?

A. DIALOGUE

Syău Hwáng syáng dă dyànhwà ywē yĭwèi tā syĭhwande nyŭ túngsywé chūchyu wár. Kĕshr̀ tā dzĕmma yĕ jăubujáu jĭ dyànhwà hàumărde syău tsèdzle.

LI: Byé jáují. Mànmār jău. Yídìng jăudejáu.

Hwáng: Jēn shr̀ gwàishr̀. Míngmíng jìde shàngtsz̀ fàngdzài jèige jwōdzde chōutilĭle.

LI: Wŏ kàn, háishr̀ chácha dyànhwà bĕndz ba.

Hwáng: Kĕshr̀ dyànhwà bĕndzli dēngjìde búshr̀ tāde míngdz.

LI: Méigwānsyi. Wŏ tì nĭ chá. Nĭ nèige túngsywé syìng

劉是不是？他爸爸叫劉甚麼？

黃：不記得了。

李：那麼他們住在那兒？

黃：漢口街二十一巷五十七弄六十四號。

李：慢點兒，慢點兒。他的地址你倒是記得很熟。

黃：好，好。漢口街二十一巷五十七弄六十四號。

李：好，找到了。快拿張紙記下來，56421。

黃：不用拿紙，我現在就打電話，心裏記住就行了。56421，56421，56421………

李：要是他爸爸接電話怎麼辦？

黃：他爸爸一定不在家。56421，56421………

李：你怎麼知道呢？

黃：他爸爸是一個很忙的人。56412？56421？嘿，是56412還是56421？

李：好像是56412。

（小黃撥了電話，電話通了。）

電：喂！

黃：請問劉小姐在家嗎？

電：劉小姐？你打錯了。

黃：打錯了？對不起！對不起！

李：我想起來了；一定是56421，不是56412。

黃：早說多好！

Lyóu shr̀ bushr? Tā bàba jyàu Lyóu shēmma?

Hwáng: Bú jìdele.

Lĭ: Nèmma tāmen jùdzài năr?

Hwáng: Hànkŏu Jyē Èrshŕyī Syàng Wŭshŕchī Nùng lyòushŕsz̀ hàu.

Lĭ: Màndyăr, màndyăr. Tāde dìjr̆ nĭ dàushr̀ jìde hĕn shóu.

Hwáng: Hău, hău. Hànkŏu Jyē Èrshŕyī Syàng Wŭshŕchī Nùng lyòushŕsz̀ hàu.

Lĭ: Hău, jăudàule. Kwài ná jāng jr̆ jìsyalai. 56421.

Hwáng: Búyùng ná jr̆. Wŏ syàndzài jyòu dă dyànhwà. Syīnli jĭju jyòu syĭngle. 56421, 56421, 56421...

Lĭ: Yàushr tā bàba jyē dyànhwà dzĕmma bàn?

Hwáng: Tā bàba yìdìng búdzài jyā. 56421, 56421,...

Lĭ: Nĭ dzĕmma jr̄dau ne?

Hwáng: Tā bàba shr̀ yíge hĕn mángde rén. 56412? 56421? Hēi, shr̀ 56412 háishr̀ 56421?

Lĭ: Hăusyàng shr̀ 56412.

(Syău Hwáng bwōle dyànhwà. Dyànhwà tūngle.)

Dyànhwà: Wèi!

Hwáng: Chĭngwèn Lyóu Syáujye dzàijyā ma?

Dyànhwà: Lyóu Syáujye? Nĭ dă tswòle.

Hwáng: Dă tswòle? Dwèibuchĭ! Dwèibuchĭ!

Lĭ: Wó syángchĭláile. Yìdìng shr̀ 56421 búshr̀ 56412.

Hwáng: Dzău shwō dwō hău!

CHINESE-MANDARIN III

56412? or 56421?

A. DIALOGUE

Syǎu Hwáng wants to telephone a girl schoolmate he likes, asking her to go out with him. However, no matter how hard he tries, he just cannot find the little notebook in which he has noted the telephone numbers.

Lǐ: Don't get upset. If you take your time to look for it, you will find it.
Hwáng: This is really odd. I remember distinctly that last time I put it in the drawer of this table.

Lǐ: I think it is still better for us to check the telephone book.
Hwáng: But what is listed in the telephone book is not her name.

Lǐ: That's all right. Let me look it up for you. Is Lyóu the family name of your schoolmate? What is her father's name?
Hwáng: I cannot remember.

Lǐ: Well, where do they live?
Hwáng: #64 - 57th Alley, 21st Lane, Hankow Street.

Lǐ: Wait a minute. Wait a minute. You know her address very well.
Hwáng: All right. All right. #64 - 57th Alley, 21st Lane, Hankow Street.

Lǐ: Fine. I found it. Hurry up and write it down on a piece of paper. 56421.
Hwáng: We don't need any paper. I will telephone her right now. I'll keep it in my mind, and that will be enough. 56421, 56421, 56421...

Lǐ: If her father answers the phone, what will you do?
Hwáng: Her father certainly won't be home. 56421, 56421...

Lǐ: How do you know?

Hwáng: Her father is a very busy man. 56412? 56421?
Hey, is it 56412 or 56421?

Lǐ: It seems to be 56412.

(Syǎu Hwáng dials the telephone. He reaches a party.)

Phone: Hello.
Hwáng: May I ask you if Miss Lyóu is home?

Phone: Miss Lyóu? You've got the wrong number.
Hwáng: Wrong number? I am sorry.

Lǐ: Now I recall. It must be 56421 and not 56412.
Hwáng: Why didn't you say it sooner?

B. 生字

(The underlined characters are required.)

syǎu tsèdz	N	小冊子	small notebook
kùngr	N	空兒	leisure
nyǔér	N	女兒	daughter
dyànhwà běndz	N	電話本子	telephone directory
dìjř	N	地址	address
syàng	N	巷	alley
nùng	N	弄	lane
ywē	V	約	make appointment; invite
jìsyalai	RV	記下來	write down
míngming	A	明明	clearly
shóu	A	熟	familiar

lyóugè hwàr	IE, VO	留個話兒	leave a message
dwōsyè	IE	多謝	many thanks

C. 字句用法

1. The omission of de 的

a. As a common adjectival suffix, often omitted

棹子的裡邊兒	棹子裡邊兒
紅的衣裳	紅衣裳
他的家	他家

b. Must be kept when:

i. The adjective modifier is composed of a verb.

他喜歡的女朋友

他有一個會說中國話的女兒

ii. The adjective modifier is preceded immediately by an adverb.

他買了一個很大的棹子

他是一個很忙的人

iii. The adjective is reduplicated

大大的眼睛	yǎnjing
長長的腿	twěi

c. Omitted when the adjective modifier and the modified form a common term.

白紙, 忙人, 地理書, 中國菜. 爵士音樂

2. The uses of děi 得, fēi...bùkě 非…不可 yīnggāi, 應該, and yídìng 一定

得 must, have to

我得學中文. 我得走了.

非…不可	must, have to (stronger than 得)

我非學中文不可。 我非走不可了。

應該	should, ought to

我應該學中文。 我應該走了。

Ordinarily, 得 and 非…不可 cannot be used in the negative sense, but 應該 can.

我得去。 我不應該去。

一定 certainly, for sure

他一定知道	He certainly knows it.
他一定知道了	He must have known it.
這一定是他的書	It must be his book.
這一定不是他的書	It certainly is not his book.
他一定不知道	He certainly does not know it.
他不一定知道	It is not certain if he knows it.

D. 對話應用

A. Dwèibuchǐ. Néng bunéng chǐng ni bāng wo cháyichá yǐge réndе dyànhwà hàumǎr?
B. Tā jyàu shémma míngdz?

A. Tā jyàu Wáng Dzēngtsǎi.
B. Chǐng ni děng yǐsya.

A. Hǎu. Syèsye.
B. Nǐ jr̄dau tāde dìjř ma?

A. Tā jù dzài Hànkǒu Jyē wǔshŕ syàng èrshŕwǔ hàu.
B. Tāde dyànhwa hàumǎr shr̀ chīyīsz̀èrsānlíng.

A. Dwōsyè, dwōsyè.
B. Meishémma.

A. Wèi.
B. Wèi. Chǐng wèn nin Wang Syānsheng dzài ma?

A. Tā chūchyule, nín yǒu shémma shr̀ ma?
B. Chǐng nín gěi ta lyóuge hwàr, shwō yíge jyàu Mài-kede dǎ dyānhwà gěi ta. Dyànhwà hàumǎr shr̀ chīlyòusžer̀chīyī. Chǐng tā yǒu kùngr dǎgwòlai.

E. ORAL DRILLS

FLUENCY DRILL

Péngyou
Nyǔ péngyou
Tā syǐhwande nyǔ péngyou
Tā syǐhwande nèige nyǔ péngyou.

Nyǔér
Hwèi shwō Jūnggwo hwàde nyǔér
Tā yǒu yíge hwèi shwō Jūnggwo hwàde nyǔér.

Máng
Máng rén
Hěn mángde rén
Tā shr̀ yíge hěn mángde rén.

Yǎnjing
Dà yǎnjing
Dàdāde yǎnjing
Tā yǒu yìshwāng dàdādeyǎnjing.

Jūngwén
Sywé Jūngwén
Wó děi sywé Jūngwén
Wǒ fēi děi sywé Jūngwén bùkě.

Yīnggāi
Yīnggāi bǎ jèiběn shū kànwán
Wǒ yīnggāi dzwótyan bǎ jèiběn shū kànwán.

Yídìng
Tā yídìng jr̄dau
Tā yídìng jr̄dau jèige rén shr̀ shéi.

Jèiběn shū
Jèiběn shū shr̀ tāde
Wó syǎng jèiběn shū shr̀ tāde
Wó syǎng jèiběn shū yídìng shr̀ tāde.

Chōuti
Jèige jwōdzde chōuti
Fàng dzài jèige jwōdzde chōutilile
Míngmíng fàng dzài jèige jwōdzde chōutilile.
Wǒ jìde míngmíng fàng dzài jèige jwōdzde chōutilile.

Dyànhwà hàumǎr
Chácha dyànhwà hàumǎr
Chácha yíge rénde dyànhwà
hàumǎr
Chíng nǐ bāng wo chácha yíge
rénde dyànhwà hàumǎr
Néngbuneng chíng ni bāng wo
chácha yíge rénde dyànhwà
hàumǎr?

REPLACEMENT DRILL

Tā yàu ywē yíge tā syǐhwande nyǔ péngyou chūchyu wár.
rènshr
kàn
dyànyǐngr
chǐng

Tā yǒu yíge syǐhwan dyàuyúde érdz.
yīnywè
sywé
mèimei

Wǒ míngtyan déi bǎ jèiběn shū kànwán.
hwán gei ta
chyán
sùng chyu
gěi ta sùng chyu

Wǒ syàndzài déi dzǒule.
fēi dzǒu bùkěle

Wǒ yīnggāi dzwótyan gěi ta dā yíge dyànhwà.
kwàidyár
syě yìfēng syìn
chángchang

Tā yídìng rènshr nèige nyǔ háidz.
jìde
wǒde dyànhwà hàumǎr
syǎngdechilai
wǒde dìjř

Jèiběn shū yídìng shr̀ tāde.
tā mǎide
tā fàng dzài jèrde
Jèiběn dyànhwà běndz

Wǒ míngmíng bǎ nèiběn shū fàng dzài jèijāng jwōdz shàngle.
nèibén syǎu tsèdz
chōutilile
yídìng

RESPONSE DRILL

A. Nǐ yàu ywē něige nyǔ háidz chūchyu wár?
B. Jyòu shr̀ nǐ dzài sywésyàu kànjyangwode nèige nyǔ háidz.
gēn nǐ shwōgwo hwàde
syǐhwan chwān húng yīshangde
dài yǎnjìngrde

A. Nǐ míngtyan wèi shémma bùnéng lái?
B. Míngtyan wó děi chyù kàn wo māma.
dàu sywésyàu chyu
chyù mǎi dūngsyi
hwéijyā gwòjyé
bǎ nèijyàn yīshang dzwòwán

A. Dzài dzwò yìhwěr hǎu buhau?
B. Tái wǎnle. Wǒ déi dzǒule.
fēi dzǒu bùkěle

A. Tā dzěmma lǎushr jǎubujáu dūngsyi ne?
B. Tā bùyīnggāi swéibyàn fàng dūngsyi.
yīnggāi chángchang shōushr wūdz
yīnggāi měitsz̀ dōu bǎ dūngsyi fànghǎu
yīnggāi mànmārde jǎu

A. Jèibén syǎushwō jèmma hǎu, wǒ bùjr̄dau míngtyan kàndewan kànbuwan.
B. Nǐ yídìng kàndewán.
kànbuwán
bùyīding kàndewán

A. Nǐ hǎuhāurde syǎngyisyang Lǐ Syānsheng dàudǐ dzài nǎr?
B. Tā míngmíng dzài sywésyàuli.
Wǒ míngmíng kànjyan ta
Tā míngmíng gàusu wo

F. 練習

1. Insert 的 in the following sentences where necessary:
把"的"放在合適的地方

a. Wǒ mǎile yíge hén hǎukàn dz̀syíngchē.
b. Tā syáng jǎu yíge syǐhwan dyàuyǔ péngyou.
c. Tā syǎng dàu túshūgwǎn chyù jyè yìběn lìshř shū.
d. Jyāu Jūnggwo dìlǐ lǎushr̄ shr̀ yige hěn gāu rén.
e. Chūle jèige jyē kour, nǐ jyòu kéyi kànjyan yìkē gāugāu shù.

2. State in Chinese: 用中國話說

a. I must go home now.
b. He must know where he is.
c. I must find my book.
d. You must not say that to your father.
e. There is no other choice (沒別的法子). You must come.
f. You should come here often.
g. He must have come.
h. It is not certain if he knows it.

3. Answer the following questions: 回答問題

a. Syǎu Hwáng syǎng ywē shéi chūchyu wǎr?
b. Syǎu Hwáng jǎubujáu shémmale?
c. Wèi shémma Syǎu Hwáng syāngsyìn Lyóu Syáujyede fùchin yídìng búdzài jyā.
d. Syǎu Hwángde dyànhwà dǎ tūngle méiyou?
e. Lyǒu Syáujyede dyànhwà hàumǎr shr̀ 56421 háishr̀ 56412?

CHINESE-MANDARIN III

我的前半生

(節自①溥儀我的前半生)

我十五歲的時候，有一次聽②莊士敦談起電話，我覺得很有意思。聽說我父親住的地方也有了這個玩藝兒。我就叫③內務府也給我裝上一個電話。內務府的人一聽，臉都變了顏色。不過他們從來沒在我面前說過一個不字。可是第二天老師們都來了，跟我說：

「這是祖先從來沒想到的事情。裝上電話，甚麼人都可以跟皇上說話了。這些④西洋的怪玩藝兒，祖先是不用的……」

我也有我的道理：

「⑤宮裏的鐘，電燈都是西洋玩藝兒，不是祖先也用了嗎？」

「外邊的人隨便打電話，不是⑥冒犯了⑦皇上？」

「外邊的冒犯，我從報上也看了不少，眼睛看跟耳朵聽不是一樣嗎？」

老師們也許不明白為甚麼內務府請他們來跟我說。其實內務府最怕的並不是冒犯皇上，而是怕我用電話跟外邊的人有了更多的⑧接觸。

內務府知道老師們不能⑨說服我，就請我父親來跟我說，可是我父親並沒有內務府希望的那種⑩口才。他除了把老師們說的話又說了一次以外，就沒有別的話說了。我問他。

「您自己那兒不是早裝上電話了嗎？」

「那是，那是，可是跟皇上並不一樣。這件事還是過兩天再說吧！」

「皇上怎麼不一樣？我就連這點兒⑪自由都沒有？不行！我就是要裝！」我跟⑫太監說：「告訴內務府：今天就給我裝電話！」

「好，好，」我父親說：「好好，那就……就裝……」

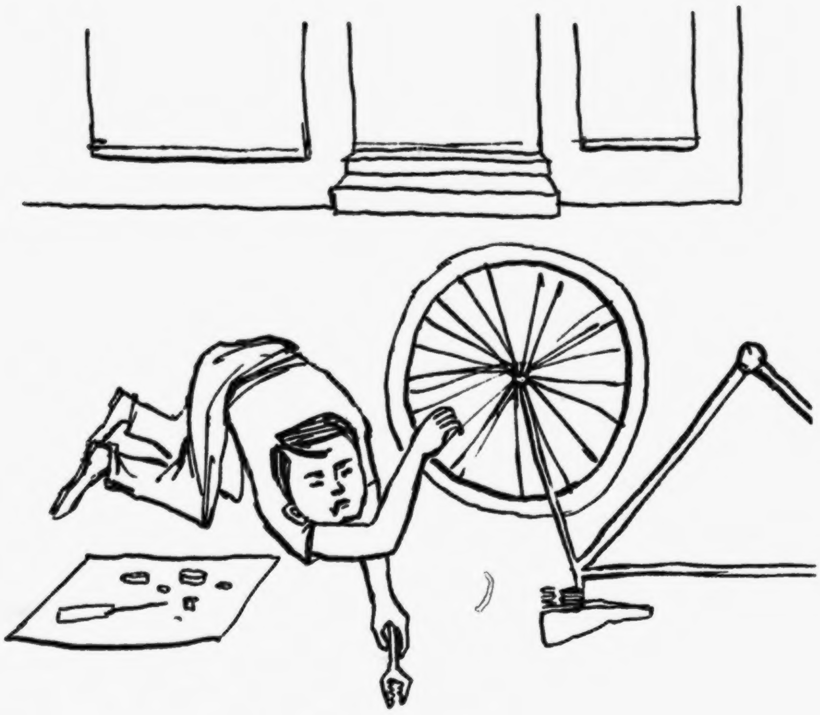
電話裝上了，電話局送來了一個電話本子。我高興極了，就查電話本子，想用電話玩一玩。我看到了平劇名⑬演員⑭楊小樓的電話號碼，電話通了，我就像唱平劇那樣說：

「來者可是楊—小—樓—啊！」

我聽到了那邊的人大笑的聲音，問：「您是誰啊？哈哈……」他還沒說完，我就把電話掛上了。我真是開心極了。我又給一個叫⑮徐狗子的演員開了一樣的玩笑。後來又給一家飯館打電話，⑯冒充一個別的人叫他們送一桌最好的酒席。

CHINESE-MANDARIN III

1.	溥儀	Pǔ Yí	emperor's name
2.	莊士敦	Jwāng Shr̀-dwūn	Johnston
3.	內務府	Nèiwùfǔ	Department of the Interior (old name, used by Chinese government before the Republic)
4.	西洋	Syīyáng	Western world
5.	宮	gūng	palace
6.	冒犯	màufàn	offend
7.	皇上	Hwángshang	His majesty the emperor
8.	接觸	jyēchù	contact
9.	説服	shwōfú	convince
10.	口才	kǒutsái	oratorical talent
11.	自由	dz̀yóu	freedom
12.	太監	tàijyan	eunuch
13.	演員	yǎnywán	actor
14.	楊小樓	Yáng Syǎu-lóu	name of famous Peking opera singer
15.	徐狗子	Syú Gǒudz	name of famous vaudeville clown in Peking
16.	冒充	màuchūng	masquerade



第十九課

小黃的自行車壞了

對話

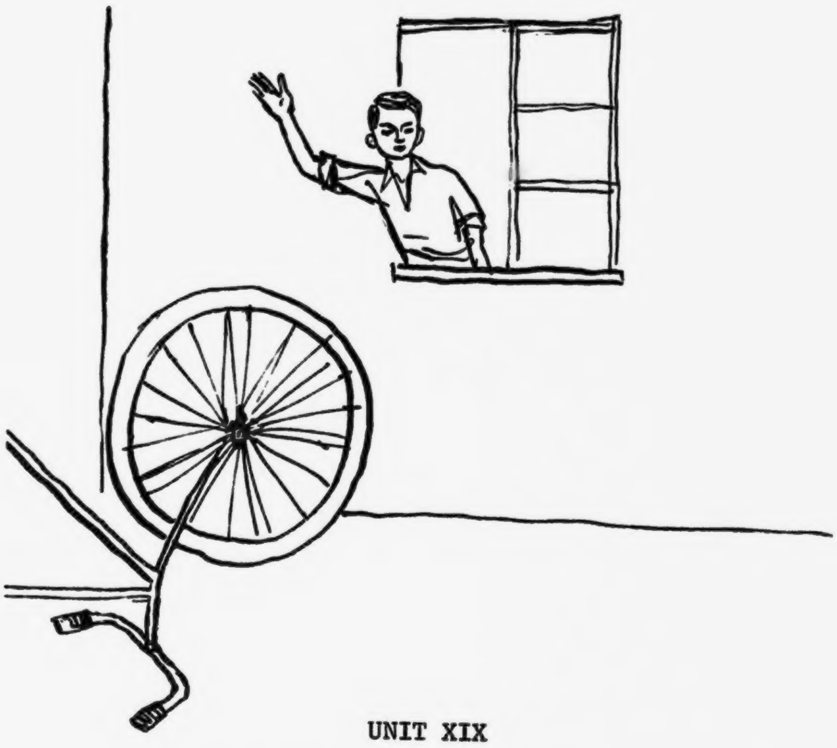
小黃的自行車壞了，小黃修自行車很有經驗，每次車壞了，他都是自己修。他把自行車放在宿舍的院子裏正在專心的修着，李元從窗口兒伸出一個頭來。

李：小黃，你的車又壞了？甚麼毛病？

黃：還是老毛病，我這個老爺車太舊了。

李：買輛新的算了，省得三天兩頭兒的出毛病，多麻煩！

Unit XIX



UNIT XIX

SYĂU HWÁNGDE DZ̀SYÍNGCHĒ HWÀILE

A. DIALOGUE

Syău Hwángde dz̀syíngchē hwàile. Syău Hwáng syōu dz̀syíngchē hén yŏu jīngyàn. Mĕitsz̀ chē hwàile, tā dōu shr̀ dz̀jĭ syōu. Tā bă dz̀syíngchē fàng dzài sùshède ywàndzli, jèngdzài jwānsyīnde syōuje. Lĭ Ywán tsúng chwāngkŏur shēnchū yíge tóu lai.

Lĭ: Syău Hwáng, nĭde chē yòu hwàile? Shémma máubing?

Hwáng: Háishr̀ lău máubing. Wŏ jèige lăuyéchē tài jyòule.

Lĭ: Măi lyàng syīnde swànle. Shĕngde sāntyān lyăngtóurde chū máubing. Dwō máfan!

黃：買新的？那兒來的錢哪？只好將就點兒用吧！

麥：小黃的車，我的錶，王光生的收音機，真是三絕！

黃：麥克，美國的中學生都喜歡修汽車，是吧？

麥：有些中學生喜歡買一輛破汽車來修，修好了開到街上去出風頭，不過那些學生的功課都有問題。

李：小黃，我的自行車也有老毛病，車輪子有點兒幌，等一會兒你幫我修一下兒，行不行？

黃：沒問題，你把車推過來，我現在就替你弄一下兒。

李：等一會兒好不好？等我把屋子裏這張畫兒掛好。

Unit XIX

Hwáng: Măi syīnde? Năr láide chyán na? Jŕhău jyāngjyou dyăr yùng ba.

Mài: Syău Hwángde chē, wŏde byău, Wáng Gwāngshēngde shōuyīnjī, jēn shr̀ sānjywé!

Hwáng: Mài-ke, Mĕigwóde jūngsywéshēng dōu syĭhwan syōu chìchē shr̀ ba?

Mài: Yŏusyē jūng sywéshēng syĭhwan măi yílyàng pwò chìchē lái syōu. Syōu hăule kāi dàu jyē shang chyù chū fēngtou. Búgwò nèisyē sywéshēngde gūngkè dōu yŏu wèntí.

Lĭ: Syău Hwáng, wŏde dz̀syíngchē yé láuyŏu máubing. Chē lwúndz yóu dyăr hwàng. Dĕng yìhwĕr nĭ bāng wo syōu yisyàr syíng busying?

Hwáng: Méi wèntí. Ní bă chē twēigwòlai. Wŏ syàndzài jyŏu tì nĭ nùng yisyàr.

Lĭ: Dĕng yìhwĕr hău buhau? Déng wó ba wūdzli jèijāng hwàr gwà hău.

黃：甚麼畫兒？

李：還是那張老畫兒，掛畫兒的釘子掉了，我得把它掛好。嘿，你現在用那個鉗子不用？給我用一下兒好不好？把這張畫兒掛好，我就還給你。

黃：好，接着！

（小黃把鉗子朝着李元扔了過去，可是扔歪了，就聽嘩啦一聲，玻璃破了。）

黃：哎呀！糟糕！對不起。李元，不要用手去撿玻璃！別把手弄破了，我去找一個掃把來。哎，全是我的錯兒！

Unit XIX

Hwàng: Shémma hwàr?

Lĭ: Háishr̀ nèijāng lău hwàr. Gwà hwàrde dīngdz dyàule. Wó déi bă ta gwà hău. Hei, nĭ syàndzài yùng nèige chyándz buyung? Géi wŏ yùng yìsyàr hău buhau? Bă jèijāng hwàr gwà hău, wŏ jyòu hwán géi ni.

Hwáng: Hău, jyēje!

(Syău Hwáng bă chyándz cháuje Lĭ Ywán rēnglegwòchyù. Kĕshr̀ rēng wāile. Jyòu tīng hwālā yìshēng, bwōli pwòle.)

Hwáng: Aīyī! Dzāugāu! Dwèibuchī. Lĭ Ywán, búyàu yùng shŏu chyù jyăn bwōli! Byé bá shŏu nùng pwòle. Wŏ chyù jău yíge sàuba lai. Aì, chywán shr̀ wŏde tswòr!

CHINESE-MANDARIN III

SYǍU HWÁNG'S BICYCLE IS BROKEN

A. DIALOGUE

Syǎu Hwáng's bicycle is broken. He is very experienced in fixing bicycles. Each time it gets out of order, he always fixes it himself. He now places his bicycle in the yard before the dormitory and applies himself with concentration to repairing it. Lǐ Ywán sticks his head out of the window.

Lǐ: Syǎu Hwáng, your bicycle is again out of order? What is wrong?

Hwáng: Same old trouble. This old machine of mine is just getting too senile.

Lǐ: Why don't you get a new one so that it won't get out of order every other day. That is too much trouble.

Hwáng: Get a new one? Where does the money come from? I will have to put up with it and keep using it.

Mike: Syǎu Hwáng's bicycle, my watch, and Wáng Gwāngshēng's radio, they are really three precious jewels.

Hwáng: Mike, American high school students all like to fix cars, don't they?

Mike: Some high school students like to buy an old car to fix up. After repairing it, they would drive it out onto the street to show off. But those students all have problems with their school work.

Lǐ: Syǎu Hwáng, my bicycle is also always giving me trouble. The wheels are a little shaky. A little later, would you help me to fix it?

Hwáng: Sure. Push it over here. I will fix it for you right now.

Lǐ: Can you wait just a minute? Wait until I hang this picture in the room first.

Hwáng: What picture?

Lǐ: The same old picture. The nail on which the picture was hung fell off. I have to put it back. Hey, are you using the pliers now? Can you let me use them a minute? As soon as I fix up this picture, I will give them back to you.

Hwáng: Fine, catch it.

(Syǎu Hwáng throws the pliers toward Lǐ Ywán. But he misses his direction. They hear a crash. The glass is broken.)

Hwáng: Aiya! What a mess! I am sorry. Don't pick up the glass with your hands, Lǐ Ywán. Don't cut your hand. I will go to look for a broom. Ah, it is all my fault!

B. 生字

(The underlined characters are required.)

sàuba	N	掃把	broom
chyándz	N	鉗子	pliers
dīngdz	N	釘子	nail
chwāngkǒur	N	窗口	window; opening of a window
dyànshrjī	N	電視機	television set
cháu	CV	朝	face
hwàng	V	愰	shaky
twēi	V	推	push
jyǎn	V	檢	pick up
jyē	V	接	receive; catch

sāntyān lyǎngtóur	IE	三天兩頭兒	every other day; very frequently
sān jywé	IE	三絕	three insuperable things
chū fēngtou	IE	出風頭	show off

C. 字句用法

1. The uses of jyòu 舊 , lǎu 老 , pwò 破 , and hwài 壞

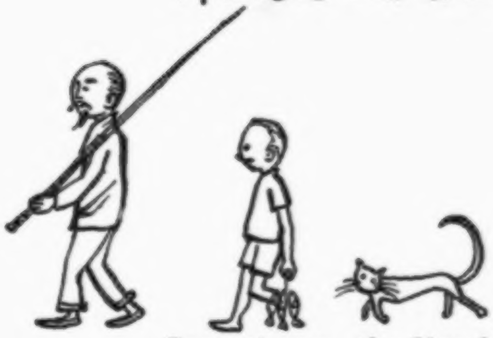
a. 舊 and 老 , as adjectives

i. Meaning "old", 舊 is commonly used for inanimated objects, but 老 for animated objects.

小黃的舊自行車又壞了

我買了很多舊書

那位老先生很喜歡釣魚、



Sometimes, the line between the animated and the inanimated is hard to draw. Observe the following:

老話(舊話), 老家

老歌兒(舊歌兒), 老法子(舊法子)

Furthermore, compare:

老房子 , old house, but not necessarily delapidated

舊房子	, old house, not necessarily antique but showing its age

ii. As "former", both are used interchangeably

他還住在老地方	He still lives at the same place (as he did before).
我們的舊校長去年到法國去了	Our former principal last year went to France.

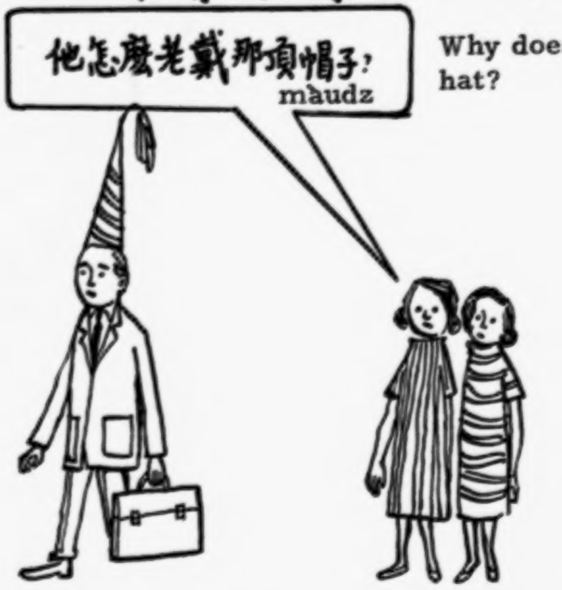
b. 舊 and 老, as adverbs

i. 舊 old, applies only to inanimated things, and
老, to animated

他把這件衣裳穿舊了	He has worn this clothes so much that it's getting old.
這個棹子用舊了	This table is getting old through use.
他變老了	He has grown old.

ii. 老(是), "always"

我星期天老去釣魚	I always go fishing on Sunday.
他怎麼老戴那頂帽子? màudz	Why does he always wear that hat?



c. 破 and 壞, as adverbs or stative verbs:

i. 破 broken, torn, cut, scratched

我的手破了	My hand is cut.
書都讓那個孩子弄破了	The books have all been torn by that child.
他把玻璃打破了	He broke the glass.

ii. 壞 out of order, spoiled

自行車壞了	The bicycle is out of order.
電話壞了	The phone is out of order.
這塊肉壞了	This piece of meat is spoiled.

iii. 破 and 壞, as adjectives

破, lousy, imperfect, of bad quality

他有一輛破汽車	He has a bad car.
我不喜歡聽這個破歌兒	I don't like to hear this lousy song.

壞, bad

壞人說壞話,做壞事	Bad people speak evil words and do evil deeds.

2. The rare appearance of tā 它 (it)

There is, in principle, no "it" in Chinese, thus appears very rarely, such as:

這本書很好. 把它買了吧

它 has no plural form and can never be used at the beginning of a sentence.

It's raining (下雨了). It is cold (很冷, or 天氣很冷). It is a book (是一本書, never 它是一本書).

D. 對話應用

A. Nǐ měityān dzěmma shàng sywé?
B. Chí chē.

A. Jyā lí sywésyàu ywǎn ma?
B. Bùywǎn. Chí chē èr̀shrfēn jūng jyòu dàule. Nǐ ne?

A. Wǒ dzwò gūnggùng chìchē. Měityān háiděi hwàn chē.
B. Dzǎushangde chē dwō budwo?

A. Chē dàushr̀ hěn dwō. Kěshr dzǎushang shàngsywéde sywèsheng tài dwōle. Swóyi háishr̀ hén jǐ.

E. ORAL DRILLS

FLUENCY DRILL

Dz̀syíngchē
Jyòu dz̀syíngchē
Syǎu Hwángde jyòu dz̀syíngchē
Syǎu Hwángde jyòu dz̀syíngchē hwàile
Syǎu Hwángde jyòu dz̀syíngchē yòu hwàile.

Rén
Lǎu rén
Nèiwèi lǎu rén
Dyàuyúde nèiwèi lǎu rén
Syǐhwan dyàuyúde nèiwèi lǎu rén.

Dìfang
Lǎu dìfang
Jùdzài lǎu dìfang
Wǒ hái jùdzài lǎu dìfang.

Jyòu
Yīshang jyòule
Jèijyàn yīshang jyòule
Tā bǎ jèijyàn yīshang chwān jyòule.

Shwō
Shwōhwà
Lǎu shwō hwà
Ní dzěmma lǎu shwōhwà a?
Ní dzěmma lǎu dzài jyàushr̀li shwōhwà a?

Pwò
Shǒu pwòle
Wǒde shǒu pwòle
Wǒde shǒu gěi jèige chyándz nùng pwòle.

Píngdz
Jèige píngdz pwòle
Tā bǎ jèibe píngdz shwāi pwòle.

Hwài
Dyànhwà hwàile
Wǒmen jyāde dyànhwà hwàile.

Hwài
Jèikwài ròu hwàile
Jèikwài ròu gēn nèige pínggwǒ dōu hwàile.

Dz̀syíngchē
Pwò dz̀syíngchē
Chí pwò dz̀syíngchē
Wǒ búywànyi chí jèilyàng pwò dz̀syíngchē.

REPLACEMENT DRILL

Syǎu Hwángde dz̀syíngchē hwàile.
shōuyīnjī
yǒu máubingle
shóubyǎu
chū máubingle

Háishr̀ lǎu máubing.
nèijāng lǎu hwàr
Yòu shr̀
nèige lǎu wèntí

Wǒde jèilyàng lǎuyéchē tài jyòule.
jèige syángfǎr
Tā bàbade
Nǐde jèishwāng syé
syāngdāng jyòule

Ní dzěmma lǎu lái wǒmen jèr chr̄fàn?
bùlái
wár
Nǐ wèi shémma

Wǒde shǒu ràng chyándz nùng pwòle.
jyǎu
gěi chyándz nùng pwòle
gěi bwōli

Nèige háidz bǎ pǐngdz shwāi pwòle.
chábēi
dǎ
dǎ pwòle sānge chábēi
dǎ pwògwo

Wǒmen jyāde dyànhwà hwàile
shōuyīnjī

Nǐ jèijāng pwò jwōdz tài bùhǎukànle.
jèilyàng pwò chē
jēn byènyou
jèisyē pwò dīngdz

Syǎu Hwáng bǎ chyándz cháuje Lǐ Ywán rēnglegwòchyu.
chyóu
tī

RESPONSE DRILL

A. Nǐ búshr̀ shwō jīntyan yàu chūchyu ma?
B. Wǒde dz̀syíngchē hwàile.
dz̀syíngchē yòu hwàile
jyǎu yòu hwàile

A. Nǐ syàndzài jùdzài shémma dìfang?
B. Háishr̀ lǎu dìfang.
lǎu fángdz
lǎu dìjř

A. Tā wèi shémma mǎile jèige syīn dūngsyi?
B. Yīnwei tāde dūngsyi jyòule.
tāde yīshang
tāde shōuyīnjī
tāde dyànshr̀jī

A. Nǐde shóu dzěmmale?
B. Wǒde shǒu jyàu chyándz nùng pwòle.
bwōli
pwò pǐngdz
pwò bwōlibēi
dīngdz

A. Nèige háidz wèi shémma bù hweijyā dzài nèr kū ne?
B. Tā bǎ píngdz shwāi pwòle.
jyǎu hwàile
tóu pwòle
yá dyàule

A. Nèi shr̀ shémma?
B. Shr̀ yìjāng jř.
yìjāng jř
yílyàng pwòchē
yíkwài hwài dàngāu
yíge hwài yǐdz
yíge hwài háidz

F. 練習

1. Complete the following sentences with lǎu or jyòu:
用"老" "舊" 填空白

a. Tā chyùnyan mǎide nèige dēng yǐjing yùng ______ le.
b. Tā hái shr̀ jùdzài ______ dìfang.
c. Jèisyē dōu shr̀ wǒde ______ péngyou.
d. Tā mǎile hěn dwō ______ shū.
e. Yá téng shr̀ tāde ______ máubing.

2. Complete the following sentences with pwò or hwài:
用"破" "壞" 填空白

a. Wó bǎ nèige bwōli bēi shwāi ______ le.
b. Wó bǎ shōuyīnjī shwāi ______ le.
c. Ní dzěmma mǎile jèmma yíge ______ jwōdz.
d. Wǒ dzwótyan bá shǒu nùng ______ le..
e. Wǒde shóubyǎu ______ le.
f. Jèisyēdūngsyi chywán ______ le, bùnéng chr̄le.

3. Answer the following questions: 回答問題

a. Syǎu Hwáng wèi shémma búhwàn yílyàng syīn chē?
b. Lǐ Ywánde dz̀syíngchē yǒu shémma máubing?
c. Lǐ Ywán dzài wūdzli dzwò shémma ne?
d. Syǎu Hwáng bǎ chyándz rēng dàu nǎrle?
e. Bǎ bwōli dǎ pwòle dōu shr̀ shéide tswòr?

Unit XIX

一封①公開的信

（節自現代青年文選）

我還不知道你姓甚麼叫甚麼，也許你也不認識我吧！但是我為甚麼要給你寫信呢？因為你②偷了我的自行車。

我的自行車雖然很舊，可是③擦得很乾淨。從這一點，你就可以看出它的主人是怎麼樣地愛它。我的車子已經好幾天不見了。天天晚上我都④夢見它。它還是屬於我的。我擦它，⑤摸它，白天我在街上走，看見很多自行車在我前後左右好像飛一樣地過去，我看看那些車沒有一輛是我的看着，看着，我的眼睛⑥模糊了，⑦眼淚掉下來了，

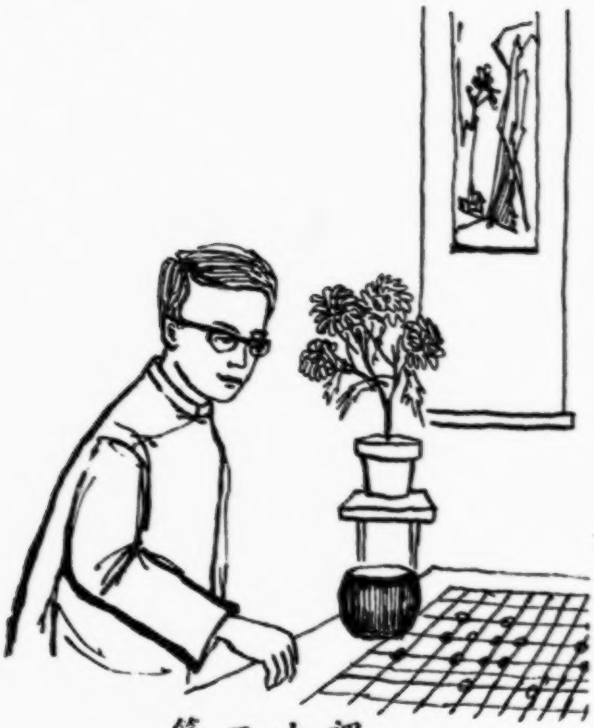
我的家離學校很遠。自行車⑧丟了以後，我就常常⑨遲到了。你⑩忍心嗎？你可知道它能替我做多少事情嗎？它⑪載我妹妹上學，幫媽媽載菜⑫籃子，給爸爸送雨傘。你忍心嗎？

我跟妹妹以後要一步一步地走去上學了。媽媽以後得自己拿那麼多的菜了。下大雨的時候誰能幫我快一點給爸爸送雨傘去呢？

我天天在我丟車的地方站着等着你把車還給我。還給我吧，請你還給我吧！

CHINESE-MANDARIN III

1.	公開	gūngkāi	open
2.	偷	tōu	steal
3.	擦	tsā	polish
4.	夢	mèng	dream
5.	摸	mwō	touch
6.	糢糊	mwòhu	blurred
7.	眼淚	yǎnlèi	tear
8.	丟	dyōu	lose
9.	遲到	chŕdàu	arrive late
10.	忍心	rěnsyīn	cruel
11.	載	dzài	carry
12.	籃子	lándz	basket



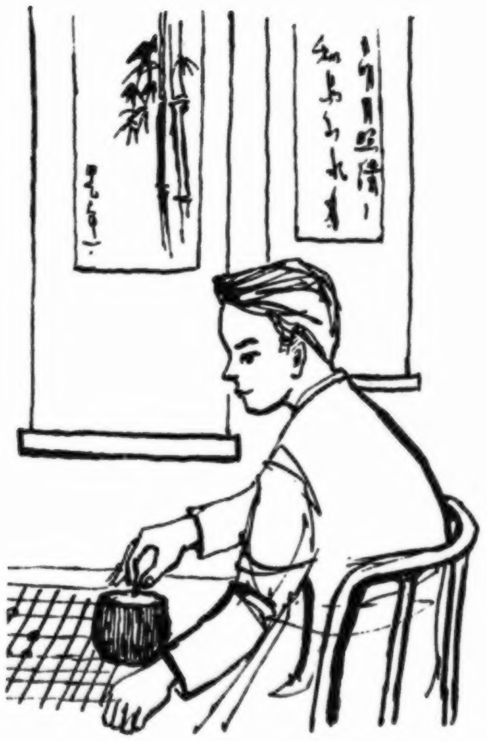
第二十課

李老師的家

對　　話

麦克到李老師的家去玩兒，他們在客廳裏
一邊兒喝茶，一邊兒談天兒。

麦：　您的客廳的擺設很講究。
師：　那裏，那裏。都是舊傢俱。那張
　　　方桌兒是我祖父留下來的。
麦：　牆上的字畫兒很好。
師：　那張山水是家父收藏的古畫兒。
麦：　噢，令尊收藏古畫兒，他自己也畫嗎？
師：　他不畫，可是他寫字寫的很好，也很
　　　會下棋。



UNIT XX

LĬ LĂUSHR̄DE JYĀ

A. DIALOGUE

Mài-ke dàu Lĭ Lăushr̄de jyā chyù wár. Tāmen dzài kètīngli yìbyār hēchā yìbyār tántyār.

Mài: Nínde kètīngde băishe hén jyăngjyou.

Lĭ: Náli, náli. Dōu shr̀ jyòu jyājyu. Nèijāng fāngjwōr shr̀ wó dzŭfù lyóusyàláide.

Mài: Chyángshangde dz̀hwàr hén hău.

Lĭ: Nèijāng shānshwĕi shr̀ jyāfù shōutsángde gŭhwàr.

Mài: Ou, Lìngdzwūn shōutsáng gŭhwàr. Tā dz̀jĭ yĕ hwà ma?

Lĭ: Tā búhwà. Kĕshr tā syĕdz̀ syĕde hén hău. Yé hĕn hwèi syàchí.

麥：您下圍棋嗎？

李：下，不過下的不好，麥克，中國的琴，棋，書，畫你好像懂得很多似的。

麥：到這兒來了以後，跟各位老師學了一點兒，還差得遠呢。

李：美國現在也有很多人注意中國的文化，他們喜歡字畫兒嗎？

麥：差不多每一個博物館裏都有中國的字畫兒，可是懂中國琴，中國棋的人實在不多，我下圍棋也下的很不好。

李：你要是有興趣的話，我們下一會兒好不好？

麥：好極了。

李：來，我們到書房裏去下吧。

（李老師的書房佈置的很雅緻，靠着窗戶有一張很大的寫字枱，上邊兒擺了硯台，筆，筆筒，墨盒，麥克跟李老師進了書房就下起圍棋來了。）

Unit XX

Mài: Nín syà wéichí ma?

Lǐ: Syà. Búgwò syàde bùhǎu. Mài-ke, Jūnggwóde chín, chí, shū, hwà, nǐ hǎusyàng dǔngde hěn dwō shrde.

Mài: Dàu jèr láile yǐhòu, gēn gèwèi lǎushr̄ sywéle yìdyǎr. Hái chàdeywǎn ne.

Lǐ: Měigwó syàndzài yé yóu hěn dwō rén jùyì Jūnggwóde wénhwà. Tāmen syǐhwan dz̀hwàr ma?

Mài: Chàbudwō měiyíge bwówùgwánli dōu yǒu Jūnggwóde dz̀hwàr. Kěshr dǔng Jūnggwó chín, Jūnggwó chíde rén shŕdzài bùdwō. Wǒ syà wéichí yě syàde hěn bùhǎu.

Lǐ: Nǐ yàushr yǒu syìngchyùde hwà, wǒmen syà yìhwěr hǎu buhau?

Mài: Hǎujíle.

Lǐ: Lái, wǒmen dàu shūfángli chyù syà ba.

(Lǐ Lǎushr̄de shūfáng bùjr̀de hén yǎjr̀. Kàuje chwānghu yǒu yìjāng hěn dàde syědz̀tái, shàngbyār bǎile yàntai, mwò, bǐtǔng, mwòhér. Mài-ke gēn Lǐ Lǎushr̄ jìnle shūfáng jyòu syàchí wéichí láile.)

CHINESE-MANDARIN III

THE HOME OF MR. LÍ, THE TEACHER

A. DIALOGUE

Mike goes to the home of Mr. Lí, the teacher, for a visit. They drink tea in the living room while chatting.

Mike: The things you have arranged in your living room are very elegant.

Lí: Oh, that's nothing. They are all old pieces of furniture. The square table over there has been handed down from my grandfather.

Mike: The paintings and the calligraphy on your walls are excellent.

Lí: That landscape is an old painting collected by my father.

Mike: Your father collected ancient paintings? Did he also do some painting himself?

Lí: No, he did not paint, but his calligraphy was very good. He was also good at playing chess.

Mike: Do you play wéichí?

Lí: Yes, I do, but I don't play it very well. Mike, you seem to know quite a bit about Chinese musical instruments, chess, calligraphy, and painting.

Mike: After I came here, I learned a little bit about them from my teachers. I still have very far to go.

Lí: Nowadays, there are also very many people in America who pay attention to Chinese culture. Do they like Chinese calligraphy and painting?

Mike: Just about in every American museum there are Chinese calligraphy and painting. However, there are really not many people who understand Chinese musical instruments and the Chinese chess. I also play wéichí very badly.

Lí: If you are interested, we can play wéichí a little while.

Mike: That will be very good.
Lí: Come, let's go over to the study to play chess.

(Mr. Lí's study is very tastefully furnished. Against the window, there is a huge desk. On it are arranged a Chinese ink dish, a Chinese ink stick, a vase holding Chinese writing brushes, and an ink box. After Mike and the teacher enter the study, they start their game of wéichí.)

B.

(The underlined characters are required.)

chín chí shū hwà	N	琴棋書畫	Chinese lute, chess, calligraphy and painting (the four cultural activities of the educated Chinese)
dz̀hwà	N	字畫	calligraphy and painting
bǎishe	N	擺設	display; interior decoration; furnishing
jyājyu	N	傢俱	furniture
fāngjwōr	N	方棹	square table
shānshwěi	N	山水	landscape
jyāfú	N	家父	my father (polite expression)
lǐngdzwūn	N	令尊	your father (polite expression)
wéichí	N	圍棋	one kind of Chinese chess
shūfáng	N	書房	study (room)

yàntai	N	硯台	Chinese ink stone (ink dish)
syědžtái	N	寫字枱	desk
mwò	N	墨	ink
bǐtǔng	N	筆筒	Chinese pen holder (like a vase)
syìngchyù	N	興趣	interest
mwòhér	N	墨盒兒	ink box
jyòujyou	N	舅舅	uncle (mother's brother)
wàishēngnyǔér	N	外甥女	niece (sister's daughter)
byǎugē	N	表哥	cousin (aunt's son)
syàchí	V	下棋	play chess
shōutsáng	V	收藏	collect
tántyār	V	談天兒	chat
yǎjr̀	Adj	雅緻	graceful; of good taste
húdu	Adj	糊塗	muddled
jyǎngjyōu	Adj	講究	carefully done; meticulously done
chàdeywǎn	IE	差的遠	far from the point; greatly wanting

C.

1. About "more"

a. More (in amount)

請多吃一點兒　　(多 + V + 一點兒)

請多吃一點兒菜　　(多 + V + 一點兒 + N)

b. More (in number)

這張書棹兒上有一本書.那張書棹兒上還有一本 (還 + V + number)

請再給一塊錢 (再 + V + number)

c. 不再 and 別再 , no more

別再跟他說話了	Don't talk to him any more!
我不再上學了	I no longer go to school.
我不再給他錢了	I stopped giving him money.

d. 再也不 , nevermore

我再也不給他錢了	Never again did I give him any money.
他再也不跟他談話了	He never speaks to him again.

2. The uses of 不 and 沒有

a. 不 is used:

i. In a constant or habitual situation

這棵樹不開花	This tree does not bloom.
以前他不跳舞	Formerly he did not dance.
我哥哥不說中文	My brother speaks no Chinese.

ii. For future actions

下月我們不去旅行 lyǔsyíng	Next month we are not going to make a trip.
明天小孩們不上學	Tomorrow the children are not going to school.

iii. For intentions or wishes

他說這本書不好，他不看	He says this book is no good, he is not going to read it.

iv. With verbs indicating ability, attitude, any emotional or mental activity

他們昨天晚上出去，我不知道	They went out last night, I did not know.
他去年到中國的時候，不會說中國話	When he arrived in China last year, he could not speak Chinese.

b. 沒有 is used to negate a completed action:

他寫了兩個鐘頭了還沒有寫完呢	He has been writing for two hours, and he still has not finished.
我吃了中飯了，沒有吃晚飯	I have had lunch, but not dinner.

D. 對話應用

A. Nèige nyǔ háidz shr̀ shéi?
B. Shr̀ wǒde wàishengnyǔér.

A. Wàishengnyǔér?
B. Wàishengnyǔér jyòu shr̀ wó byǎugēde nyǔér.

A. Byǎugē shr̀ shémma rén ne?
B. Byǎugē jyòu shr̀ wǒ jyòujyoude érdz.

A. Jyòujyou?
B. Jyòu shr̀ wǒ māmade gēge hwòshr dìdi.

A. Wó yǒudyǎr húdule.
B. Lái, wó géi ni hwà yìjāng tú. Nǐ yí kàn jyòu míngbaile.

CHART OF COMMONLY-USED CHINESE FAMILY RELATIONSHIP TERMS

祖母
dzúmǔ

祖父
dzǔfù

姑父
gūfù

姑姑
gūgu (gūmǔ)

嬸嬸
shenshēn
(shénmǔ)

or 伯母
bwómu

叔叔
shūshu
(shūfù)

or 伯伯
bwóbwo
(bwófù)

父親
fūchin

姐夫
jyěfu

or 妹夫
mèifu

姐姐
jyéjye

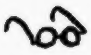
or 妹妹
mèimei

嫂嫂
sǎusau

or 弟妹
dìmèi

哥哥
gēge

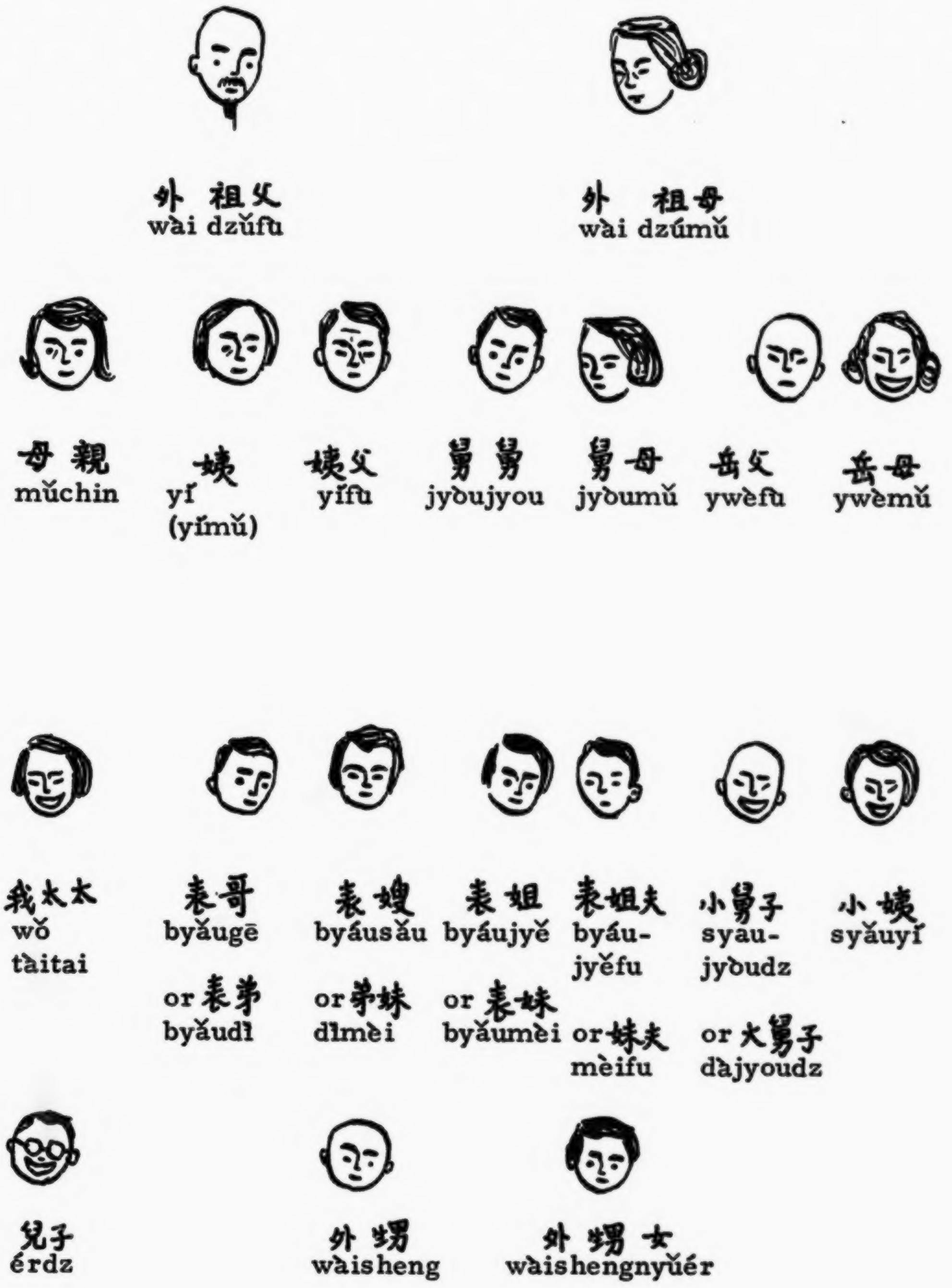
or 弟弟
dìdi



我
wǒ

姪女兒
jŕ nyǔér

姪子
jŕdz


外 祖父
wài dzǔfù
外 祖母
wài dzúmǔ
母親
mǔchin
姨
yí
(yímǔ)
姨父
yífù
舅舅
jyòujyou
舅母
jyòumǔ
岳父
ywèfù
岳母
ywèmǔ
我太太
wǒ
tàitai
表哥
byǎugē
or 表弟
byǎudì
表嫂
byáusǎu
or 弟妹
dìmèi
表姐
byáujyě
or 表妹
byǎumèi
表姐夫
byáu-
jyěfu
or 妹夫
mèifu
小舅子
syau-
jyòudz
or 大舅子
dàjyoudz
小姨
syǎuyí
兒子
érdz
外甥
wàisheng
外甥女
wàishengnyǔér

E. ORAL DRILLS

FLUENCY DRILL

Chr̄
Chǐng chr̄
Chǐng dwō chr̄
Chǐng dwō chr̄ yìdyǎr
Chǐng dwō chr̄ yìdyǎr tsài.

Gěi
Gěi ta yìbén syǎushwō
Dwō gěi ta yìbén syǎushwǒ.
Wǒ yàu dwō gěi ta yìbén
  syǎushwō.

Yàntai
Yǒu yíge yàntai
Jèijāng shūjwōr shang yǒu
  yíge yàntai
Jèijāng shūjwōr shang yǒu
  yíge yàntai, nèijāng
  shūjwōr shang hái yǒu
  yíge.

Jyājyu
Mǎi jyājyu
Dzài mǎi jyājyu
Byé dzài mǎi jyājyule
Búyàu dzài mǎi jyājyule.

Chyán
Gěi ta chyán
Búdzài gěi ta chyánle
Wǒ búdzài gěi ta chyánle.

Chyán
Gěi ta chyán
Bùgěi ta chyán
Dzài yě bùgěi ta chyánle
Wǒ dzài yě bùgěi ta chyánle.

Fàwén
Shwō Fàwén
Bùshwō Fàwen
Wǒ gēge bùshwō Fàwén.

Lyǔsyíng
Chyù lyǔsyíng
Syàge ywè chyù lyǔsyíng
Wǒmen syàge ywè chyù
  lyǔsyíng
Wǒmen syàge ywè búchyù
  lyǔsyíng.

Bǎishe
Bǎishe hén jyǎngjyou
Kètīngde bǎishe hén jyǎngjyou
Nínde kètīngde bǎishe hén
  jyǎngjyou.

Gǔhwàr
Jyāfùde gǔhwàr
Jyāfù shōutsángde gǔhwàr
Jèijāng shr̀ jyāfù shōutsángde
  gǔhwàr.

Syìngchyu
Yǒu syìngchyu
Nǐ yàushr̀ yǒu syìngchyu wǒmen
  jyòu chyù.

Yǎjr̀
Bùjr̀de hén yǎjr̀
Nínde shūfáng bùjr̀de hén yǎjr̀
Nínde shūfáng gēn kètīng dōu
  bùjr̀de hén yǎjr̀.

Húdu
Yǒudyar húdu
Wǒ yǒudyar húdu
Wǒ yǒudyar húdule
Wǒ jēn yǒudyar húdule.

REPLACEMENT DRILL

Chǐng dwō chr̄ yìdyǎr tsài.
dzwò
tāng
hē

Wǒ bùsyǎng dzài mǎi shūle.
kàn
dyànyǐngr
búyàu

Wǒ dzài yě bùgěi ta chyánle.
mǎi dūngsyile
syě syìnle
bútì ta
shōushr wūdz

Wǒ gēge bùshōutsáng gǔhwàr.
Jyāfù
búmài
jyājyu

Wǒmen míngtyan búdàu tāmen jyā chyù wár.
chyù syàchí
tāmen nèr
chyù syà wéichí
syàge syīngchī

Nínde kètīngde bǎishe hén jyǎngjyou.
Nín chwānde yīshang
Nín chwān yīshang chwānde
Nín chwānde jèijyàn húngyīshang
mǎide
jèijāng syědz̀tái

RESPONSE DRILL

A. Nǐ hái yàu chr̄ shémma?
B. Wǒ yàu dwō chr̄ yìdyǎr tsài.
shwéigwǒ
dàngāu

A. Nǐ hái yàu chyù ma?
B. Wǒ dzài yě búchyùle.
búchyù kàn ta
búchyù tā nèr
búchyù gēn ta syàchí
búchyù gěi ta mǎi dūngsyi

A. Nǐ jyòujyou shōutsáng gǔhwàr ma?
B. Tā bùshōutsáng gǔhwàr, tā shōutsáng yóupyàu.
shōutsáng gǔshū
shōutsáng chàngpyār

A. Lí Lǎushr̄de shūfáng bùjr̀de dzěmma yàng?
B. Bùjr̀de hén hǎukàn.
hén jyǎngjyou
hén yǎjr̀

F. 練習

1. Complete the following sentences with dwō, dzài, or yìdyǎr: 用“多”“再”“一點兒”填空

a. ____________ gěi ta yíge lí.
b. Wó syǎng _______ gěi ta ________ chá.
c. Tā syǐhwan ________ chr̄ ________ tsài.
d. Chíng ni ______ gěi ta _______ chyán.
e. Tā yàu ______ mǎi ________ màndz.

2. State in Chinese: 用中國話說

a. There are three girls coming.
b. I will drive no more.
c. His sister-in-law needs more money.
d. I don't go out on Sundays.
e. I won't go to Japan next year.

3. Answer the following: 回答問題

   a. Lí Lǎushr̄de nèijāng fāngjwor shr̀ shéi lyóu gěi tade?
   b. Lí Lǎushr̄de fùchin shōutsáng shémma?
   c. Mài-ke hwèi syà chí ma? Tā gēn Li Lǎushr̄ dzài shémma dìfang syà chí?
   d. Lí Lǎushr̄de shūfáng bùjr̀de dzěmma yàng?
   e. Lí Lǎushr̄de syědz̀tái shang dōu bǎile syē shémma dūngsyi?

聞一多先生的書棹

（節自 聞一多全集）

忽然①一切的東西都②講話了，
忽然書桌上③怨聲④騰沸；
墨盒⑤呻吟⑥道：「我渴得要死！」
字典喊雨水淋濕了他的背。

信箋忙叫道彎痛了他的⑦腰；
鋼筆說烟灰⑧封住了他的嘴。
毛筆講⑨火柴燒了他的鬍子；
鉛筆埋怨牙刷⑩壓了他的腿。

⑪香爐大聲喊：「這些不客氣的書，
早晚一定要把你們擠倒！」
手錶嘆氣快睡⑫銹了⑬骨頭，
「風來了，風來了！」⑭稿紙打顫着叫。

⑮筆洗說他明明是裝水的，
怎麼⑯吃的慣很辣的⑰烟灰；
桌子說：「我兩年沒洗一個澡。」
墨水說：「我三天給你洗兩回。」

「甚麼主人？誰是我們的主人？」
一切的東西都大聲的叫。
「要是生活真是這樣的難過，
還不如大家都死了的好。」

主人聽了以後，笑了一笑；
「世界上的東西都得⑱各安其位。
我並沒有故意的⑲糟蹋你們，
⑳秩序不在我的能力以內。」

CHINESE-MANDARIN III

1.	一切	yíchyè	all
2.	講話	jyǎnghwà	(cf. and)
3.	怨聲	ywànshēng	complaining voice
4.	騰沸	téngfèi	boil
5.	呻吟	shēnyín	groan
6.	道	dàu	say
7.	腰	yāu	waist
8.	封	fēng	seal
9.	火柴	hwǒchái	match
10.	壓	yā	press
11.	香爐	syānglú	incense burner
12.	銹	syòu	rust
13.	骨頭	gútou	bones
14.	稿紙	gáujř	manuscript paper
15.	筆洗	bísyǐ	water bowl used on desk for rinsing writing brushes
16.	吃的慣	chr̄degwàn	cf. (Level IV, Unit 14)
17.	烟灰	yānhwēi	ashes
18.	各安其位	gèānchíwèi	each content with its own lot

19.	糟蹋	dzāuta	abuse; waste
20.	秩序	jr̀syù	order

CHINESE-MANDARIN III

ABBREVIATIONS

A	adverb
Adj	adjective
AV	auxiliary verb
CV	co-verb
dirO	direct object
IE	idiomatic expression
indO	indirect object
M	measure
MA	movable adverb
N	noun
neg	negative
Nu	number
O	object
P	particle
PE	purpose expression
proN	pronoun
PW	place word
QW	question word
RV	resultative compound verb
S	subject
Sp	specifier
TW	time word
V	verb
VO	verb-object compound

INDEX OF STRUCTURAL PATTERNS

	Level	Unit
Action, Duration of	III	5
Action, Periodic	III	5
Action-Time Relationship		
Continuous-elapsed; Continuous; Elapsed	II	8
Adverbial Use of Adjectives	II	10
Answer Forms	I	1
Omission of Subject of the Question	I	1
Repetition of Verb of the Question	I	1
Apiece, positions of	I	5
Apposition	II	2
Bǎ Construction	I	13
	II	9
	III	4
Ba, Ne, and A, Functions in a Sentence	III	9
Ba: Probability and Request with	I	6
Beì, Ràng and Jyàu, Uses of	III	15
Bǐ, Comparison	III	2
with Adjectives	I	12
with Adverbs	II	5
Bǐjyaǔ, Comparison of Degree	III	2
Bìng and Maúbing, Uses of	III	5
Bu, Negative Forms with	I	1
Bù and Meíyǒu, Uses of	III	20

Bùgwǎn		
Bùgwǎn...QW...dōu/yě...	**II**	**7**
Búlwùn		
Búlwùn...QW...dōu/yě...	**II**	**7**
Chǐlai and Syàchyu, Uses of	**III**	**11**
Chúle		
Chúle...yǐwài and double clauses with lìngwài	**II**	**9**
Chyù, Purpose of Going	**I**	**3**
S CV O V PE	**I**	**3**
S CV O PE V	**I**	**3**
S CV O V PE V	**I**	**3**
Clauses Functioning as Nouns	**I**	**14**
Command	**I**	**9**
Comparison	**I**	**14**
Counting Money (Swànchyán)	**III**	**13**
Co-Verb of Agent	**I**	**14**
Dài and Chwān, Usage of	**III**	**9**
Dānsyīn and Fāchóu, Uses of	**III**	**14**
Dàu and Wàng Compared	**II**	**2**
Dàushr...kěshr (jyòushr or búgwò)	**II**	**15**
-De in Computing	**I**	**5**
-De, Omission of	**III**	**18**
Degree, see Quantity, Quality and Degree	**II**	**14**
Děi, Contrasted with Fēi...bùkě, Yīnggāi, and Yídìng	**III**	**18**

Structural Patterns

Descriptive Complement; as Adj; with RV	II	5
-De Shŕhou, Specific Relative Time with	I	13
Dōu, Different Senses with	I	2
Dwō and Bàn, as Fractions	II	10
Dwóma, Interrogatory and Exclamatory Uses	II	8
Dyàu, Shwài, and Dǎu, Uses of	III	10
Dzài, and Tsái Compared	II	13
as 'Again' and 'Some More'	II	10
as 'Not Until' and 'Before'	II	10
Jyòu and Tsái Compared	II	13
with Place Words	I	6
Dzǎu, Wǎn; Future or Completed Action	III	1
Dzěmma, as Adverb, Verb, or Specifier	II	8
Dzěmma nèmma/jèmma, in Interrogative	II	8
Er̀ and Lyǎng, Usage of	III	13
Eŕchyě, as a Conjunction	III	12
-fǎr, Usage of	III	1
-Gè, Scope of Application as a Measure	III	2
Gěi, the Uses of	II	13
Gèng and Dzwèi, Degree of Comparison with	I	10
Gèng, Dzwèi, and Yiyang, Usage of	III	9
gwò, Experience with	I	10
Háishr and Hwòshr Compared	III	8
Hǎu, Accomplishment of a Condition	III	1

Hǎusyàng, as Verb or Movable Adverb	II	12
Hwàn and Byàn Compared	III	8
Inclusiveness and Exclusiveness	I	13
Indefinite numbers	I	15
-Je, Continuance with	I	13
Continuation of Action or Result	III	3
Jèmma (Dzèmma), Preceding the Verb	II	8
Jǐge and Dwōshau, Usage of	III	13
Jřyàu... Jyòu, Usage of	III	12
Jù, Function as a Transitive Verb	III	1
Jyè, Lend and Borrow	II	11
Jyòu and Lau, Uses of	III	19
and Tsái Compared	II	13
and Tsái Compared	III	7
as Adverb Meaning 'Only' and 'Then'	II	11
Dzài, and Tsái Compared	III	7
Indicating Sequence of Events	III	7
Kělyán and Kěsyǐ, Uses of	III	14
-Le, Changed Status with	I	4
Changed Status with (Neg. Verb)	I	5
Completed Action with	I	3
Imminent Action with	I	7
Imminent Change of Status with	I	6
Measured Object and	I	15
with Adjectives	I	4
with Auxiliary Verbs	I	4
Lí, Distance with	I	11
Lìngwài, Lìngwài hái yǒu; Shr̀ lìngwài Nu-M-N	II	6

Structural Patterns

Location, Words/Terms of	III	3
Lyán...Dōu, Usage of	III	6
Lyán...dōu/yě...	II	14
Manner, with an Object	I	9
Measures, Omission of yi; Adj Insertion; General Review of	II	3
Méi, Incomplete Action with	I	3
Negative Form with	I	2
Modification with Adjectives	I	5
Modifying Clauses, review of	II	4
Money, Sums of	I	5
More, Various Means of Expression	III	20
Multiples and Fractions: Bǐ, Fēnjr, Yǒu, Shr̀	II	5
Must and Mustn't	II	11
Nde N	I	2
Ne, Continuance with	I	6
Questions with	I	8
Nèmma, Preceding Verb	II	8
Néng, Kéyi and Hwèi, Comparisons	III	6
N N	I	1
N Ne Question Form	I	4
N Sp-M N	I	6
Numbers, From One to Hundred Million	III	13

Number-Measure as Predicate	II	4
Nu-M N	I	4
Numbers, Ordinal	I	11
Object, A Sentence as Object	I	1
Omission of	I	3
Objects, Multiple	I	4
O S V	I	2
ProN N	I	6
ProN (N) PW	I	4
Pwò and Hwài, Uses of	III	19
PW Yǒu N	I	3
Quality, see Quantity, Quality and Degree	II	14
Quantity, Quality and Degree, Generalizations of	II	14
Question Forms, Affirmative Statement with Ma	I	1
Choice between Two Predicates	I	2
Choice between Two Subjects	I	2
Emphatic (Choice-Type)	I	8
Negative Statement with Ma	I	1
Question with Question Word	I	1
Simple Choice-Type Question	I	1
Question Forms of Completed and Incomplete Action	I	3
Question Words: Expressing Everyone, everything, No One, Nothing, Wherever;	II	7
Extended Uses of	III	17
Types of; with Negative Adverbs	II	6

Structural Patterns

Question Words in a Sentence I 3
  Question and Answer I 3
  Without Question Suffix Ma I 3

Reduplicated Adjectives
  as Adverbs when the Adj is disyllabic (XXYYde) II 2

Reduplicated Functive Verb II 1

Reduplicated Measures II 3

Reduplicated Number-Measures II 4

Reduplication of Verbs III 8

Resultative Verb Endings
  Accomplishment or Completion of the Action II 3
  Actual, Directional and Potential Types II 1
  Formation of
  -jáu, -jyàn, -dàu, -wán, -lyǎu, -chǐ, -lái,
    -chyù, -Adj III 3
  V-chilai and V-chi N lai II 4

S A Adj I 1

S Adj I 1

S CV PW (N) V I 3

S Dzwò N Chyù (Lái) I 7

Shěngde, Usage of III 1

Shr̀ bushr, in Forming Interrogative Statements II 1

Shr̀...de Construction I 12
  Omission of Shr̀; V-O-de and V-de-O types II 7

Shr̀, for Emphasis III 12

Shwō...Jyòu, Usage of III 14

Similarity and Dissimilarity I 15

Sp-M-N I 3

Subject, Omission of I 3

S V Dàu. . . Chyù (Lái) I 11

S Vde Adj I 8

(S) Vde N I 9

S V Dzài PW Construction I 12

S V indO dirO I 5

S Vle O, Jyòu I 7

S V N I 1

S V O I 2
  Variation in Action-Receiver Relationship II 9

S V PE I 6

Swàn, Uses of III 6

Syàng: as Adj, Verb or Auxiliary Verb II 12
  Uses of III 4

S YiV (O), (S) Jyòu V (O) I 8

Tā (它), The Rare Appearance of III 19

Time, Inquiring about Time of Day I 7
  Larger Unit of Time I 7
  Telling Time by the Clock I 7
  Time-When; Time-Spent; Movable Adverbs II 6

Topic of a Sentence, Prestated II 15

Tsái, as 'Not Until' III 7
  Usage in Contradiction III 7
  Uses of II 12
Tsái, Jyòu; as 'Only' III 7

Structural Patterns

Tsúng: Review Level I Usages; with Time Words	II	1
Tsúng...Chǐ, Usage of	III	11
Tsúng...Dàu, Usage of	III	11
Tsúng...Lái Pattern	I	6
-Ts̀z and -Hwéi, Occasion and Occurrence with	I	12
Vde Sp-M N	I	9
VOde VO, VOde VO 'Everyone is engaged in some activity'	II	14
Wèi, Tì, and Gěi, Uses of	III	10
Wúlwùn, Wúlwùn...QW...yě/dōu...	II	7
Yàu...le Construction, Usage of	III	12
Yàushr...jyòu...Structure	I	10
Yídìng, Uses of	III	18
Yìdyǎr and Yǒu Yìdyǎr, Uses of	III	11
Yìdyǎr, Position in the Sentence	II	12
Yìdyǎr or -de Dwō, Degree of Comparison with	I	13
Yi(V)...jyou, Sequence of Action	III	2
Yòu, Dzài and Hái, Uses of	III	16
Yǒu, in Measurement	I	11
Omission of Subject with	I	4
Yǒu Méiyou in Negation of Completed Action	II	4
Ywè...ywè..., Uses of	III	5

INDEX OF VOCABULARY
INTRODUCED IN LEVELS I, II, AND III

a	啊	sentence suffix; exclamation	P	I	1	
ài	愛	like to; love to	AV	I	4	
ài	___	oh; ah	IE	I	14	
aìchíngpyāndz	愛情片子	love-story movie	N	I	10	
aìgwó	愛國	patriotic	Adj	III	17	
àiya	___ ___	exclamation	IE	I	14	
àn	___	according to; follow (regulation)	CV	II	2	
ānjìng	___ ___	quiet; peaceful	Adj	III	1	
Āsz̄pǐlíng	___ ___ 匹 ___	Aspirin	N	III	5	
ba	吧	sentence suffux, probability or request	P	I	6	
bā	八	eight	Nu	I	3	S
-bǎ	把	measure for spoon, knife, fork, etc.	M	I	6	
bǎ	把	take hold of	CV	I	13	
Bàba	爸爸	Daddy (father)	N	I	6	
bádyàu	拔掉	remove; pull off	RV	III	5	
báhau	八號	eighth (the eighth day)	TW	I	3	
bái	白	in vain	A	II	13	
bǎi	擺	set, put	V	I	6	

Báidwèi	白隊	white (uniformed) team	N	I	14	
báifǎr	擺法兒	arrangement	IE	III	1	
baìfeì	白費	spend in vain; waste	V	III	14	
Báigūng	白宮	White House	N	II	13	
bǎihwògūngsz̄	百貨公司	department store	N	II	11	
bàinyán	拜年	go to extend New Year's greeting	V VO	I	8	
bǎishe	擺 ___	display; interior decoration; furnishing	N	III	20	
bān	___	carry; move	V	II	11	S
bǎn	版	section (of newspaper)	N	III	16	
-bàn	半	half	Nu	I	5	
bàn	___	manage; carry out	V	II	4	
-bàng	___	pound	M	I	11	
bàng	___	excellent	Adj	II	5	
bāngjù	幫 ___	help	N	III	6	
bāngmáng	幫忙	help; give a hand	V (VO)	II	12	
bàngūngshr̀	辦公室	office	N	II	13	
bānshang	___ 上	in class	N	II	3	

bàntyān	半天	one-half day; quite a while	A	III	3	
bànwán	辦完	finish doing	RV	II	15	
-bāu	包	package; bag	M	III	2	
báu	薄	thin	Adj	I	5	
bǎu	飽	full (for eating)	Adj	I	4	S
bàu	報	newspaper	N	I	3	S
bàu	抱	hold; embrace	V	III	3	
bàuchyàn	抱 ___	sorry (polite apology)	Adj	III	11	
bàugàu	報告	report	V N	III III	2 10	
bāugwǒ	包 ___	parcel	N	I	11	
báusyǎn	___ ___	insure	V (VO)	I	11	
Báywe	八月	August (eight-month)	TW	I	3	S
Bāywèjyé	八月節	The Festival of the Eighth Month (Mid-Autumn Festival)	N	III	17	
-bēi	杯	cup; glass	M	I	4	
bèi	___	by (indicates agent of action)	CV	I	14	
bèi	背	recite; memorize	V	II	4	
-bèi	倍	times (multiplication)	M	II	5	

běi (byār)	北	north	PW	II	2	
Bēidwōfēn	___多___	Beethoven	N	III	12	
bēijyù	___劇	tragedy	N	I	10	
bèisyīn	背心	t-shirt	N	III	13	
-běn	本	volume (for books)	M	I	5	
bèn	___	clumsy; stupid	Adj	II	7	S
bèngbengtyàu-tyaude	___ ___跳跳的	jumping up and down	Adj	II	5	
běnlái	本來	originally	A (MA)	II	3	
bǐ	比	compare with	CV	I	12	
-bǐ	___	stroke (brush stroke)	M	II	8	S
bídz	___子	nose	N	I	14	S
bǐjì	筆記	notes	N	II	14	
bǐjìběr	筆記本兒	notebook	N	I	5	
bǐjyǎu	比___	comparatively	A	III	2	
bìng	病	sickness	N	I	13	
bīngbàng	___ ___	popsicle	N	I	9	
bìngbù-	並不	not...as someone expected	A	II	7	
bìngbúshr̀	並不是	not at all	IE	III	10	
bǐnggān	___乾	biscuit	N	I	8	

Vocabulary

bīngjilín	___ ___ ___	ice cream	N	I	10	
bìngrén	病人	patient	N	I	13	
bīngshwěi	___水	ice water	N	I	4	S
bǐsài	比賽	match, contest	N	I	14	
bìshǔ	___ ___	escape summer	V (VO)	I	15	
bǐtǔng	筆筒	Chinese pen holder (like a vase)	N	III	20	
bù	不	not, no	A	I	1	
-bù	步	step	M	II	8	
bù	布	cloth	N	III	15	
búbì	不必	unnecessarily	A	II	4	
búdà	不大	not too	A	I	14	
búdàn. . . yě (hái)	不___…也	not only. . . but also. . .	A	II	9	
Bùdān	___ ___	Bhutan	N	III	4	
bùdélyǎu	不得了	It's awful	IE	III	5	
bùdzěmma-yàng	不怎麼樣	not so (good, hot, etc.)	IE	III	8	
bùgǎndāng	___ ___ ___	thanks (in response to a compliment)	IE	II	15	
bùgwǎn	不管	no matter how (when, what or where)	A	II	7	

búgwò	不過	but; however	A	I	9	
bùjí	不___	more than	A	II	5	
bùjr̀	佈置	decorate	V	II	7	
bùjr̀hǎu	佈置好	finish decorating	RV	II	7	
bújyòushr	不就是	isn't it...	IE	II	11	
búkèchi	不客氣	rude	IE	III	15	
búkwèi	不___	unashamedly; deservingly	A	II	13	
búlwùn	不論	no matter how (when, what, or where)	A	II	7	
bùmén	部門	section; department	N	III	6	
bùshǎu	不少	quite a few	Adj	I	5	S
bùsyíngle	不行了	gone bad; ruined	IE	III	5	
bútài	不太	not too	A	II	4	
bútswò	不___	nice; not bad	Adj	I	4	
(Nà) búyaujǐn	不要緊	that's nothing; never mind	IE	I	3	
búyùng	不用	not necessarily	A	I	13	
bwō	___	dial	V	II	4	
bwófù	伯父	uncle	N	II	1	
bwōli	玻璃	glass	N	III	9	
bwómǔ	伯母	aunt	N	I	7	

bwōsùng	___送	broadcast	V	III 2
bwówùgwǎn	___物館	museum	N	III 6
-byàn	遍	for rounds (once, twice, etc., over completely)	M	II 14
byàn	___	change	V	III 7
byàngwà	___ ___	change (mind, plans, etc.)	IE	III 11
-byār	邊兒	-side	M	I 12
byǎu	表	form	N	III 5
byǎu	錶	watch	N	III 9
byǎugē	表 ___	cousin (aunt's son)	N	III 20
byáuyǎn	表演	perform	V	I 9
byé	別	other; different	Adj	I 5
byé	別	don't (contracted form of búyàu)	AV	I 7
byé	別	pin	V	II 9
byéjēn	別 ___	brooch; pin	N	II 9
byéjyǎu	___脚	poor (in quality)	Adj	III 2
byékàn...	別看	don't (simply) notice...; don't just say...	IE	III 3
byé kāi wánsyàu	別開玩笑	don't joke with me; quit kidding	IE	I 10

byé kèchi	别客氣	don't be too polite	IE	I	8	
byé máng a	别忙___	don't hurry; take it easy	IE	I	8	
byènyou	___扭	uncooperative	Adj	III	11	
byérén	别人	other person	N	II	8	
byétíle	别提了	Don't bring it up; Let's not talk about it anymore	IE	III	14	
chá	茶	tea	N	I	8	
chà	差	lack; be short	V	I	7	
chàbudwō	差不多	almost; about	IE	I	14	
chàbyé	差别	difference	N	I	14	
cháchulai	___出來	find out	RV	II	4	
chàdeywǎn	差的遠	far from the point; greatly wanting	IE	III	20	
cháng	長	long (length)	Adj	I	15	
-chǎng	場	unit measure for performance and sports	M	II	5	
chàng (gēr)	唱	sing	V (VO)	I	9	
chángchang	常常	often; usually	A	I	2	
Chángchéng	長城	Great Wall	PW	I	15	
chángdau	___到	succeed to taste	RV	II	8	S

chángdwǎn	長短	length (long-short)	N	II	14	
Chángjyāng	長 ___	Yangtze River	N	III	4	
chánglúng	長龍	long-dragon (the long waiting line)	N	III	13	
chàngpyār	唱片兒	phonograph record	N	I	2	
chángtú	長 ___	long distance	N	II	4	
chāu	抄	copy	V	II	14	
cháu	朝	face	CV	III	19	
chǎu	吵	make noise; quarrel	V	II	7	
cháudài	朝代	dynasty	N	III	6	
chǎufàn	___ 飯	fried rice	N	I	4	S
chǎujyà	吵架	quarrel	V	III	8	
chǎumyàn	___ ___	fried noodle	N	I	4	S
chāuwán	抄完	finish copying	RV	II	14	
chàyidyǎr	差一點兒	almost; missing by a little bit	IE	III	14	
chē	車	wheeled vehicle	N	I	7	
Chén	___	a common Chinese surname	N	I	3	
chèndzǎur	___ 早兒	while it's still early; while there is still time	A	III	5	
chēng	___	weigh	V	I	11	
chéng	城	city	N	I	6	

chéngji	—— ——	grades (record of accomplishment)	N	II	14	
chénlyè	—— ——	display	V	III	6	
chénmèn	—— ——	dull	Adj	III	11	
chènshān	—— ——	shirt	N	II	11	S
chī	七	seven	Nu	I	3	S
chí	——	ride	V	III	7	
chì	氣	angry	Adj	II	5	S
chìchē	汽車	automobile	N	I	11	
chìchyóu	氣球	balloon	N	III	13	
chígwài	奇怪	strange	Adj	I	14	
chījūngyígè	其中一個	one of them	IE	III	5	
chīkǎu	期考	semester examination	N	II	14	
chǐlai	起來	get up	RV	II	2	
chímǎ	起馬	the least; at the beginning level	A	III	8	
chīnchi	親 ——	relatives	N	II	6	
chín chí shū hwà	琴棋書畫	Chinese lute, chess, calligraphy and painting (the four cultural activities of the Chinese literati)	N	III	20	
chīng	輕	light (weight)	Adj	II	1	
chǐng	請	please; invite; request	V	I	5	

chǐng	請	treat	V	I	9	
chīngchu	清楚	clear	Adj	III	10	
Chīngdǎu	___ ___	Tsingtau (a city in Shantung province)	PW	I	15	
chǐng dzwò	請坐	please sit down	IE	I	8	
chìngjù	慶祝	celebrate	V	III	17	
chīngjùng	輕重	weight (light-heavy)	N	II	14	
chǐngkè	請客	treat	V VO	I	10	
chīngsūng	輕鬆	light; light-hearted	Adj	III	11	
chíngsying	情形	condition; situation	N	III	16	
chīngtsài	___菜	vegetable; green vegetable	N	I	4	
chǐngwèn	請問	may I ask you	IE	I	7	
chíshŕ	其實	as a matter of fact	A	II	7	
chìsyàngtái	氣___台	weather bureau	N	III	7	
Chíywe	七月	July (seven-month)	TW	I	3	S
chǒubāgwài	___八怪	ugly devil	IE	III	15	
chōuti	___ ___	drawer	N	I	6	
chr̄	吃	eat	V	I	4	
chr̄bǎu	吃飽	eat until full	RV	II	3	S

chr̄delyǎu	吃的了	be able to eat up	RV	II	3	S
chr̄fan	吃飯	eat (meals)	V VO	I	4	
chr̄gwāng	吃 ___	eat up	RV	II	9	
-chū	___	unit measure for play	M	II	10	
chūchǎn	出 ___	produce	V	III	4	
chūchǎng	出場	come out to the field	V VO	I	14	
chūchyu	出去	go out	V	I	10	S
chúfáng	___ 房	kitchen	N	III	1	
chúfēi	除非	unless	MA	III	17	
chū fēngtou	出風頭	show off	IE	III	19	
chūlai	出來	come out	V	I	10	S
chúle... (yǐwài)	除了	besides...; except...	A	II	9	
chūmén (chūmér)	出門兒	go out (of doors)	VO	II	5	
chūshr̀	出事	something (bad) happens	IE	III	9	
chwān	穿	wear; put on (clothes, shoes)	V	I	7	
chwán	___	pass	V	I	14	
chwán	船	ship	N	I	12	
chwáng	床	bed	N	III	1	

chwānghu	窗___	window	N	I	12	
chwāngkǒur	窗口兒	window; opening of a window	N	III	19	
chwānglyár	窗___	curtains	N	II	2	
chwán-gūngsz̄	船公司	steamship company	N	II	15	
chwānhǎu	穿好	get dressed	RV	II	11	
chwānjǐn	穿緊	wear tightly	RV	II	9	
chwānshang	穿上	wear	RV	II	2	S
-chwàr	___	a string of	M	II	7	
chwēi	___	play (a musical instrument by blowing)	V	I	9	
chyán	錢	money	N	I	5	
chyán (tou)	前	front	PW	I	12	
chyāndz	簽字	sign name	VO	III	12	
chyándz		pliers	N	III	19	
chyáng	牆	wall	N	III	1	
chyángdzǒu	___走	seize and run; rob	RV	I	14	
chyánnyan	前年	the year before last year	TW	I	12	
chyánpái	前排	front row	N	I	10	
chyānbǐ	___筆	pencil	N	I	5	

chyántyan	前天	the day before yesterday	TW	I	2	S
chyānwàn	千萬	must, make sure	A	II	11	
chyáu	橋	bridge	N	III	3	
chyáupái	橋牌	bridge (card game)	N	III	7	
chyē	切	cut; slice	V	II	12	
chyóu	球	ball	N	I	14	
chyóuchǎng	球場	stadium	N	II	5	
chyóusaì	球賽	ball game	N	II	4	
chyǔ	取	get; claim	V	II	1	
chyù	去	go	V	I	3	
chyúndz	__子	skirt	N	II	9	
chyūyù	__ __	area (zone)	N	II	4	
chywánjyā	全家	whole family	N	II	5	
chywánshēn	全身	whole body	N	III	5	
-chywār	__	times (rounds)	M	II	3	
chywē	缺	miss; be short of	V	III	11	
dá	答	answer	V	II	12	
dǎ	打	knit	V	I	6	
dǎ	打	to call (telephone)	V	I	7	S
dǎ	打	hit	V	I	9	
dà	大	big; large	Adj	I	5	

dàgài	大 ___	probably	A (MA)	I	3
dàhwǒr	大 ___	all, everybody in a group	N	III	9
dài	帶	take or bring along	V	I	8
dài	戴	wear (hat, flower, etc.)	V	III	9
dàibyǎu	___ ___	representative	N	III	2
dàichyóu	帶球	carry ball	V VO	I	14
dàifu	大 ___	doctor (medical)	N	I	13
dàlǐtáng	大禮堂	auditorium	N	III	16
dàiyu	___ 遇	treatment	N	III	8
dǎjēn	打 ___	have a shot (injection)	V VO	I	13
dǎ jwàr	打轉兒	turn in circles	V	III	3
dàjyā	大家	everyone; all	N	II	14
dàngāu	蛋糕	cake	N	II	12
dāngrán	___ 然	of course	A	I	9
dānsyīn	___ 心	worry; be concerned	V	II	14
dǎswan	打算	plan	V	I	15
Dàsyīyáng	大西洋	Atlantic Ocean	N	III	4
dàsywé	大學	university	N	II	14
dà tàiyang	大太 ___	very sunny	IE	III	7

dàu	到	'go to', together with chyù	CV	I	3	
dàu	到	arrive	V	I	7	
dàu	倒	on the contrary; unexpectedly	A	II	9	
-dàu	道	for questions	M	II	14	
dāuchā	___ ___	knife and fork	N	I	4	
dàudǐ	到___	really; exactly	A	II	9	
dǎuméi	倒___	bad luck	IE	I	14	
dǎushr̄	___師	counsellor	N	II	3	
dàushr	倒是	although	A	II	15	
dàu shŕhou	到時候	when the time comes	IE	II	12	
dàyī	大衣	overcoat	N	I	2	S
-de	的	noun suffix which makes a modifier out of the noun	P	I	2	
dé	得	get; gain	V	II	5	
Dégwo	___國	Germany (cf. Unit 1)	PW	I	2	S
děi	得	must	AV	I	7	
dēng	___	lamp; lights	N	II	7	
děng	等	wait	V	I	7	
děngyu	等於	equal to	V	II	13	
Déwén	___文	German	N	I	2	S

Vocabulary

déyì	得意	attain one's wish; be successful	IE	III	8	
dì-	第	ordinalizing prefix to numbers	P	I	11	
dìdi	___ ___	younger brother	N	I	6	
dīdīdādāde	滴滴答答	drip and drop (the sound of dripping	A	III	14	
dìfang	地方	place	N	I	15	
dìjř	地址	address	N	III	18	
dìlǐ	地理	geography	N	III	4	
dìng	___	subscribe	V	III	16	
dǐngdwō	___ 多	most	A	III	11	
dīngdz	___ 子	nail	N	III	19	
dìnghwūn	___ 婚	engage; betroth	V	III	15	
dìngsyalai	定下來	calm down	RV	II	12	
dìsyíng	地形	topography	N	III	4	
dìtú	地圖	map	N	III	4	
dōu	都	all, both; in all cases	A	I	2	
dú	讀	read	V	III	16	
dùdz	___	stomach	N	II	6	
dūng (byār)	東	east	PW	II	2	
dǔng	懂	know; understand	V	II	8	
dùng	動	move	V	II	8	S

dùng	洞	hole	N	III	10	
dùngdzwò	動作	movement; motion	N	III	3	
dūngsyi	東西	thing	N	I	5	
dùngwuywán	動物園	zoo	N	I	7	
dwǎn	短	short	Adj	II	9	
-dwàn	—	section; paragraph	M	II	8	S
dwǎnpyān syǎushwō	短篇小說	short story	N	III	16	
Dwānwǔjyé	—午節	The Festival of the Fifth Day of the Fifth Month	N	III	17	
-dwēi	堆	pile	M	II	3	
dwèi	對	correct; right	Adj	I	14	
-dwèi	隊	team	M	I	14	
dwèi	對	check	V	II	1	
dwèi	對	to; towards	CV	II	2	S
dwèi	對	face	V	III	3	
dwèibuchǐ	對不起	'I cannot face you'	RV	II	2	
dwèibujù	對不住	excuse me; I'm sorry	IE	I	8	
dwèifāng	對方	the opposite party	N	III	15	
dwèile	對了	that's right	IE	I	4	
dwèiywán	隊員	member of team	N	I	14	

dwō	多	many; much	Adj	I	5	
dwō	多	more	A	II	10	S
dwǒ	___	dodge; hide	V	III	7	
dwōbàr	多半兒	mostly	MA	III	8	
dwōjyǒu?	多___?	how long?	TW	II	10	
dwó(me)	多	very much	A	I	9	
dwóma (dwóme)	多___	how	QW	II	6	
dwōshau	多少	how much? how many?	Nu	I	5	
dwōshǎu	多少	more or less	A	II	14	
dwōsyè	多謝	many thanks	IE	III	18	
-dwùn	頓	unit measure for meal	M	II	6	
-dyǎn	點	o'clock; hour	M	I	7	
dyàn	___	put on bottom; line	V	III	7	
dyànbàu	電報	telegraph	N	II	4	
dyàndēng	電___	electric light	N	II	1	S
dyànhwà	電話	telephone	N	I	7	S
dyànhwà běndz	電話本子	telephone directory	N	III	18	
dyànhwàjyú	電話___	telephone office	N	II	4	
dyànshr̀	電___	television	N	I	2	

dyànshr̀jī	電 —— ——	television set	N	III	19	
dyǎnsyin	點心	snack; refreshment	N	II	11	
dyànyǐngr	電 —— 兒	movie	N	I	10	
dyànywán	—— ——	clerk, salesman	N	I	5	S
dyàu	——	drop	V	III	10	
dyàuchátwán	—— —— 團	investigating team; fact-finding committee	N	III	2	
dyàuyú	釣魚	fish	V	III	3	
dyédz	—— 子	saucer	N	I	6	
dyōu	——	lose; be lost	V	I	12	
dz̀	字	character; letter	N	II	7	S
dzài	再	again (in the future)	A	I	3	
dzài	在	'be at' a point in space or time	CV	I	3	
dzài	在	be at; in or on (cf. Unit 3)	V	I	6	
dzài	再	then	A	I	7	
dzàijyàn	再見	good-bye; see you again	IE	I	1	
dzájr̀	—— ——	magazine	N	I	3	S
dzànchéng	—— ——	approve; vote yes	V	III	2	
dzāng	——	dirty	Adj	II	5	S

dzǎu	早	early, good morning	IE	I	1	
dzǎudzāurde	早早的	early	A	II	2	
dzǎufàn	早飯	breakfast	N	I	7	
dzāugāu(le)	___ 糕	what a mess; too bad	IE	II	11	
dzǎushang	早上	morning	TW	I	2	S
dzāuta	___ ___	waste	V	III	8	
dzáuwǎn	早晚	morning and evening	TW	II	15	
dzěmma	怎麼	how, in what way; why, how is that	A	I	4	
dzěmma bàn ne	怎麼辦呢	what shall I do	IE	I	15	
dzěmma gǎude	怎麼___的	what happened	IE	II	12	
dzěmma jèmma	怎麼這麼	why so...	IE	I	10	
dzěmmayàng	怎麼樣	how about...; what do you think	IE	II		3
(Nà shr̀) dzěmma yīhwéi shr̀ a	怎麼一回事___	what is the matter with you	IE	II	8	
dz̀dyǎn	字___	dictionary	N	I	3	
dzēngjyā	___ 加	increase	V	II	10	
dz̀hwà	字畫	calligraphy and painting	N	III	20	

dz̀jǐ	自己	self	N	II	1	
dzǒu	走	walk; go; leave	V	I	8	
dzǒulù	走路	on foot	A	II	2	S
dz̀rán	自然	natural science	N	I	2	
dz̄shr̀	— —	pose	N	III	8	
dz̆syī	仔細	in detail; carefully	A	II	13	
dz̀syí	自習	self-study	V	III	16	
dz̀syíngchē	自行車	bicycle	N	III	7	
dzū	租	rent	V	III	1	
dzúchyóu	足球	football	N	II	4	
dzǔfù	祖父	grandfather	N	II	6	
dzǔjr̄	— —	organize	V	III	2	
dzúmǔ	祖母	grandmother	N	II	6	
dzǔng	總	all the time	A	II	3	
Dzúngtǔng	總統	President	N	II	13	
dzwěi (ba)	— —	mouth	N	I	14	S
dzwèi	最	the most, -est	A	I	10	
dzwèihǎu	最好	had better	A	II	7	
dzwèihòu	最後	last	Adj	II	9	
dzwèijìn	最近	recently; lately	TW	II	10	
dzwèishǎu	最少	least	A	III	1	
dzwò	做	do	V	I	2	

dzwò	坐	sit	V	I	3	
dzwò	坐	ride, take (transportation)	CV	I	7	
dzwǒbyār	左邊兒	left (side)	PW	I	6	
dzwòchilai	做起來	begin to do	RV	II	8	S
dzwòdau	做到	succeed to take (sit)	RV	II	8	S
dzwòhǎu	做好	complete (doing something)	RV	II	3	S
dzwòjyǎ	作假	forge; falsify	V	III	12	
dzwò léng-bǎndèng	坐冷__ __	be ignored (sit on a cold bench)	IE	II	9	
dzwòpǐn	作品	work; created work (writing, sculpture, etc.)	N	III	16	
dzwòr	坐兒	seat	N	I	12	
dzwòsya	坐下	sit down	RV	II	2	S
dzwótyan	昨天	yesterday	TW	I	2	S
dz̀yándz̀yǔ	自__自__	talk to oneself	IE	III	9	
é	__	goose	N	II	6	
è	餓	hungry	Adj	I	4	
éi	__	oh; ah; eh; hey	IE	II	11	
èr	二	two	Nu	I	1	S
ěrdwō	__ __	ear	N	I	14	S
érdz	兒子	son	N	III	10	

Èrywe	二月	February (two-month)	TW	I	3	S
fā	發	issue; distribute	V	III	16	
fá	—	penalize	V	I	14	
fābyǎu	發表	publish	V	III	16	
fāchóu	發 —	worry	V	III	13	
Fàgwo	法國	France (cf. Unit 1)	PW	I	2	S
fājǎn	發 —	develop	V	III	4	
fālěng	發冷	have chill	VO	III	5	
fāmíng	發明	invention	N	III	6	
fán	—	boring	Adj	III	14	
fàn	飯	meal; cooked rice	N	I	4	
fànfǎ	犯法	violate law	V	III	12	
fāng	方	square table	N	III	20	
fàng	放	put	V	I	12	
fāngbyan	方便	convenient	Adj	II	1	
fángdzū	房租	rent (on house, room)	N	III	1	
fángdz	房子	house	N	II	2	S
fàngjyà	放 —	have a vacation	VO	I	15	
fángjyān	房間	room	N	III	1	
fāngmyàn	方面	aspect	N	III	6	
fàngsya	放下	put down	RV	II	2	

fàngsyīn	放心	rest assured	Adj	I	12	
fàngwǎr	飯館兒	restaurant	N	I	4	
fǎnjèng	反正	anyway; anyhow	A	II	11	
fàntīng	飯——	dining room; cafeteria	N	I	4	S
fānyì	翻譯	translate	V	III	2	
fāshāu	發——	have a fever	V	I	13	
fāsyàn	發現	discover	V	III	15	
Fàwén	法文	French	N	I	2	S
fāyīn	發音	pronunciation sound	N	III	2	
fēi	飛	fly	V	I	12	
fèi	——	spend (time or effort)	V	II	7	
fēicháng	非常	extraordinarily	A	III	10	
féidzàu	—— ——	soap	N	II	11	S
fēijī	飛機	airplane	N	I	12	
fēijīchǎng	飛機場	airport	N	II	1	
fèishr	——事	cause trouble	VO	II	2	
-fēn	分	cent	M	I	5	
-fēn	分	minute	M	I	7	
fēn	分	divide	V	III	6	
-fēng	封	unit measure for letters	M	I	11	

fēng	風	wind	N	II	15	
fēngjǐn	風景	landscape	N	I	12	
fēngshōu	＿ ＿	good harvest	N	III	17	
fēngsú	風俗	custom	N	III	17	
-fēnjr-	分＿	formula of fractions	Nu	II	5	S
fēnshǒu	分手	leave; part	VO	II	11	
fēnshù	分數	mark; grade	N	II	14	
fēnshùdār	分數單兒	transcript; report card	N	II	14	
-fēr	分兒	point	M	I	14	
fǒudzé	＿ ＿	otherwise	MA	III	17	
-fù	＿	unit measure (a pair or a set) for curtains, scrolls, etc.	M	II	2	
fùchin	父親	father	N	I	15	
fùjìn	＿近	neighborhood	N	I	11	
fùmǔ	父母	parents	N	I	15	
fùsyí	＿習	review	V	III	4	
gǎi	改	change; correct	V	II	7	
gàijāng	＿章	affix seal	VO	III	12	
gǎityān	改天	some other day	TW	III	11	
gànmá	＿ ＿	what for	IE	II	13	
gān	乾	dry	Adj	III	4	

gǎn	趕	keep up with; rush	V	II	4	
gǎn	趕	rush; hurry to complete some work	V	III	11	
gàn	—	do	V	I	6	
gānbēi	乾杯	bottoms up (drain the wine cup)	IE	III	15	
Gǎnēnjyé	感恩節	Thanksgiving	N	II	6	
gāng(gāng)	—	just this minute	A	I	10	
gāngbǐ	—筆	fountain pen	N	I	5	
gāngtsái	—才	just a moment ago	A	I	9	
gānjing	乾—	clean	Adj	II	5	S
gǎnmàu	感—	flu	N	I	13	
gǎnshang	趕上	keep up with	RV	II	10	
gǎnshang	趕上	catch up	V	III	7	
gàn shémma	—甚麼	why	IE	I	8	
gánsyǎng	感想	thought; reflection	N	III	16	
gǎnsyè	感謝	appreciate; thank	V	II	3	
gāu	高	high	Adj	I	13	
gāusù-gūnglù	高—公路	freeway	N	II	2	
gàusung	告訴	tell	V	II	3	

gāusyìng	高興	delightful; enjoyable	Adj	I	8	
gāutsáishēng	高____生	highly talented student	N	II	10	
gāuywán	高原	plateau	N	III	4	
-ge	個	general measure for person or thing	M	I	3	
ge-	各	each	Adj	III	6	
gē	隔	separate; to be separated by	V	III	4	
gēbei	____ ____	arm	N	II	8	S
gébì	隔____	next door	PW	II	2	
gèchù	各處	every place	PW	II	3	
gèdz	個子	height; physical stature	N	I	14	
gēge	____ ____	elder brother	N	I	6	
gěi	給	give	V	I	5	
gěi	給	for; to (for benefit of, cf. Unit 5)	CV	I	8	
gěi	給	by (indicates agent of action	CV	I	14	
gējyù	歌劇	opera (musical play)	N	II	10	
gēn	跟	be with; follow	CV	I	4	
gēn	跟	follow	V	III	5	

gèng	更	still more; even; -er	A	I	10	
gèwèi	各位	you gentlemen (addressing a group)	N	III	2	
gǒu	—	dog	N	II	6	S
gòu	夠	enough	Adj	I	9	
gǔ	—	drum	N	I	9	
gǔdài	古代	ancient time	N	III	6	
gǔjwāng	古裝片子	ancient costume	N	III	11	
gūngdzwò	工作	work	V	II	10	
gūngfu	功—	leisure time	N	I	7	
gūnggùng	公—	public	Adj	I	11	
gūngke	功課	study; courses	N	II	4	
gūngkèbyǎu	功課表	class schedule	N	II	3	
gūngsyi	——	congratulate	V	I	8	
gūngyè	工業	industry	N	III	6	
gūngywán	公園	park	N	III	3	
gùshr	故事	story	N	I	10	
gǔshŕhòur	古時候	long time ago; once upon a time	TW	III	10	
gùyì	故意	on purpose	A	III	14	
gwà	掛	hang	V	II	7	

gwàhǎu	掛好	finish hanging	RV	II	7
gwàhàu	掛號	register	VO	I	11
gwǎi	拐	turn	V	III	1
gwài	怪	blame	V	II	15
gwàibudé	怪不得	no wonder	IE	III	5
gwáijyǎur	拐角兒	street corner	N	III	9
gwài kělyánde	怪可__的	very pitiful	IE	II	9
gwǎn	管	take care of	V	II	6
gwàng	__	look around	V	II	11
gwǎngbwo dyàntái	__ __電台	radio broadcasting station	N	III	2
Gwāng Hwá R̀ Baù	__華日報	Gwang Hwa Daily Newspaper	N	III	16
gwàngwan	觀__	visit all; see all	RV	II	13
gwānnyàn	觀念	concept; idea	N	III	17
gwānsyi	關係	relation	N	III	4
gwānsyīn	關心	concern	V	II	3
gwānyú	關於	concerning; about	CV	III	6
gwàshang	掛上	hang up	RV	II	7
gwèi	貴	expensive	Adj	I	5
gwèidz	__子	locker; cabinet	N	II	3
gwēijyu	__ __	rule; regulation	N	II	2

gwèisyìng	貴 —	what is your (sur)name	IE	I	7
-gwo	國	-country; -nation	PW	I	2
-gwo	過	experiential suffix to verbs	P	I	10
gwō	—	pan; pot	N	II	12
gwò	過	pass	V	I	13
bwòbuchyù	過不去	cause trouble; make it difficult	IE (RV)	III	14
gwòchyu	過去	go over there	RV	II	1
Gwóhwèi	國會	Congress (or the building; Capitol)	N	II	13
gwójì	國—	international	Adj	III	16
gwòjyé	過節	pass the festive day	V	III	17
gwònyán	過年	celebrate New Year	VO	I	8
gwǒrán	果然	indeed; as expected	MA	III	8
hā	—	ha	IE	I	14
hái	還	still; yet	A	I	3
hǎi	海	sea	N	I	15
hǎibyār	海邊兒	beach	N	I	15
hái delyǎu	還得了	how can that be	IE	II	15
háidz	孩子	child	N	II	1

hǎigwān	海關	customs	N	II	15	
háihǎu	還好	not too bad	IE	II	1	
háishr	還好	had better	A	I	8	
hàisyōu	害 —	bashful	Adj	II	8	
hǎn	—	shout; yell	V	II	1	
hàn	汗	perspiration	N	II	15	
Hángjou	— —	Hangchow	N	I	12	
hángkūng	—空	aviation	N	I	11	
Hángwó	—國	Korea	N	III	4	
hǎu	好	good; well	Adj	I	1	
hǎu	好	okay; all right	IE	I	4	
hǎu	好	ready; complete (cf. Unit 1)	Adj	I	6	
hǎu	好	very (preceding adjectives, cf. Unit 1, 6)	A	I	7	
hǎu	好	easily	A	II	10	S
-hàu	號	-(the day of the month)	TW	I	3	
hǎu buhǎu	好不好？	how about it	IE	I	7	
hǎuchr̄	好吃	delicious; tasty	Adj	I	4	S
hǎuchu	好處	good point	N	II	8	
hàudz	—子	rat	N	III	12	
hǎuhāurde	好好兒的	carefully	A	II	2	

hǎuhwài	好壞	quality (good-bad)	N	II	14	
háuji-	好幾	several; quite a few	Nu	II	3	
hǎujyāhwo	好___ ___	terrific	IE	III	14	
hǎukàn	好看	good-looking	Adj	I	2	
hàumǎr	號碼兒	number	N	II	4	
-hàur	號兒	number	M	I	14	
hǎusyàng	好像	seem	V	I	12	
hǎusyē	好___	better; quite a bit	A	II	5	S
hǎutīng	好聽	good to listen to	Adj	I	9	
hǎuwár	好玩	enjoyable	Adj	I	12	
he	___	hey	IE	I	4	
hē	喝	drink	V	I	4	
hébǐ	何必	why must; why have to	A	III	11	
hébulái	合不來	be incompatible	RV	III	15	
héchàng	合唱	sing in a chorus	V	II	10	S
héchàngtwán	合唱團	chorus; choral union	N	II	10	
hēdelyǎu	喝的了	be able to drink up	RV	II	3	S
héhwā	___花	water lily	N	III	3	
hēibáide	___白的	black and white	Adj	I	10	
Hēilúngjyāng	___龍江	Amur River	N	III	4	

hěn	很	very; quite	A	I	1	
-hér	___	box	M	I	8	
héshr̀	___ ___	suitable; fitting	Adj	II	7	
hòu	厚	thick	Adj	I	5	
hòu	後	later	A	II	5	S
hòubáu	厚薄	thickness (thick-thin)	N	II	14	
hòujēnshr̀	候___室	waiting room (in a clinic)	N	III	5	
hòulái	後來	afterwards; later	TW	II	3	
hòunyán	後年	the year after next year	TW	I	12	S
hòupái	後排	rear row	N	I	10	
hoúr	___	monkey	N	III	13	
hòutyan	後天	the day after tomorrow	TW	I	2	S
hú	___	lake	N	III	3	
húdu	___ ___	muddled	Adj	III	20	
húdz	___子	beard	N	III	3	
hùjàu	護照	passport	N	II	15	
Húngdwèi	紅隊	Red (uniformed) Team	N	I	14	
Húng Lóu Mèng	紅樓___	Dream of the Red Chamber	N	III	16	
hūrán	忽然	suddenly	A	III	14	

hùsyāng	互相	mutually	A	III	15	
hūsyī	___ ___	breathe	V	III	3	
hwā	花	spend	V	II	10	
hwà	畫	paint	V	II	8	S
hwàbàu	畫報	pictorial magazine	N	II	13	
hwáchywán	___ ___	play finger game (a drinking game)	V	III	15	
hwài	壞	bad	Adj	II	2	
hwàjwāngpǐn	___粧品	cosmetics	N	II	11	
hwàjyā	畫家	artist	N	III	6	
Hwá-míng	華明	a boy's name	N	I	7	
hwàn	換	change	V	III	8	
hwǎng	___	glare	V	III	7	
hwàng	___	shake	V	III	19	
Hwánghé	黄河	Yellow River	N	III	4	
hwānying	歡___	welcome	V	II	3	
hwàr	畫兒	picture; painting	N	II	8	S
Hwáshèngdwùn	華盛頓	Washington	N	II	13	
hwāshēngmǐ	花生___	peanuts	N	III	2	
hwà shr̀ nèmma shwō	話是那麼說	(of course) you can put it that way, (but. . .)	IE	II	12	
hwāyàngr	花樣兒	pattern	N	II	9	

hwāywǎr	花園兒	garden	N	II	2	
-hwéi	囘	a time; occurrence	M	I	12	
hwéi	回	return	V	II	1	S
hwèi	會	can; know how to	AV	I	4	
hwèi	會	will (cf. Unit 4)	AV	I	12	
hwéitóu	回頭	in a minute; a little later	TW	III	14	
hwó	活	live	V	II	6	
hwǒchē	火車	train	N	I	12	
hwǒchējàn	火車 —	train station	N	I	12	
hwóde	活的	living	Adj	III	16	
hwódùng	活動	activities	N	II	10	
hwǒjī	火雞	turkey	N	II	6	
hwótwěi	火 —	ham	N	II	6	
hwūnlǐ	婚禮	wedding ceremony	N	III	15	
jǎi	—	narrow	Adj	II	5	S
jájī	— 雞	fried chicken	N	I	4	
jàn	—	stand	V	II	5	
Jāng	—	Chinese surname	N	I	2	
-jāng	張	unit measure for paper, pictures, tables, etc.	M	I	5	
jǎng	長	grow	V	III	10	

jàngdān	__單	bill	N	III	5	
jǎu	找	find; look for	V	I	3	
jǎu	找	make change (money)	V	I	5	
Jàu	__	Chinese surname	N	I	9	
jāudài	招待	usher; attendant	N	III	15	
jǎudàu	__到	find; locate	RV	II	7	
jāuhu	招__	take care	V	II	15	
jāují	着急	worried; excited	Adj	I	9	
jāulyáng	着凉	catch a cold	VO	I	13	
jāushǒur	招手兒	wave hands	VO	II	1	
jàusyàng	照像	take a picture	VO	I	15	
jàusyàngjī	照像機	camera	N	I	15	
-je	着	verb suffix indicating continuance	P	I	13	
jèi-	這	this	SP	I	3	
jèihwěr	這會兒	right now	TW	I	13	
jèijityān	這幾天	these days	TW	II	9	
jèi lyangtyan	這兩天	these days	IE	I	13	
jèmma	這麼	in this way; to this degree; so	A	I	4	S
jèmmayàng (r)	這麼樣兒	this way; this kind	IE	II	8	
jēn	真	truly; really	A	I	4	

jēn chàjyèr	真差＿	really too bad; way below expectation	IE	III	7
jēnde a	真的＿	really	IE	I	15
jèng (dzài)	正(在)	just in the midst of	A	I	8
jènghǎu	正好	just; exactly	A	I	11
jéngli	＿理	put things in good order	V	II	14
jēnjywé	真＿	neat; precious; funny	IE	III	3
jēn kěsyi	真可＿	what a pity	IE	I	14
jēn lyǎubùchǐ	真了不起	truly great	IE	II	10
Jēn-ní	＿ ＿	Jane; Jennie	N	II	9
jēn shr̀de	真是的	that must be it	IE	II	5
jēn yàumìng	真要命	good heavens	IE	II	5
jèr	這兒	here	PW	I	3
jī	雞	chicken	N	I	4
jǐ-	幾	how many, how much; several; a few	Nu	I	7
jì	寄	send; mail	V	I	11
jì	記	remember	V	I	15
jígé	＿格	pass an examination	V	II	14

jīhwāng	— —	famine	N	III	4	
jìjù	記住	remember	RV	II	14	
jìlai	寄來	mail; send	RV	II	7	
jǐláijǐchyù	擠來擠去	push back and forth	V	II	15	
-jíle	極了	suffix to adjectives, indicating extreme degree	P	I	6	
jǐn	緊	tight	Adj	II	9	
jìn	近	near	Adj	I	11	
jìn	進	enter	V	II	6	
jìnchyù	進去	go in	V	I	10	
jìndài	近代	modern time	N	III	6	
jīnggwo	經過	experience; pass by	V	II	4	
jìngjyǒu	敬酒	offer wine; toast	V	III	15	
jīngtsǎi	— —	interesting; marvelous	Adj	II	5	
jǐnjāng	緊張	tense; nervous	Adj	II	12	
jìnlái	進來	come in	V	I	10	
jìnlyàng	— —	fully; utmost; as much as one can	A	II	10	
jīnnyán	今年	this year	TW	I	12	S
jīntyan	今天	today	TW	I	2	

jìnyàn	記念	commemorate	V	III	17	
jìnyànbēi	記念碑	monument	N	II	13	
jìnyànpǐn	記念品	souvenir	N	II	15	
jīnyú	—魚	gold fish	V	II	6	S
jìrán	既然	since	MA	III	13	
jìshù	技術	skill	N	III	5	
jìswànjī	—算機	adding machine; calculator	N	III	9	
jìsyalai	記下來	write down	RV	III	18	
jìsyù	—續	continue	V	III	6	
jōudau	—到	considerate; thorough	Adj	II	12	
jōumwò	——	weekend	TW	II	9	
jōuwéi	—圍	around	PW	III	5	
-jr̄	支	unit measure for writing brushes and similar slender objects	M	I	5	
-jr̄	—	unit measure for ships	M	I	12	S
jŕde	—	worth	Adj	[illegible]	8	
-jr̄	—	unit measure for birds; also for cats and dogs	M	II	6	
jř	紙	paper	N	I	5	
jř	—	only	A	II	1	

jr̄dau	知道	know; know of or about	V	I	3	
jr̀fú	—— ——	uniform	N	I	9	
jřhwēi	指 ——	conduct	V	I	9	
jr̀-píng	治平	boy's name	N	I	9	
jr̄pyàu	支票	check	N	II	11	
jr̀shǎu	至少	at least	A	II	2	
jřjyàu	指教	give instruction (polite platitude)	V (IE)	III	8	
jřyàu	只要	as long as	MA	I	10	
jŕywán	—— 員	clerk	N	I	13	S
jū	——	pig	N	III	13	
jù	住	live	V	I	12	
jù	祝	wish (good wishes)	V	II	12	
jūng	鐘	o'clock; clock	N	I	7	
jǔng	——	swell	V	I	13	
-jǔng	種	kind	M	II	8	
jùng	重	heavy	Adj	I	11	
Jūnggwo	中國	China	PW	I	2	
jūngjyàr	中間兒	middle	PW	I	10	
Jūng-shān	中山	name of Dr. Sun Yat-sen	N	I	11	
jūngsywé	中學	middle school	N	II	6	

jūngtóu	鐘頭	an hour	TW	II	5	
Jūngwén	中文	the Chinese language	N	I	1	
jūngwǔ	中午	noon	TW	II	6	S
Jùngyìywàn	——院	House of Representatives	N	II	13	
jǔsyí	主席	chairman	N	II	10	
jùtse	—冊	register (at school)	VO	II	3	S
jǔyàu	主要	main	Adj	III	4	
jùyidau	—意到	pay attention to; notice	RV	II	4	
jwàn	轉	walk around	V	II	3	
jwāngshang	裝上	fix; install	RV	II	2	
jwāngshr̀	裝飾	decoration; ornament	N	II	7	
jwānsyīn	專心	with concentrated attention	A	III	9	
jwōdz	棹子	desk; table	N	I	3	
jwǔn	準	sharp; punctual	A	I	7	
jwǔn	準	sharp (cf. Unit 7)	Adj	I	14	
jyā	家	home	N	I	6	
-jyā	家	measure for newspaper institution, business concern, etc.	M	III	3	

-jyà	架	unit measure for airplanes	M	I	12
-jyà	架	set	M	III	2
jyàchyán	價錢	cost; price	N	I	5
jyàdz	架子	shelf; luggage rack	N	I	12
jyāfù	家父	my father (polite expression)	N	III	20
jyājǐn	加緊	step up	A	II	10
jyājyu	—— ——	furniture	N	III	20
Jyā-jyùn	家 ——	a boy's name	N	I	3
-jyān	間	unit measure for rooms	M	II	3
jyǎn	撿	pick up	V	III	19
-jyàn	件	unit measure for matter, item	M	II	4
-jyàn	件	unit measure for garments	M	II	9
jyǎnchīng	減輕	reduce (weight)	V	II	9
jyāngjyòu	將就	tolerate; adapt oneself to the situation	V	III	15
jyǎngjyōu	講究	carefully done; meticulously done	Adj	III	20
jyǎngyì	講義	lecture notes; syllabus	N	III	16
jyàngyóu	—— ——	soy sauce	N	I	6

jyǎnjŕ	—直	simply	A	II	14	
jyǎnjyà	減價	reduce price; on sale	VO	II	11	
jyànmyàn	見面	encounter; face one another	V	III	15	
jyāsyìn	家信	letter from home	N	II	4	
jyātíng	家庭	family	N	III	17	
jyāu	教	teach	V	II	8	
jyāu	交	hand in	V	II	14	
jyǎu	腳	foot	N	III	3	
jyāu	交	make a friend	V	II	14	
jyàu	叫	tell (somebody to do something)	V	I	6	
jyàu	叫	by (indicates agent of action)	CV	I	14	S
jyāujywǎr	— —	film	N	I	15	
jyàulyàn	教練	coach	N	II	5	
jyāu péngyou	交朋友	make friends	VO	III	15	
jyǎur (jyǎusè)	角兒	role	N	II	10	
jyàushr̀	教室	classroom	N	I	3	S
jyāusyǎngywè	交響樂	symphony	N	III	12	
jyāuwài	—外	outside the city; countryside	N	III	7	

jyǎyá	假牙	denture; false teeth	N	III 5
jyāyóur	加 ___	apply effort	IE	II 14
jyē	___	street	N	I 11
jyē	接	meet	V	I 12
jyē	接	receive; catch	V	III 19
jyè	借	borrow; lend	V	II 11
jyèchuchyu	借出去	lend out	RV	II 11
jyěfu	___ ___	brother-in-law (elder sister's husband)	N	I 6
jyégwǒ	結果	as a result; consequently	A	II 9
jyéhwūn	結婚	marry	V	III 15
jyèjr	___ 指	ring	N	III 15
jyějye	___ ___	elder sister	N	I 6
Jyé-ke	___ ___	Jack	N	II 11
jyēkǒur	___ 口兒	block; intersection	N	I 11
jyémù	節 ___	program	N	II 2
jyér̀	節日	festive day; festival	N	III 17
jyèshau	___ ___	introduce	V	I 9
jyēshr	結實	solid	Adj	III 10
jyēsyànshēng	接線生	operator (telephone)	N	II 4

jỳnchyu	進去	go in	V	I	10	
jỳnlai	進來	come in	V	I	10	
jyǒu	九	nine	Nu	I	3	S
jyǒu	酒	wine; liquor	N	I	6	
jyǒu	—	long (time)	A	I	7	
jyòu	就	only; just	A	I	3	
jyòu	—	old (for the inanimate)	Adj	II	2	S
jyòu	救	save (life)	V	III	10	
jyǒubēi	酒杯	wine glass	N	I	6	
(Nà) jyòu jèiyàng ba	就這樣吧	let's do it this way	IE	I	8	
jyòujyou	— —	uncle (mother's brother)	N	III	20	
jyòu nèmma bàn	就那麼辦	let's do it that way	IE	I	7	
jyǒusyí	酒席	banquet	N	III	15	
Jyǒuywe	九月	September (nine-month)	TW	I	3	S
jyǔ	—	raise	V	III	4	
-jyù	句	sentence; utterance	M	I	7	
jyúdzshwěi	橘子水	orange juice	N	I	10	
jyùshwō	據說	it is said that; reportedly	MA	III	17	

Vocabulary

jyùtsān	— —	group dinner; any group meal	N	I	9
jyùtwán	劇團	dramatic troupe	N	II	10
jywàndz	—子	bluebook (examination book)	N	II	14
jywé(dwèi)	絶(對)	definitely; absolutely	A	II	9
jywéde	覺得	feel; think	V	I	12
jywédìng	决定	decide	V	II	7
jywéshr̀-yīnywè	— —音樂	jazz music	N	II	11
jywésyīn	决心	determination or willingness	N	II	14
kāi	開	open	V	I	7
kāi	開	start (engine, cf. Unit 7)	V	I	12
kāi	開	operate vehicles or most kinds of machines	V	II	2
kāi	開	write(checks, lists, formulas, etc.)	V	II	11
kāishř	開—	begin	V	I	14
kāisyīn	開心	carefree; happy	Adj	III	11
kāisywé	開學	school begins	V	III	11
kāi wánsyàu	開玩笑	joke	VO	II	12 S

kāiyǎn	開演	start to perform (move, show)	V	I	10
kāi yèchē	開夜車 ·	burn the midnight oil	IE	II	14
kàn	看	watch; look	V	I	2
kàn	看	think	V	I	8
kànchū	看出	discern	V (RV)	I	14
kàngòu	看夠	to look or see enough	RV	II	13
kànje (syàng)	看着(像)	look like; seem	V	II	5
kànjyan	看見	see	V (RV)	I	14
kànjyan	看見	succeed to see	RV	II	8
kànwán	看完	finish looking (reading)	RV	II	10 S
kǎu	考	take an examination	V	I	3
kǎubugwò	考不過	cannot compete with... in an examination	RV	II	14
kǎubuhǎu	考不好	do poorly on examination	RV	II	14
kǎudechūlái	考的出來	succeed in producing answers in an examination	RV	II	14
kǎushr̀	考試	examination	N	II	14

-kē	棵	unit measure for trees	M	II	7	
-kē	——	a piece (for small solid objects)	M	III	5	
kě	可	indeed; certainly; however	A	I	11	
kě	渴	thirsty	Adj	II	5	
kè	課	subject of study	N	I	3	S
-kè	刻	quarter of an hour	M	I	7	
kě búshr̀ ma	可不是嗎	of course; why not; what else	IE	II	6	
kèchi	客氣	polite; standing on ceremony	Adj	I	8	
kěkàu	可 ——	dependable; reliable	Adj	III	12	
kělyán	可 ——	pitiful	Adj	III	14	
kěnéng	可能	possibly	MA	I	15	
kěpà	可怕	fearful; terrifying	Adj	III	14	
kèren	客人	guest; patron	N	I	5	S
kěshr	可是	but; however	MA	I	4	
késou	—— ——	cough	V	I	13	
kěsyī	可 ——	regrettably	A	II	2	S
kēsywé	科學	science	N	III	6	
kètīng	客 ——	parlor; living room	N	I	6	

kèwài-hwódùng	課外活動	extra-curricular activities	N	II	10	
kéyi	可以	may; can; be permitted to	AV	I	4	
kǒuhúng	口紅	lipstick	N	II	11	
kū	哭	cry; weep	V	III	7	
kùdz	褲子	slacks; pants	N	II	11	
kūngchì	空氣	air	N	III	3	
Kúngdz	—子	Confucius	N	II	13	
kǔngpà	恐怕	perhaps; I'm afraid that...	MA	II	3	
kùngr	空兒	leisure	N	III	18	
-kwài	塊	piece	M	I	4	
-kwài	塊	dollar (Chinese monetary unit)	M	I	5	
kwài	快	quickly; soon	A	I	6	
kwàidz	筷子	chopsticks	N	I	4	
kwàilè	快樂	happy	Adj	II	12	
kwàimàn	快—	speed (fast- slow)	N	II	14	
kwājyǎng	誇獎	praise; compliment	V	II	10	
kwān	寬	wide	Adj	II	5	S
kwānchang	寬—	spacious	Adj	III	1	
kwò	—	rich	Adj	III	13	

dwō	多	many; much	Adj	I	5	
dwō	多	more	A	II	10	S
dwǒ	＿＿	dodge; hide	V	III	7	
dwōbàr	多半兒	mostly	MA	III	8	
dwōjyǒu?	多＿＿?	how long?	TW	II	10	
dwó(me)	多	very much	A	I	9	
dwóma (dwóme)	多＿＿	how	QW	II	6	
dwōshau	多少	how much? how many?	Nu	I	5	
dwōshǎu	多少	more or less	A	II	14	
dwōsyè	多謝	many thanks	IE	III	18	
-dwùn	頓	unit measure for meal	M	II	6	
-dyǎn	點	o'clock; hour	M	I	7	
dyàn	＿＿	put on bottom; line	V	III	7	
dyànbàu	電報	telegraph	N	II	4	
dyàndēng	電＿＿	electric light	N	II	1	S
dyànhwà	電話	telephone	N	I	7	S
dyànhwà běndz	電話本子	telephone directory	N	III	18	
dyànhwàjyú	電話＿＿	telephone office	N	II	4	
dyànshr̀	電＿＿	television	N	I	2	

dyànshr̀jī	電— —	television set	N	III	19	
dyǎnsyin	點心	snack; refreshment	N	II	11	
dyànyǐngr	電—兒	movie	N	I	10	
dyànywán	— —	clerk, salesman	N	I	5	S
dyàu	—	drop	V	III	10	
dyàuchátwán	— —團	investigating team; fact-finding committee	N	III	2	
dyàuyú	釣魚	fish	V	III	3	
dyédz	—子	saucer	N	I	6	
dyōu	—	lose; be lost	V	I	12	
dz̀	字	character; letter	N	II	7	S
dzài	再	again (in the future)	A	I	3	
dzài	在	'be at' a point in space or time	CV	I	3	
dzài	在	be at; in or on (cf. Unit 3)	V	I	6	
dzài	再	then	A	I	7	
dzàijyàn	再見	good-bye; see you again	IE	I	1	
dzájr̀	— —	magazine	N	I	3	S
dzànchéng	— —	approve; vote yes	V	III	2	
dzāng	—	dirty	Adj	II	5	S

Vocabulary

dzǎu	早	early, good morning	IE	I	1	
dzǎudzāurde	早早的	early	A	II	2	
dzǎufàn	早飯	breakfast	N	I	7	
dzāugāu(le)	__ 糕	what a mess; too bad	IE	II	11	
dzǎushang	早上	morning	TW	I	2	S
dzāuta	__ __	waste	V	III	8	
dzáuwǎn	早晚	morning and evening	TW	II	15	
dzěmma	怎麼	how, in what way; why, how is that	A	I	4	
dzěmma bàn ne	怎麼辦呢	what shall I do	IE	I	15	
dzěmma gǎude	怎麼__的	what happened	IE	II	12	
dzěmma jèmma	怎麼這麼	why so...	IE	I	10	
dzěmmayàng	怎麼樣	how about...; what do you think	IE	II	3	
(Nà shr̀) dzěmma yìhwéi shr̀ a	怎麼一回事__	what is the matter with you	IE	II	8	
dz̀dyǎn	字__	dictionary	N	I	3	
dzēngjyā	__ 加	increase	V	II	10	
dz̀hwà	字畫	calligraphy and painting	N	III	20	

dz̀jǐ	自己	self	N	II	1	
dzǒu	走	walk; go; leave	V	I	8	
dzǒulù	走路	on foot	A	II	2	S
dz̀rán	自然	natural science	N	I	2	
dz̄shr̀	—— ——	pose	N	III	8	
džsyì	仔細	in detail; carefully	A	II	13	
dz̀syí	自習	self-study	V	III	16	
dz̀syíngchē	自行車	bicycle	N	III	7	
dzū	租	rent	V	III	1	
dzúchyóu	足球	football	N	II	4	
dzǔfù	祖父	grandfather	N	II	6	
dzǔjr̄	—— ——	organize	V	III	2	
dzúmǔ	祖母	grandmother	N	II	6	
dzǔng	總	all the time	A	II	3	
Dzúngtǔng	總統	President	N	II	13	
dzwěi (ba)	—— ——	mouth	N	I	14	S
dzwèi	最	the most, -est	A	I	10	
dzwèihǎu	最好	had better	A	II	7	
dzwèihòu	最後	last	Adj	II	9	
dzwèijìn	最近	recently; lately	TW	II	10	
dzwèishǎu	最少	least	A	III	1	
dzwò	做	do	V	I	2	

dzwò	坐	sit	V	I	3	
dzwò	坐	ride, take (transportation)	CV	I	7	
dzwǒbyār	左邊兒	left (side)	PW	I	6	
dzwòchilai	做起來	begin to do	RV	II	8	S
dzwòdau	做到	succeed to take (sit)	RV	II	8	S
dzwòhǎu	做好	complete (doing something)	RV	II	3	S
dzwòjyǎ	作假	forge; falsify	V	III	12	
dzwò léngbǎndèng	坐冷—— ——	be ignored (sit on a cold bench)	IE	II	9	
dzwòpǐn	作品	work; created work (writing, sculpture, etc.)	N	III	16	
dzwòr	坐兒	seat	N	I	12	
dzwòsya	坐下	sit down	RV	II	2	S
dzwótyan	昨天	yesterday	TW	I	2	S
dz̀yándz̀yǔ	自——自——	talk to oneself	IE	III	9	
é	——	goose	N	II	6	
è	餓	hungry	Adj	I	4	
éi	——	oh; ah; eh; hey	IE	II	11	
èr	二	two	Nu	I	1	S
ěrdwō	—— ——	ear	N	I	14	S
érdz	兒子	son	N	III	10	

Èrywe	二月	February (two-month)	TW	I	3	S
fā	發	issue; distribute	V	III	16	
fá	—	penalize	V	I	14	
fābyǎu	發表	publish	V	III	16	
fāchóu	發 —	worry	V	III	13	
Fàgwo	法國	France (cf. Unit 1)	PW	I	2	S
fājǎn	發 —	develop	V	III	4	
fālěng	發冷	have chill	VO	III	5	
fāmíng	發明	invention	N	III	6	
fán	—	boring	Adj	III	14	
fàn	飯	meal; cooked rice	N	I	4	
fànfǎ	犯法	violate law	V	III	12	
fāng	方	square table	N	III	20	
fàng	放	put	V	I	12	
fāngbyan	方便	convenient	Adj	II	1	
fángdzū	房租	rent (on house, room)	N	III	1	
fángdz	房子	house	N	II	2	S
fàngjyà	放 —	have a vacation	VO	I	15	
fángjyān	房間	room	N	III	1	
fāngmyàn	方面	aspect	N	III	6	
fàngsya	放下	put down	RV	II	2	

fàngsyīn	放心	rest assured	Adj	I	12	
fàngwǎr	飯館兒	restaurant	N	I	4	
fǎnjèng	反正	anyway; anyhow	A	II	11	
fàntīng	飯__	dining room; cafeteria	N	I	4	S
fānyì	翻譯	translate	V	III	2	
fāshāu	發__	have a fever	V	I	13	
fāsyàn	發現	discover	V	III	15	
Fàwén	法文	French	N	I	2	S
fāyīn	發音	pronunciation sound	N	III	2	
fēi	飛	fly	V	I	12	
fèi	__	spend (time or effort)	V	II	7	
fēicháng	非常	extraordinarily	A	III	10	
féidzàu	__ __	soap	N	II	11	S
fēijī	飛機	airplane	N	I	12	
fēijīchǎng	飛機場	airport	N	II	1	
fèishr	__事	cause trouble	VO	II	2	
-fēn	分	cent	M	I	5	
-fēn	分	minute	M	I	7	
fēn	分	divide	V	III	6	
-fēng	封	unit measure for letters	M	I	11	

fēng	風	wind	N	II	15	
fēngjǐn	風景	landscape	N	I	12	
fēngshōu	— —	good harvest	N	III	17	
fēngsú	風俗	custom	N	III	17	
-fēnjr-	分—	formula of fractions	Nu	II	5	S
fēnshǒu	分手	leave; part	VO	II	11	
fēnshù	分數	mark; grade	N	II	14	
fēnshùdār	分數單兒	transcript; report card	N	II	14	
-fēr	分兒	point	M	I	14	
fǒudzé	— —	otherwise	MA	III	17	
-fù	—	unit measure (a pair or a set) for curtains, scrolls, etc.	M	II	2	
fùchin	父親	father	N	I	15	
fùjìn	—近	neighborhood	N	I	11	
fùmǔ	父母	parents	N	I	15	
fùsyí	—習	review	V	III	4	
gǎi	改	change; correct	V	II	7	
gàijāng	—章	affix seal	VO	III	12	
gǎityān	改天	some other day	TW	III	11	
gànmá	— —	what for	IE	II	13	
gān	乾	dry	Adj	III	4	

gǎn	趕	keep up with; rush	V	II	4	
gǎn	趕	rush; hurry to complete some work	V	III	11	
gàn	___	do	V	I	6	
gānbēi	乾杯	bottoms up (drain the wine cup)	IE	III	15	
Gǎnēnjyé	感恩節	Thanksgiving	N	II	6	
gāng(gāng)	___	just this minute	A	I	10	
gāngbǐ	___筆	fountain pen	N	I	5	
gāngtsái	___才	just a moment ago	A	I	9	
gānjing	乾___	clean	Adj	II	5	S
gǎnmàu	感___	flu	N	I	13	
gǎnshang	趕上	keep up with	RV	II	10	
gǎnshang	趕上	catch up	V	III	7	
gàn shémma	___甚麼	why	IE	I	8	
gánsyǎng	感想	thought; reflection	N	III	16	
gǎnsyè	感謝	appreciate; thank	V	II	3	
gāu	高	high	Adj	I	13	
gāusù-gūnglù	高___公路	freeway	N	II	2	
gàusung	告訴	tell	V	II	3	

gāusyìng	高興	delightful; enjoyable	Adj	I	8	
gāutsáishēng	高__生	highly talented student	N	II	10	
gāuywán	高原	plateau	N	III	4	
-ge	個	general measure for person or thing	M	I	3	
ge-	各	each	Adj	III	6	
gē	隔	separate; to be separated by	V	III	4	
gēbei	__ __	arm	N	II	8	S
gébǐ	隔__	next door	PW	II	2	
gèchù	各處	every place	PW	II	3	
gèdz	個子	height; physical stature	N	I	14	
gēge	__ __	elder brother	N	I	6	
gěi	給	give	V	I	5	
gěi	給	for; to (for benefit of, cf. Unit 5)	CV	I	8	
gěi	給	by (indicates agent of action	CV	I	14	
gējyù	歌劇	opera (musical play)	N	II	10	
gēn	跟	be with; follow	CV	I	4	
gēn	跟	follow	V	III	5	

gèng	更	still more; even; -er	A	I	10	
gèwèi	各位	you gentlemen (addressing a group)	N	III	2	
gǒu	___	dog	N	II	6	S
gòu	夠	enough	Adj	I	9	
gǔ	___	drum	N	I	9	
gǔdài	古代	ancient time	N	III	6	
gǔjwāng	古裝片子	ancient costume	N	III	11	
gūngdzwò	工作	work	V	II	10	
gūngfu	功 ___	leisure time	N	I	7	
gūnggùng	公 ___	public	Adj	I	11	
gūngke	功課	study; courses	N	II	4	
gūngkèbyǎu	功課表	class schedule	N	II	3	
gūngsyi	___ ___	congratulate	V	I	8	
gūngyè	工業	industry	N	III	6	
gūngywán	公園	park	N	III	3	
gùshr	故事	story	N	I	10	
gǔshŕhòur	古時候	long time ago; once upon a time	TW	III	10	
gùyì	故意	on purpose	A	III	14	
gwà	掛	hang	V	II	7	

gwàhǎu	掛好	finish hanging	RV	II	7
gwàhàu	掛號	register	VO	I	11
gwǎi	拐	turn	V	III	1
gwài	怪	blame	V	II	15
gwàibudé	怪不得	no wonder	IE	III	5
gwáijyǎur	拐角兒	street corner	N	III	9
gwài kělyánde	怪可___的	very pitiful	IE	II	9
gwǎn	管	take care of	V	II	6
gwàng	___	look around	V	II	11
gwǎngbwo dyàntái	___ ___電台	radio broadcasting station	N	III	2
Gwāng Hwá R̀ Baù	___華日報	Gwang Hwa Daily Newspaper	N	III	16
gwàngwan	觀 ___	visit all; see all	RV	II	13
gwānnyàn	觀念	concept; idea	N	III	17
gwānsyi	關係	relation	N	III	4
gwānsyīn	關心	concern	V	II	3
gwānyú	關於	concerning; about	CV	III	6
gwàshang	掛上	hang up	RV	II	7
gwèi	貴	expensive	Adj	I	5
gwèidz	___子	locker; cabinet	N	II	3
gwēijyu	___ ___	rule; regulation	N	II	2

gwèisyìng	貴 —	what is your (sur)name	IE	I	7
-gwo	國	-country; -nation	PW	I	2
-gwo	過	experiential suffix to verbs	P	I	10
gwō	—	pan; pot	N	II	12
gwò	過	pass	V	I	13
bwòbuchyù	過不去	cause trouble; make it difficult	IE (RV)	III	14
gwòchyu	過去	go over there	RV	II	1
Gwóhwèi	國會	Congress (or the building; Capitol)	N	II	13
gwójì	國 —	international	Adj	III	16
gwòjyé	過節	pass the festive day	V	III	17
gwònyán	過年	celebrate New Year	VO	I	8
gwǒrán	果然	indeed; as expected	MA	III	8
hā	—	ha	IE	I	14
hái	還	still; yet	A	I	3
hǎi	海	sea	N	I	15
hǎibyār	海邊兒	beach	N	I	15
hái delyǎu	還得了	how can that be	IE	II	15
háidz	孩子	child	N	II	1

hǎigwān	海關	customs	N	II	15	
háihǎu	還好	not too bad	IE	II	1	
háishr	還好	had better	A	I	8	
hàisyōu	害 —	bashful	Adj	II	8	
hǎn	—	shout; yell	V	II	1	
hàn	汗	perspiration	N	II	15	
Hángjou	— —	Hangchow	N	I	12	
hángkūng	—空	aviation	N	I	11	
Hángwó	—國	Korea	N	III	4	
hǎu	好	good; well	Adj	I	1	
hǎu	好	okay; all right	IE	I	4	
hǎu	好	ready; complete (cf. Unit 1)	Adj	I	6	
hǎu	好	very (preceding adjectives, cf. Unit 1, 6)	A	I	7	
hǎu	好	easily	A	II	10	S
-hàu	號	-(the day of the month)	TW	I	3	
hǎu buhǎu	好不好？	how about it	IE	I	7	
hǎuchr̄	好吃	delicious; tasty	Adj	I	4	S
hǎuchu	好處	good point	N	II	8	
hàudz	—子	rat	N	III	12	
hǎuhāurde	好好兒的	carefully	A	II	2	

hǎuhwài	好壞	quality (good-bad)	N	II	14	
háuji-	好幾	several; quite a few	Nu	II	3	
hǎujyāhwo	好___ ___	terrific	IE	III	14	
hǎukàn	好看	good-looking	Adj	I	2	
hàumǎr	號碼兒	number	N	II	4	
-hàur	號兒	number	M	I	14	
hǎusyàng	好像	seem	V	I	12	
hǎusyē	好___	better; quite a bit	A	II	5	S
hǎutīng	好聽	good to listen to	Adj	I	9	
hǎuwár	好玩	enjoyable	Adj	I	12	
he	___	hey	IE	I	4	
hē	喝	drink	V	I	4	
hébì	何必	why must; why have to	A	III	11	
hébulái	合不來	be incompatible	RV	III	15	
héchàng	合唱	sing in a chorus	V	II	10	S
héchàngtwán	合唱團	chorus; choral union	N	II	10	
hēdelyǎu	喝的了	be able to drink up	RV	II	3	S
héhwā	___花	water lily	N	III	3	
hēibáide	___白的	black and white	Adj	I	10	
Hēilúngjyāng	___龍江	Amur River	N	III	4	

hěn	很	very; quite	A	I	1	
-hér	___	box	M	I	8	
héshr̀	___ ___	suitable; fitting	Adj	II	7	
hòu	厚	thick	Adj	I	5	
hòu	後	later	A	II	5	S
hòubáu	厚薄	thickness (thick-thin)	N	II	14	
hòujēnshr̀	候___室	waiting room (in a clinic)	N	III	5	
hòulái	後來	afterwards; later	TW	II	3	
hòunyán	後年	the year after next year	TW	I	12	S
hòupái	後排	rear row	N	I	10	
hoúr	___	monkey	N	III	13	
hòutyan	後天	the day after tomorrow	TW	I	2	S
hú	___	lake	N	III	3	
húdu	___ ___	muddled	Adj	III	20	
húdz	___子	beard	N	III	3	
hùjàu	護照	passport	N	II	15	
Húngdwèi	紅隊	Red (uniformed) Team	N	I	14	
Húng Lóu Mèng	紅樓___	Dream of the Red Chamber	N	III	16	
hūrán	忽然	suddenly	A	III	14	

hùsyāng	互相	mutually	A	III 15	
hūsyī	—— ——	breathe	V	III 3	
hwā	花	spend	V	II 10	
hwà	畫	paint	V	II 8	S
hwàbàu	畫報	pictorial magazine	N	II 13	
hwáchywán	—— ——	play finger game (a drinking game)	V	III 15	
hwài	壞	bad	Adj	II 2	
hwàjwāngpǐn	——粧品	cosmetics	N	II 11	
hwàjyā	畫家	artist	N	III 6	
Hwá-míng	華明	a boy's name	N	I 7	
hwàn	換	change	V	III 8	
hwǎng	——	glare	V	III 7	
hwàng	——	shake	V	III 19	
Hwánghé	黄河	Yellow River	N	III 4	
hwānying	歡——	welcome	V	II 3	
hwàr	畫兒	picture; painting	N	II 8	S
Hwáshèngdwùn	華盛頓	Washington	N	II 13	
hwāshēngmǐ	花生——	peanuts	N	III 2	
hwà shr̀ nèmma shwō	話是那麼説	(of course) you can put it that way, (but. . .)	IE	II 12	
hwāyàngr	花樣兒	pattern	N	II 9	

hwāywǎr	花園兒	garden	N	II	2	
-hwéi	回	a time; occurrence	M	I	12	
hwéi	回	return	V	II	1	S
hwèi	會	can; know how to	AV	I	4	
hwèi	會	will (cf. Unit 4)	AV	I	12	
hwéitóu	回頭	in a minute; a little later	TW	III	14	
hwó	活	live	V	II	6	
hwǒchē	火車	train	N	I	12	
hwǒchējàn	火車 ——	train station	N	I	12	
hwóde	活的	living	Adj	III	16	
hwódùng	活動	activities	N	II	10	
hwǒjī	火雞	turkey	N	II	6	
hwǒtwěi	火 ——	ham	N	II	6	
hwūnlǐ	婚禮	wedding ceremony	N	III	15	
jǎi	——	narrow	Adj	II	5	S
jájī	—— 雞	fried chicken	N	I	4	
jàn	——	stand	V	II	5	
Jāng	——	Chinese surname	N	I	2	
-jāng	張	unit measure for paper, pictures, tables, etc.	M	I	5	
jǎng	長	grow	V	III	10	

Vocabulary

jàngdān	___單	bill	N	III	5	
jǎu	找	find; look for	V	I	3	
jǎu	找	make change (money)	V	I	5	
Jàu	___	Chinese surname	N	I	9	
jāudài	招待	usher; attendant	N	III	15	
jǎudàu	___到	find; locate	RV	II	7	
jāuhu	招___	take care	V	II	15	
jāují	着急	worried; excited	Adj	I	9	
jāulyáng	着凉	catch a cold	VO	I	13	
jāushǒur	招手兒	wave hands	VO	II	1	
jàusyàng	照像	take a picture	VO	I	15	
jàusyàngjī	照像機	camera	N	I	15	
-je	着	verb suffix indicating continuance	P	I	13	
jèi-	這	this	SP	I	3	
jèihwěr	這會兒	right now	TW	I	13	
jèijityān	這幾天	these days	TW	II	9	
jèi lyangtyan	這兩天	these days	IE	I	13	
jèmma	這麼	in this way; to this degree; so	A	I	4	S
jèmmayàng (r)	這麼樣兒	this way; this kind	IE	II	8	
jēn	真	truly; really	A	I	4	

jēn chàjyèr	真差___	really too bad; way below expectation	IE	III	7
jēnde a	真的___	really	IE	I	15
jèng (dzài)	正(在)	just in the midst of	A	I	8
jènghǎu	正好	just; exactly	A	I	11
jéngli	___理	put things in good order	V	II	14
jēnjywé	真___	neat; precious; funny	IE	III	3
jēn kěsyi	真可___	what a pity	IE	I	14
jēn lyǎubùchǐ	真了不起	truly great	IE	II	10
Jēn-ní	___ ___	Jane; Jennie	N	II	9
jēn shr̀de	真是的	that must be it	IE	II	5
jēn yàumìng	真要命	good heavens	IE	II	5
jèr	這兒	here	PW	I	3
jī	雞	chicken	N	I	4
jǐ-	幾	how many, how much; several; a few	Nu	I	7
jì	寄	send; mail	V	I	11
jì	記	remember	V	I	15
jígé	___格	pass an examination	V	II	14

jīhwāng	—— ——	famine	N	III	4	
jìjù	記住	remember	RV	II	14	
jìlai	寄來	mail; send	RV	II	7	
jǐláijǐchyù	擠來擠去	push back and forth	V	II	15	
-jíle	極了	suffix to adjectives, indicating extreme degree	P	I	6	
jǐn	緊	tight	Adj	II	9	
jìn	近	near	Adj	I	11	
jìn	進	enter	V	II	6	
jìnchyù	進去	go in	V	I	10	
jìndài	近代	modern time	N	III	6	
jīnggwo	經過	experience; pass by	V	II	4	
jìngjyǒu	敬酒	offer wine; toast	V	III	15	
jīngtsǎi	—— ——	interesting; marvelous	Adj	II	5	
jǐnjāng	緊張	tense; nervous	Adj	II	12	
jìnlái	進來	come in	V	I	10	
jìnlyàng	—— ——	fully; utmost; as much as one can	A	II	10	
jīnnyán	今年	this year	TW	I	12	S
jīntyan	今天	today	TW	I	2	

jìnyàn	記念	commemorate	V	III	17	
jìnyànbēi	記念碑	monument	N	II	13	
jìnyànpǐn	記念品	souvenir	N	II	15	
jīnyú	—魚	gold fish	V	II	6	S
jìrán	既然	since	MA	III	13	
jìshù	技術	skill	N	III	5	
jìswànjī	—算機	adding machine; calculator	N	III	9	
jìsyalai	記下來	write down	RV	III	18	
jìsyù	—續	continue	V	III	6	
jōudau	—到	considerate; thorough	Adj	II	12	
jōumwò	——	weekend	TW	II	9	
jōuwéi	—圍	around	PW	III	5	
-jr̄	支	unit measure for writing brushes and similar slender objects	M	I	5	
-jr̄	—	unit measure for ships	M	I	12	S
jŕde	—	worth	Adj	III	8	
-jr̄	—	unit measure for birds; also for cats and dogs	M	II	6	
jř	紙	paper	N	I	5	
jř	—	only	A	II	1	

jr̄dau	知道	know; know of or about	V	I	3	
jr̀fú	—— ——	uniform	N	I	9	
jřhwēi	指 ——	conduct	V	I	9	
jr̀-píng	治平	boy's name	N	I	9	
jr̄pyàu	支票	check	N	II	11	
jr̀shǎu	至少	at least	A	II	2	
jřjyàu	指教	give instruction (polite platitude)	V (IE)	III	8	
jřyàu	只要	as long as	MA	I	10	
jŕywán	——員	clerk	N	I	13	S
jū	——	pig	N	III	13	
jù	住	live	V	I	12	
jù	祝	wish (good wishes)	V	II	12	
jūng	鐘	o'clock; clock	N	I	7	
jǔng	——	swell	V	I	13	
-jǔng	種	kind	M	II	8	
jùng	重	heavy	Adj	I	11	
Jūnggwo	中國	China	PW	I	2	
jūngjyàr	中間兒	middle	PW	I	10	
Jūng-shān	中山	name of Dr. Sun Yat-sen	N	I	11	
jūngsywé	中學	middle school	N	II	6	

jūngtóu	鐘頭	an hour	TW	II	5	
Jūngwén	中文	the Chinese language	N	I	1	
jūngwǔ	中午	noon	TW	II	6	S
Jùngyìywàn	——院	House of Representatives	N	II	13	
jǔsyí	主席	chairman	N	II	10	
jùtse	—冊	register (at school)	VO	II	3	S
jǔyàu	主要	main	Adj	III	4	
jùyidau	—意到	pay attention to; notice	RV	II	4	
jwàn	轉	walk around	V	II	3	
jwāngshang	裝上	fix; install	RV	II	2	
jwāngshr̀	裝飾	decoration; ornament	N	II	7	
jwānsyīn	專心	with concentrated attention	A	III	9	
jwōdz	棹子	desk; table	N	I	3	
jwǔn	準	sharp; punctual	A	I	7	
jwǔn	準	sharp (cf. Unit 7)	Adj	I	14	
jyā	家	home	N	I	6	
-jyā	家	measure for newspaper institution, business concern, etc.	M	III	3	

-jyà	架	unit measure for airplanes	M	I	12
-jyà	架	set	M	III	2
jyàchyán	價錢	cost; price	N	I	5
jyàdz	架子	shelf; luggage rack	N	I	12
jyāfù	家父	my father (polite expression)	N	III	20
jyājǐn	加緊	step up	A	II	10
jyājyu	—— ——	furniture	N	III	20
Jyā-jyùn	家 ——	a boy's name	N	I	3
-jyān	間	unit measure for rooms	M	II	3
jyǎn	撿	pick up	V	III	19
-jyàn	件	unit measure for matter, item	M	II	4
-jyàn	件	unit measure for garments	M	II	9
jyǎnchīng	減輕	reduce (weight)	V	II	9
jyāngjyòu	將就	tolerate; adapt oneself to the situation	V	III	15
jyǎngjyōu	講究	carefully done; meticulously done	Adj	III	20
jyǎngyì	講義	lecture notes; syllabus	N	III	16
jyàngyóu	—— ——	soy sauce	N	I	6

jyǎnjŕ	—直	simply	A	II	14	
jyǎnjyà	減價	reduce price; on sale	VO	II	11	
jyànmyàn	見面	encounter; face one another	V	III	15	
jyāsyìn	家信	letter from home	N	II	4	
jyātíng	家庭	family	N	III	17	
jyāu	教	teach	V	II	8	
jyāu	交	hand in	V	II	14	
jyǎu	腳	foot	N	III	3	
jyāu	交	make a friend	V	II	14	
jyàu	叫	tell (somebody to do something)	V	I	6	
jyàu	叫	by (indicates agent of action)	CV	I	14	S
jyāujywǎr	— —	film	N	I	15	
jyàulyàn	教練	coach	N	II	5	
jyāu péngyou	交朋友	make friends	VO	III	15	
jyǎur (jyǎusè)	角兒	role	N	II	10	
jyàushr̀	教室	classroom	N	I	3	S
jyāusyǎngywè	交響樂	symphony	N	III	12	
jyāuwài	—外	outside the city; countryside	N	III	7	

jyǎyá	假牙	denture; false teeth	N	III	5
jyāyóur	加 ___	apply effort	IE	II	14
jyē	___	street	N	I	11
jyē	接	meet	V	I	12
jyē	接	receive; catch	V	III	19
jyè	借	borrow; lend	V	II	11
jyèchuchyu	借出去	lend out	RV	II	11
jyěfu	___ ___	brother-in-law (elder sister's husband)	N	I	6
jyégwǒ	結果	as a result; consequently	A	II	9
jyéhwūn	結婚	marry	V	III	15
jyèjr	___ 指	ring	N	III	15
jyějye	___ ___	elder sister	N	I	6
Jyé-ke	___ ___	Jack	N	II	11
jyēkǒur	___ 口兒	block; intersection	N	I	11
jyémù	節 ___	program	N	II	2
jyér̀	節日	festive day; festival	N	III	17
jyèshau	___ ___	introduce	V	I	9
jyēshr	結實	solid	Adj	III	10
jyēsyànshēng	接線生	operator (telephone)	N	II	4

jyìnchyu	進去	go in	V	I	10	
jyìnlai	進來	come in	V	I	10	
jyǒu	九	nine	Nu	I	3	S
jyǒu	酒	wine; liquor	N	I	6	
jyǒu	——	long (time)	A	I	7	
jyòu	就	only; just	A	I	3	
jyòu	——	old (for the inanimate)	Adj	II	2	S
jyòu	救	save (life)	V	III	10	
jyǒubēi	酒杯	wine glass	N	I	6	
(Nà) jyòu jèiyàng ba	就這樣吧	let's do it this way	IE	I	8	
jyòujyou	—— ——	uncle (mother's brother)	N	III	20	
jyòu nèmma bàn	就那麼辦	let's do it that way	IE	I	7	
jyǒusyí	酒席	banquet	N	III	15	
Jyǒuywe	九月	September (nine-month)	TW	I	3	S
jyǔ	——	raise	V	III	4	
-jyù	句	sentence; utterance	M	I	7	
jyúdzshwěi	橘子水	orange juice	N	I	10	
jyùshwō	據說	it is said that; reportedly	MA	III	17	

jyùtsān	— —	group dinner; any group meal	N	I	9
jyùtwán	劇團	dramatic troupe	N	II	10
jywàndz	— 子	bluebook (examination book)	N	II	14
jywé(dwèi)	絶(對)	definitely; absolutely	A	II	9
jywéde	覺得	feel; think	V	I	12
jywédìng	决定	decide	V	II	7
jywéshr̀-yīnywè	— —音樂	jazz music	N	II	11
jywésyīn	决心	determination or willingness	N	II	14
kāi	開	open	V	I	7
kāi	開	start (engine, cf. Unit 7)	V	I	12
kāi	開	operate vehicles or most kinds of machines	V	II	2
kāi	開	write(checks, lists, formulas, etc.)	V	II	11
kāishř	開 —	begin	V	I	14
kāisyīn	開心	carefree; happy	Adj	III	11
kāisywé	開學	school begins	V	III	11
kāi wánsyàu	開玩笑	joke	VO	II	12 S

kāiyǎn	開演	start to perform (move, show)	V	I	10
kāi yèchē	開夜車	burn the midnight oil	IE	II	14
kàn	看	watch; look	V	I	2
kàn	看	think	V	I	8
kànchū	看出	discern	V (RV)	I	14
kàngòu	看夠	to look or see enough	RV	II	13
kànje (syàng)	看着(像)	look like; seem	V	II	5
kànjyan	看見	see	V (RV)	I	14
kànjyan	看見	succeed to see	RV	II	8
kànwán	看完	finish looking (reading)	RV	II	10 S
kǎu	考	take an examination	V	I	3
kǎubugwò	考不過	cannot compete with...in an examination	RV	II	14
kǎubuhǎu	考不好	do poorly on examination	RV	II	14
kǎudechūlái	考的出來	succeed in producing answers in an examination	RV	II	14
kǎushr̀	考試	examination	N	II	14

-kē	棵	unit measure for trees	M	II	7	
-kē	—	a piece (for small solid objects)	M	III	5	
kě	可	indeed; certainly; however	A	I	11	
kě	渴	thirsty	Adj	II	5	
kè	課	subject of study	N	I	3	S
-kè	刻	quarter of an hour	M	I	7	
kě búshr̀ ma	可不是嗎	of course; why not; what else	IE	II	6	
kèchi	客氣	polite; standing on ceremony	Adj	I	8	
kěkàu	可 —	dependable; reliable	Adj	III	12	
kělyán	可 —	pitiful	Adj	III	14	
kěnéng	可能	possibly	MA	I	15	
kěpà	可怕	fearful; terrifying	Adj	III	14	
kèren	客人	guest; patron	N	I	5	S
kěshr	可是	but; however	MA	I	4	
késou	— —	cough	V	I	13	
kěsyī	可 —	regrettably	A	II	2	S
kēsywé	科學	science	N	III	6	
kètīng	客 —	parlor; living room	N	I	6	

kèwài-hwódùng	課外活動	extra-curricular activities	N	II	10	
kéyi	可以	may; can; be permitted to	AV	I	4	
kǒuhúng	口紅	lipstick	N	II	11	
kū	哭	cry; weep	V	III	7	
kùdz	褲子	slacks; pants	N	II	11	
kūngchì	空氣	air	N	III	3	
Kúngdz	__子	Confucius	N	II	13	
kǔngpà	恐怕	perhaps; I'm afraid that...	MA	II	3	
kùngr	空兒	leisure	N	III	18	
-kwài	塊	piece	M	I	4	
-kwài	塊	dollar (Chinese monetary unit)	M	I	5	
kwài	快	quickly; soon	A	I	6	
kwàidz	筷子	chopsticks	N	I	4	
kwàilè	快樂	happy	Adj	II	12	
kwàimàn	快__	speed (fast-slow)	N	II	14	
kwājyǎng	誇獎	praise; compliment	V	II	10	
kwān	寬	wide	Adj	II	5	S
kwānchang	寬__	spacious	Adj	III	1	
kwò	__	rich	Adj	III	13	

kwùnnan	__難	difficulty	N	II	14	
lái	來	come	V	I	6	
láilì	來歷	origin; history	N	III	17	
láiwǎn	來晚	come late	RV	II	3	S
làjú	__ __	candle	N	II	12	
lālādwèi	__ __隊	cheering section	N	II	5	
lǎu	老	always	A	I	6	
làu	落	fall; set (the sun)	V	II	2	
láuhǔ (hǔ)	老 __	tiger	N	III	13	
lǎushr̄	老師	teacher	N	I	1	
lǎushr̀	老是	always	A	III	10	
lǎutàitai	老太太	old woman	N	III	3	
lǎutóur	老頭兒	old man	N	III	3	
lǎutyānyé	老天 __	heaven	N	III	14	
lǎuyéchē	老__車	jalopy; old broken vehicle	N	III	7	
-le	了	verb and sentence suffix indicating completion of action	P	I	3	
lèchyù	樂趣	pleasure; happiness	N	II	10	
léi	雷	thunder	N	III	7	
lèi	累	tired	Adj	I	8	
lěng	冷	cold	Adj	I	15	

lěngrè	冷熱	temperature (cold-hot)	N	II	14	
Lǐ	李	Chinese surname	N	I	1	S
-lǐ	—	a measure (one-third mile)	M	I	15	
lí	離	from (be separated or distant from)	CV	I	11	
lí	梨	pear	N	III	10	
lǐbài	禮拜	week	N	II	10	
Lǐbaièr	禮拜二	Tuesday	TW	I	3	S
Lǐbailyòu	禮拜六	Saturday	TW	I	3	S
Lǐbaisān	禮拜三	Wednesday	TW	I	3	S
Lǐbaisz̀	禮拜四	Thursday	TW	I	3	S
Lǐbaityan	禮拜天	Sunday	TW	I	3	S
Lǐbaiwǔ	禮拜五	Friday	TW	I	3	S
Lǐbaiyī	禮拜一	Monday	TW	I	3	S
lìchi	力氣	strength	N	III	3	
lìhai	利害	serious	Adj	III	5	
líkāi	離開	leave	V	II	13	
lìkè	立刻	immediately	A	II	11	
Lín	林	Chinese surname	N	I	7	
lín	淋	become wet in the rain	V	III	14	

Lín-dá	林達	Linda	N	II	1	
líng	__	zero	Nu	I	5	
lìngdzwūn	__ __	your father (polite expression)	N	III	20	
lìngwài	另外	besides; in addition to	A	II	6	
lìngwài	另外	another	Sp	II	6	
Línkěn-jìnyàntáng	林__紀念堂	Lincoln Memorial	N	II	13	
lìshř	歷史	history	N	III	4	
lǐ(tou)	裏	inside (cf. Unit 3)	PW	I	6	
lou	囉	sentence suffix	P	III	15	
lóufáng	樓房	building (of more than one story)	N	I	12	
-lǒur	__	basket	M	I	8	
lóushang	樓上	upstairs	PW	I	6	
lóusyà	樓下	downstairs	N	I	6	S
lóutī	樓__	stairs	N	III	1	
lù	路	road	N	I	11	
-lù	路	route number of bus	M	I	11	
lùshang	路上	on the way	PW	II	15	
lusyàn	路線	route	N	III	4	
lwànchibādzāu	亂七八__	disordered	IE	III	8	

lwò(là)	落	fall; drop (cf. làu, II, 2)	V	III	7	
lwòwǔ	落 —	behind the times; old-fashioned	Adj	II	8	
lwún	輪	turn; rotate	V	III	13	
lwúndz	輪	wheel	N	III	7	
lwúnlyóu	輪 流	taking turns	A	III	9	
lyán	連	even; including	CV	II	14	
lyǎn	臉	face	N	I	14	S
Lyánbāng-dzwèigāu-fǎywàn	— —最高法院	Supreme Federal Court	N	II	13	
lyǎng-	兩	two or a couple of	Nu	I	5	
-lyàng	—	unit measure for wheeled vehicles	M	I	12	
Lyánhégwó	— 合國	the United Nations	N	III	2	
lyànsyí	練習	practice; warm up	V	I	14	
lyànsyíwán	練習完	complete practicing	RV	II	10	
Lyáugwó	— 國	Laos	N	III	4	
lyòu	六	six	Nu	I	3	S
lyóu	流	flow	V	III	4	
lyóugè hwàr	留個話兒	leave a message	IE VO	III	18	
lyóulì	流 —	fluently	A	II	15	

lyòulyou	—— ——	walk around; stroll	V	III	3	
lyóusyíng	流行	popular	Adj	I	13	
Lyòuywe	六月	June (six-month)	TW	I	3	S
lyù	綠	green	Adj	III	9	
lyǔsyíng	—— 行	travel	V	I	15	
ma	嗎	sentence suffix used to convert a declarative into an interrogative	P	I	1	
ma	嗎	sentence suffix for emphatic assertion	P	II	5	
Mā (ma)	媽	Mommy (mother)	N	I	6	
mǎ	馬	horse	N	II	6	
mà	——	scold	V	II	10	
máfan	—— 煩	troublesome	Adj	I	11	
máfan	—— 煩	trouble	V	II	1	
mǎi	買	buy	V	I	5	
mài	賣	sell	V	I	5	
mǎidàu	買到	be able to get (buy)	RV	II	7	S
mǎidechǐ	買的起	be able to (afford to) buy	RV	II	2	S
Mài-ke	麦克	Mike	N	II	1	
mǎilai	買來	buy	RV	II	7	

mǎimai	買賣	business; commerce	N	III	9	
mámǎhūhū	馬馬虎虎	so-so	IE	III	8	
màipyàude	賣票的	ticket clerk	N	I	10	S
Mǎ-lǐ	— —	girl's name	N	I	9	
màn	—	slow	Adj	I	12	
màndzǒu a	— 走 —	walk slowly (used when saying goodbye to a departing guest)	IE	III	9	
máng	忙	busy	Adj	I	1	
máng shémma	忙甚麼	what's the hurry	IE	I	9	
mànmār	— —	slowly	A	I	9	
mànmār lái	— — 來	go slowly; do it slowly	IE	I	9	
mǎshàng	馬上	immediately	TW	II	15	
mǎtou	碼頭	dock; pier	N	II	15	
māu	貓	cat	N	II	6	S
-máu	毛	dime	M	I	5	
máubǐ	毛筆	Chinese writing brush	N	I	5	S
máubing	毛病	illness; trouble	N	III	5	
màudz	— 子	hat	N	III	9	
máujīn	毛 —	towel	N	II	11	S
máuyī	毛衣	sweater	N	I	2	S

Vocabulary

máyi	—	ant	N	II	12	
méi	沒	no; not; have not; did not	A	I	2	
měi	每	each	Sp	II	3	
méi dàuli	沒 — —	no reason; nonsense	IE	III	12	
Měi-fāng	美 —	girl's name	N	I	2	
méi gwānsyi	沒關係	not at all	IE	II	4	
Měigwo	美國	America	PW	I	2	
méijwǔnr	沒準兒	no certainty; unreliable	IE	III	14	
měi(lǐ)	美(_)	beautiful	Adj	I	15	
mèimei	妹妹	younger sister	N	I	6	
méi shemma	沒甚麼	don't mention it	IE	I	8	
méi wèntí	沒問題	no question; no problem	IE	III	12	
méiyou bànfa	沒有辦法	there is no way out of it	IE	II	5	
mén	門	door; gate	N	I	7	
-mén	門	unit measure for subjects (courses)	M	II	3	
mèn	—	bored	Adj	II	5	S
méng	—	cover	V	III	15	
ménkǒur	門口兒	doorway	N	II	1	
ménpyàu	門票	admission ticket	N	III	13	

mínghwàr	名畫兒	famous painting	N	III	6	
míngmíng	明明	clearly	A	III	18	
míngnyán	明年	next year	TW	I	12	S
míngsyìnpyàr	明信片兒	post card	N	I	11	
míngtyan	明天	tomorrow	TW	I	2	S
mísyìn	___信	superstition	Adj N	III	14	
mùchǎng	牧場	ranch	N	II	6	
mǔchīn	母親	mother	N	I	6	S
mwò	墨	ink	N	III	20	
mwòhér	墨盒兒	ink box	N	III	20	
mwósyíng	___ ___	model	N	III	6	
myànbāu	___包	bread	N	I	4	
myǎnde	免得	avoid	V	II	15	
ná	拿	take; carry	V	II	1	
nà	那	in that case	IE	I	6	
náchilai	拿起來	pick up	RV	II	4	
náchulai	拿出來	take out	RV	II	1	
nà dzěmma hǎu yìsz	那怎麼好意思	that would be embarrassing	IE	I	10	
nà jyòu wánle	那就完了	that's the end	IE	II	14	
nán	難	difficult	Adj	I	2	
nán(byār)	南	south	PW	II	2	

nándàu	難道	could it be that; it is conceivable that...	A	II	14
nánde	男的	male	Adj	II	9
Nánfēi	南非	South Africa	N	III	2
nánjújyǎu	男主角	actor in major role	N	I	10 S
nánkàn	難看	ugly	Adj	II	7
nǎr	那兒	where (question word)	PW	I	3
nǎrde hwà	那兒的話	not at all	IE	I	2
nàu dùngfáng	__洞房	cheer the bridal chamber (a Chinese custom)	V	III	15
nàu shwěidzāi	__水災	flood	V	III	14
nà yǒu shémma gwānsyi	那有甚麼關係	what's wrong with that	IE	II	8
ne	呢	sentence suffix usually used with méi to indicate incomplete action	P	I	3
ne	呢	sentence suffix indicating continuance of action (cf. Unit 3)	P	I	6
něi-	那	which	Sp	I	3
nèi-	那	that (there)	Sp	I	3
nèikē	內科	medical department	N	I	13

něityan	那天	which day	TW	I	3	
nèmma	那麼	in that way; to that degree	A	I	4	
néng	能	can; be able	AV	I	4	
nèr	那兒	there	PW	I	3	
nǐ	你	you (singular)	proN	I	1	
Níbwóěr	— —	Nepal	N	III	4	
ní hǎu a	你好啊？	how are you	IE	I	1	
nǐ jēn tǎuyàn	你真— —	you are being silly	IE	I	7	
nǐmen	你們	you (plural)	proN	I	1	S
nín	—	polite form of nǐ	proN	I	1	
nǐ tsāi dzěmme je	你猜怎麼着	guess what happened	IE	III	10	
nùng	—	do; make; fix	V	II	7	
nùng	—	lane	N	III	18	
nùngchīngchu	_清楚	make (it) clear	RV	II	3	
nùnghǎu	—好	finish doing (or making)	RV	II	7	
núngrén	農人	farmer	N	III	10	
nyánchīng	年輕	young	Adj	III	8	
nyàndelyau	念的了	finish learning	RV	II	3	
nyànhǎu	念好	learn well	RV	II	3	

nyánji	年紀	age	N	II 4	
nyànshū	念書	study	VO	I 4	S
nyànsyachyu	念下去	continue to study	RV	II 4	
nyǎur	—	birds	N	II 6	S
nyóu	牛	cow; cattle	N	II 6	
nyǒu	扭	twist	V	II 8	
nýounǎi	牛奶	milk	N	I 4	
nyóunyóuwǔ	扭扭舞	twist (a dance)	N	II 8	
nyóupái	牛排	beefsteak	N	I 4	
nyóuròu	牛肉	beef	N	II 6	
Nyǒuywē	—約	New York	N	II 13	
nyǔde	女的	female	Adj	II 9	
nyǔér	女兒	daughter	N	III 18	
nyǔháidz	女孩子	girl	N	II 11	
nyújújyǎu	女主角	actress in major role	N	I 10	
O	—	oh, I see	IE	I 7	
Ōujōu	— —	Europe	N	III 4	
pá	爬	climb	V	III 8	
pà	怕	be afraid of; scare	V	II 12	
páidwèi	排隊	form a line	V	III 13	
páidz	牌子	sign	N	III 3	

páisyì	排 ___	rehearse a play	V	II	10	
páiyǎn	排 演	rehearse (any stage performance)	V	II	10	
pàng	胖	fat	Adj	I	4	
pángbyār	___ 邊兒	side	PW	I	12	
pàngdz	胖子	fat person	N	II	5	
pánnísyīlín	___ ___ 西林	penicillin	N	I	13	
-pár	___	plate	M	I	4	
pǎu	___	run	V	I	14	
pǎubukwài	___ 不 快	cannot run fast	RV	II	5	
péi	陪	accompany	CV	II	1	
pèng	碰	hit; meet	V	I	14	
pèngjyan	碰見	run into	RV	II	2	S
péngyou	朋友	friend	N	I	9	
-pí	匹	unit measure for horses	M	II	6	
píchi	___ 氣	temper	N	II	9	
píngcháng	平常	ordinarily	TW	II	14	
pínggwǒ	___ ___	apple	N	II	9	
-píngr	___	a bottle of	M	II	11	S
píngsyìn	平信	ordinary mail	N	I	11	
pīnmìng	___ 命	with supreme exertion (straining oneself)	A	III	7	

pītóu sànfà	—頭散髮	unkempt hair; mop-top hair	IE	III	2	
pŭbù	—布	waterfall	N	III	8	
pùdz	—子	shop	N	II	1	S
pŭtūng	—通	ordinary	Adj	I	13	
pwò	破	break	Adj	III	10	
-pyan	片	piece	M	III	16	
pyān	偏	nevertheless	A	II	11	
pyān	偏	leaning toward	A	III	4	
pyāndz	片子	movie film (cf. syībùpyāndz, I, 10)	N	III	11	
pyányi	便宜	cheap	Adj	I	5	
-pyàr	片兒	slice	M	I	4	
pyàu	票	ticket	N	I	10	
pyàulyang	漂亮	pretty	Adj	I	7	
ràng	—	by (indicates agent of action)	CV	I	14	S
ràng	—	to let; allow	CV	II	1	
R̀bĕn	日本	Japan	N	III	4	
r̀cháng	日常	daily	A	III	6	
rè	熱	warm; hot	Adj	I	15	
rén	人	person; man	N	I	2	
rènau	熱鬧	prosperous; bustling	Adj	I	12	

rěnbujù	__不住	cannot help; cannot bear	RV	III	15	
rénchíngwèr	人情味兒	with human feeling	IE	III	17	
rénchyún	人群	crowd of people	N	III	13	
rēng	扔	throw	V	III	2	
rènjēn	認真	serious	Adj	III	11	
rénlèi	人類	mankind	N	III	6	
rénren	人人	everybody	N	I	15	
rénshān rénhǎi	人山人海	mountains and seas of people	IE	III	13	
rènshr	認__	know; recognize; be acquainted with	V	I	9	
ròu	肉	meat	N	I	4	
rúngyi	容易	easy	Adj	I	2	
rǔnyóu	__牛	milk cow	N	II	6	
rùsyí	__席	be seated at dinner table	V	III	15	
sān	三	three	Nu	I	3	S
sànbù	散步	stroll	V	III	3	
sǎngdz (hóulung)	__ __	throat	N	I	13	
sān jywé	三絶	three insuperable things	IE	III	19	
sānlwúnchē	三輪車	Chinese pedicab	N	I	11	

Vocabulary

sāntyān lyangtóur	三天兩頭兒	every other day; very frequently	IE	III	19	
Sānywe	三月	March (three-month)	TW	I	3	S
sàuba	掃把	broom	N	III	19	
shādīng yú	—— ——魚	sardine	N	III	1	
shài	晒	expose to the sun	V	III	7	
shān	山	mountain	N	I	15	
shǎn	——	lightning	N	III	7	
shàng	上	'go to' together with chyù	CV	I	6	
shàngchē	上車	get on a car	V (VO)	I	12	
Shànghǎi	上海	Shanghai	PW	I	12	
shàngkè	上課	go to class; go to school	VO	II	10	S
shàng(tou)	上	top; upper end or side	PW	I	3	
shàngtsz̀	上 ——	last time	TW	II	9	
shàngwu	上午	morning; before noon	TW	II	3	
shàngyī	上衣	upper garment	N	II	9	
shānmài	山 ——	mountain range	N	III	4	
shānshwěi	山水	landscape	N	III	20	
shǎu	少	few; little	Adj	I	5	S

shǎu	少	short (cf. Unit 5)	V	I	6	
shǎu	少	less	A	II	10	S
shǎu fèihwà	少—話	don't dawdle	IE	III	8	
sháur	—	spoon	N	6	1	
shé	—	snake	N	III	13	
shěbudé	捨不得	hate to part with	RV	II	15	
shèhwèi	—會	social science	N	I	2	
shéi	誰	who	proN	I	1	
shéi shwō búshr̀ ne	誰說不是呢!	you said it	IE	III	13	
shémma	甚麼	what; any	proN	I	2	
shēn	—	stretch	V	I	13	
shénchi	—氣	impressive; the "air" surrounding a person	Adj	I	9	
shēnchūchyu	—出去	reach out; stretch out	RV	III	3	
shēnchyǎn	深淺	depth (deep-shallow)	N	II	14	
shēndz	身子	body	N	II	8	
shēnfènjèng	身份證	identification card	N	III	12	
shēng	生	bear; be born	V	III	13	
shèng	—	remain	V	II	6	
shēngbìng	生病	get sick	V (VO)	II	4	

shēngchilai	生起來	(begin to) occur	RV	II	4
Shèngdàn-kǎ	聖誕卡	Christmas card	N	II	7
Shèngdàn-lǎurén	聖誕老人	Santa Claus	N	II	7
Shèngdàn-shù	聖誕樹	Christmas tree	N	II	7
shěngde	省的	avoid (doing something)	V	II	7
shēngdz̀	生字	new vocabulary	N	II	4
shēnghwó	生活	life; living	N	II	10
shēngkou	—口	cattle (large domestic animals-cows, horses, etc.)	N	II	6
shēngr̀	生日	birthday	N	II	12
shèngsya	—下	left over	RV	II	10
shēngyin	—音	sound	N	III	2
shènjr̀yú	甚至於	to the extent that	MA	III	15
shěnshen (shénshen)	— —	aunt (wife of father's younger brother)	N	II	4
shēnti	身體	body; health	N	II	4
shétou	—頭	tongue	N	I	13
shóu	熟	familiar	A	III	18
shǒu	手	hand	N	I	14
shǒu	—	keep (promise); observe (rules)	V	II	15
shòu	—	skinny; thin	Adj	I	4

shòubulyǎu	受不了	cannot bear	RV	II	5	
shōudau	收到	receive	RV	II	4	
shòudelyǎu	受的了	be able to bear or endure	RV	III	9	
shǒudū	首都	capital	N	II	13	
shǒudyàntǔng	手電筒	flash light	N	III	13	
shóujř	手指	finger	N	III	4	
shōujyù	收據	receipt	N	I	11	
shǒulán	—— ——	guard the basket	VO	I	14	
shòumyàn	—— ——	a kind of noodle served on birthday	N	II	12	
shòushāng	受 ——	get wounded	VO	I	14	
shōushr	收 ——	pick up; gather together; arrange; tidy up	V	III	1	
shǒusyān	首先	at first	MA	III	2	
shǒusyù	手續	procedure	N	II	3	
shòutáu	—— ——	peach-shaped bread or pastry served on birthday	N	II	12	
shōutsáng	收 ——	collect	V	III	20	
shōuyīnjī	收音機	radio receiver	N	III	2	
shr̄	——	poetry	N	III	6	
shŕ	十	ten	Nu	I	3	S
shr̀	是	be	V	I	1	

Vocabulary

shr̀(ching)	事	affair; undertaking	N	I	7	
shr̀	試	try	V	I	13	
shr̀chǎng	___場	market	N	II	7	
Shrèrywe	十二月	December (twelve-month)	TW	I	3	S
shŕhou	時候	time	N	I	7	
shr̀jì	世紀	century	N	III	16	
shŕjwāng	時___	modern costume	N	III	11	
shŕjyān	時間	time	N	II	10	
shr̀jyè	世界	world	N	III	2	
shřle hěn dà jyèr	___了很大___	exert great strength	IE	III	3	
shr̄mǔ	師母	teacher's wife	N	I	8	
shr̄rén	___人	poet	N	III	17	
shr̄tòu	濕___	soak; drench	V	III	13	
shŕtou	石頭	stone; rock	N	III	8	
shŕyànshr̀	實___室	science laboratory	N	I	3	S
Shryíywe	十一月	November (eleven-month)	TW	I	3	S
Shŕywe	十月	October (ten-month)	TW	I	3	
shū	書	book	N	I	3	

shū	___	lose (the game)	V	I	14	
shŭ	___	rat	N	III	13	
shŭ	屬	belong to	V	III	13	
shù	樹	tree	N	II	7	
shù	___	erect	V	III	3	
shūdz	___子	comb	N	II	11	S
shūfáng	書房	study (room)	N	III	20	
shūfu	___ ___	comfortable	Adj	I	12	
shūjwōr	書棹兒	desk	N	III	1	
shŭjyà	___假	summer vacation	N	I	15	
shūjyàdz	書架子	bookshelves	N	I	3	
shùlíndz	樹林子	woods; forest	N	III	3	
shūshu	叔叔	uncle (Father's younger brother)	N	II	4	
shŭsyang	屬相	the animal symbol associated with the cycle of years	N	III	13	
shùsywé	數學	mathematics	N	I	3	
shwāi	摔	fall; throw	V	III	10	
-shwāng	雙	a pair of	M	II	11	S
shwāngtséng chwáng	雙層床	double-deck bed	N	III	1	
shwĕigāng	水___	water tank	N	III	10	

shwèi(jyàu)	睡	sleep	V (VO)	I	8	
shwéigwǒ	水果	fruit	N	I	8	
shwěimyàn	水面	surface of water	N	III	3	
shwōchilai	說起來	(begin to) say	RV	II	4	
shwōhwà	說話	talk	VO	I	6	
shwō lǎushŕ hwà	說老實話	frankly speaking	IE	III	1	
shwōle búswàn	說了不算	break promise; what's said does not count	IE	III	11	
shwùnbyàn	___ 便	while convenient; while you are at it	IE	III	9	
shwùnsyù	___ ___	order; sequence	N	III	13	
Sūjou	___ ___	Soochow (a city near Hangchow)	PW	I	15	
Sūlyán	___ ___	Soviet Union	N	III	4	
sùng	送	see (one) off	V	II	1	S
sùnglǐ	送禮	present gift	VO	I	8	
sùshè	___ ___	dormitory	N	III	1	
swàn	算	count	V	I	5	
swànle	算了	forget it	IE	II	14	
swànpan	算 ___	abacus	N	I	5	
swéibyàn	___ 便	as one wishes	IE	I	9	
swéirán...kěshr	雖然…可是	although...but	MA	III	1	

swóyi	所以	so; therefore	A	I	11
swūndz	___子	grandchild	N	III	3
syà	下	make (decision)	V	II	14
syàba	下___	chin; jaw	N	III	5
syàchē	下車	get off a wheeled behicle	VO	I	11
syàchí	下棋	play chess	V	III	20
syà(ge)lǐbài	下禮拜	next week	TW	I	15
syàhwàile	___壞了	scared to death	IE	III	10
syàkè	下課	finish class	VO	II	10
syàlai	下來	come down	RV	II	1
syāmāu pèng sžhàudz	___貓碰死耗子	blind cat bumps into a dead rat (shot in the dark)	IE	III	12
syàmyàn	下面	below; following; next	MA	III	2
syān	先	first	A	I	3
syǎnde	___的	apparently	A	III	7
syàndzài	現在	now	TW	I	6
syǎng	想	want to; consider to; plan to	AV	I	4
syǎng	響	sound	V	III	2
syàng	像	resemble	V	I	10
syàng	像	statue; image; portrait	N	II	13

syàng	___	alley	N	III	18	
syǎngchilai	想起來	(begin to) think	RV	II	4	
syāngdāng	相___	relatively; fairly	A	II	7	
syāngdāngyú	相___於	equal to; corresponding to	Adj	III	17	
syǎngdàu	想到	succeed to recall	RV	II	8	
syāngdz	___子	luggage; box; suitcase	N	I	12	
syàngjēng	象徵	symbolize	V	III	17	
syànglái	向來	always	A	III	2	
syàngpyār	像片兒	photograph	N	II	1	
syāngshwěr	香水兒	perfume	N	II	11	
syāngsya	鄉下	countryside	N	I	6	
syānsheng	先生	Mr.; sir	N	I	1	S
syǎu	小	small	Adj	I	5	
syàu	笑	laugh; laugh at	V	II	8	
syàujǎng	校長	principal school; president college or university	N	II	3	
syáujye	小___	miss; young lady	N	I	9	
syāusyi	消息	news; information	N	III	2	
syǎusyīn	小心	careful	Adj	I	12	
syǎu tsèdz	小册子	small notebook	N	III	18	

syàuywán	校園	campus; school grounds	N	II	3	
syàwu	下午	afternoon	TW	II	1	S
-syē	___	some; several	M	I	5	
syě	___	write	V	II	4	
syé	___	shoes	N	II	11	S
syěchilai	___起來	begin to write	RV	II	8	S
syědz̀tái	___字台	desk	N	III	20	
syètyān syèdì	謝天謝地	thank heavens	IE	III	11	
syī(byar)	西邊	west	PW	II	2	
Syībānyá	西___牙	Spain (cf. Unit 1)	PW	I	2	S
Syībānyáwén	西___牙文	Spanish	N	I	2	S
Syībélìyà	西___利___	Siberia	N	III	4	
Syībupyāndz	西部片子	Western movie	N	I	10	
syídzǎu	洗澡	take a bath	VO	II	5	S
syídzǎujyān	洗澡間	bathroom	N	III	1	
syígwàn	習慣	habit; custom	N	II	15	
syǐhwan	喜歡	like; enjoy	V	I	2	
Syījyāng	西___	West River	N	III	4	
syǐjyù	喜劇	comedy	N	I	10	S
syílyǎn jyàr	洗臉架	wash-basin stand	N	III	1	
syīn	新	new	Adj	II	2	
syīn	心	heart; mind	N	II	12	

syìn	信	mail; letter	N	I	11	
syíng	行	satisfactory; all right	Adj	I	6	
syíng	行	good	Adj	I	14	
syìng	___	be surnamed	V	I	7	
syīngchī	___期	week (interchangeable with lǐbài; syīngchī yī, eř, sēn, etc.)	N	III	6	
syīngchyu	興趣	interest	N	III	20	
syīngfèn	興奮	excited	Adj	II	12	
syìnggé	性格	character; temperament	N	III	15	
syíngli	行李	luggage	N	II	1	
syìngkwēi	___ ___	fortunately	A	I	14	
syīngsying	___ ___	stars	N	II	1	S
syīnláng	新 ___	bridegroom	N	III	15	
syīnnyángdz	新 ___ 子	bride	N	III	15	
syīnsyan	新鮮	fresh	Adj	II	6	
syīnwén	新聞	news	N	III	2	
syítí	習題	exercise	N	I	3	
syīwàng	___ ___	hope	V	II	3	
syōu(lǐ)	___ 理	repair	V	II	11	
syōusyi	休息	rest	V	I	13	
syūng	___	chest; bosom	N	II	8	S

sywǎn	選	select; take (courses)	V	II	3	
sywǎndwō	選多	take (select) too many (or much)	RV	II	3	
sywánshǒu	選手	player (sport, game)	N	II	9	
sywéchī	學期	semester	N	II	3	
sywéchilai	學起來	(begin to) learn	RV	II	4	
sywéhwèi	學會	learn	RV	I	15	
sywésheng	學生	student	N	I	1	S
sywéshēng-dz̀jr̀hwèi	學生自治會	student body association	N	II	10	
sywésyàu	學校	school	N	I	3	S
sž̌	死	die	V	II	6	
sž̌	死	desperately	A	II	10	
sz̀	四	four	Nu	I	3	S
Sz̀ywe	四月	April (four-month)	TW	I	3	S
tā	他	he; him	proN	I	1	
tǎ	___	pagoda	N	III	8	
tái	抬	raise	V	II	14	
tài	太	too; excessively	A	I	4	
tàijíchyuán	太極 ___	Chinese shadow-boxing, a form of calisthenics	N	III	3	

táijùr	台___	important performer	N	II	10	
Tàipíngyáng	太平洋	Pacific Ocean	N	III	4	
tàitai	太太	Mrs.	N	II	3	
tàiyang	太___	sun	N	II	2	
tāmen	他們	they; them	proN	I	1	S
tán	談	talk (cf. Unit 6)	V	I	8	
-tang	___	class	M	III	4	
tāng	湯	soup	N	I	4	
táng	___	candy; sugar	V	I	8	
-tàng	___	for trips	M	II	13	
tántyār	談天兒	chat	V	III	20	
-tàu	___	a set of	M	II	9	
tǎuyàn	___ ___	annoy	V	III	14	
tèbyé	特别	special	Adj	I	13	
tèbyé	特别	specially	A	I	13	
téng	疼	painful	Adj	I	13	
tì	替	for (in place of)	CV	II	4	
tījìnchyu	___ ___ 去	kick in	RV	II	9	
tǐjùng	體重	weight (of human body)	N	II	9	
tí (mù)	題	question	N	II	14	
tīng	聽	listen	V	I	2	

tíng	停	stop	V	III	11	
tǐng	挺	straighten up; push forward	V	II	8	S
tǐng	挺	most (superlative)	A	III	1	
tīngbudǔng	聽不懂	cannot understand by hearing	RV	II	15	
tíngbulyaǔ	停不了	cannot stop	RV	III	14	
tíngchēchǎng	停車場	parking lot	N	II	5	
tīngdau	聽到	succeed to hear	RV	II	8	S
tíngdz	—子	arbor; pavilion; bower	N	III	3	
tīnghwà	聽話	obey	Adj VO	III	15	
tīngjyan	聽見	hear	RV	II	2	
tīngshwō	聽說	I hear that... (it is said that...)	IE	I	15	
tī ta yī jyǎu	—他一脚	give it (him) a kick	IE	III	2	
tǐyù	體育	physical education	N	III	16	
-tou	頭	head; end; side	PW	I	3	
tóu	頭	head	N	I	14	S
-tóu	頭	unit measure for cattle	M	II	6	
tóuhwūn	頭—	feel dizzy	V	III	5	

tóulán	___ ___	shoot the basket	VO	I	14	
tóuténg	頭___	have a headache	V	I	13	
tsā	___	wipe off	V	II	15	
tsāi	猜	guess	V	II	1	
tsái	才	only then; not. . . until	A	I	7	
tsái	才	only	A	I	9	
tsài	菜	vegetables; dish of food other than a staple	N	I	4	
tsáipàn	___ ___	referee	N	I	14	
tsǎisède	彩___的	color	Adj	I	10	
tsānchē	___車	dining car	N	I	12	
tsānjyā	參加	join	V	I	8	
tsānkǎushū	參考書	reference books	N	II	14	
tsānting	___ ___	dining hall; cafeteria	N	II	1	S
Tsānyìywàn	參___院	Senate	N	II	13	
tsǎudì	草地	meadow; lawn	N	III	7	
tsǎupíng	草___	lawn	N	II	2	
tsèswǒ	___所	toilet; lavatory	N	III	1	
tsòu	___ ___	piece together	V	III	7	
tsù	___	vinegar	N	I	6	
tsúng	從	from	CV	I	6	

tsúngchyán	從前	formerly	TW	I	15	
tsūngmíng	聰明	clever; smart	Adj	II	7	S
tswēi	—	urge	V	II	15	
-tsz̀	次	a time; occasion	M	I	12	
tsźsyíng	辭行	bid farewell	VO	II	15	
tù .	—	rabbit	N	III	13	
tújāng	圖章	seal; chop	N	III	12	
tūngjr̄	通知	notice	N	III	12	
tùngkwài	痛快	delightful	Adj	III	14	
túngsywé	同學	schoolmate	N	I	7	
tūngtūng	統統	all; as a whole	A	II	7	
túshūgwǎn	圖書館	library	N	I	3	
twánbài	團拜	exchange New Year's greeting in a group	N	I	8	
twánywán	團員	member of a group, association, etc.	N	II	10	
twánywán	團圓	family reunion	N V	III	17	
twēi	推	push	V	III	19	
twěi	—	leg	N	I	14	S
-tyān	天	day	M	I	2	
tyán	—	fill	V	III	5	
tyānchi	天氣	weather	N	I	15	

tyāntyan	天天	everyday	TW	I	6	
tyāu	挑	select; choose	V	II	7	
tyàu	跳	jump	V	I	14	
-tyáu	條	line	M	I	11	
-tyáu	條	unit measure for fish	M	II	6	S
-tyáu	條	unit measure for skirt, trousers and pants	M	II	9	
tyàuchilai	跳起來	begin to dance	RV	II	8	
tyàugòu	跳夠	dance enough	RV	II	8	
tyàuwǔ	跳舞	dance	VO	II	8	
tyē	——	stick; affix	V	I	11	
wàdz	襪	socks; stockings	N	II	11	S
wāi	歪	slanted; lop-sided	Adj	III	8	
wài	——	hello	IE	I	7	
wàishēngnyǔr	外——女兒	niece (sister's daughter)	N	III	20	
wài (tou)	外	outside (cf. Unit 3)	PW	I	6	
wàigwo	外國	foreign country	PW	I	5	
wàikē	外科	surgery	N	I	13	
wān	——	bend	V	II	8	S
wán	完	finish; get through	V	I	8	

-wǎn	——	bowl	M	I	4
wǎn	——	bowl	N	I	6
wǎn	晚	late	Adj	I	7
wǎnfàn	晚飯	supper	N	I	7
Wáng	——	common Chinese surname	N	I	1
wàng	忘	forget	V	I	6
wàng	往	toward; face (certain direction)	CV	I	11
wángù	—— ——	stubborn	Adj	II	8
wǎnhwèi	晚會	evening party	N	I	9
wǎnshang	晚上	evening; night	TW	I	2
wányèr	玩藝兒	thing; gadget; stuff	N	III	1
wár	玩兒	play	V	I	6
wárgòu	玩兒夠	to see as much as you can or to play enough	RV	II	13
-wèi	位	person (polite form)	M	I	9
wèi	為	for	CV	II	13
wéichí	圍棋	one kind of Chinese chess	N	III	20
wěidà	——大	great	Adj	III	16
wèi shémma	為甚麼	why; for what	IE	II	11
wéisyǎn	—— ——	danger	Adj/N	II	2

-wen	文	-language	N	I	2	
wèn	問	ask	V	I	1	S
wèn cháng wèn dwǎn de	問長問短的	ask this and that	IE	II	12	
wēndù	___ ___	temperature	N	I	13	
wénhwà	文 ___	culture	N	III	2	
wénjang	文章	writing	N	III	16	
wèntí	問題	question; problem	N	II	12	
wénwù	文物	cultural relics; cultural artifacts	N	III	6	
wényì	文藝	literary art	N	III	11	
wǒ	我	I; me	proN	I	1	
wǒde tyān a	我的天 ___	good heavens	IE	III	1	
wǒmen	我們	we; us	proN	I	1	S
wòshr̀	___ 室	bedroom	N	III	1	
wǔ	五	five	Nu	I	3	S
wǔ	舞	dance	N	II	8	
wǔchì	___ ___	weapon	N	III	6	
wūdz	屋子	room	N	II	2	
wǔfàn	午飯	lunch	N	II	5	S
Wújyǎu-dàsyà	五角大 ___	Pentagon	N	II	13	

wúlwùn	無論	no matter how (when, what, or where)	A	II	7	
Wúmíng-yīngsyúng-mù	無名英 ___ ___	The Tomb of the Unknown Soldier	N	II	13	
wúswǒwèi	無所 ___	indifferent	IE	III	8	
wútsǎi	五彩	multi-color	N	III	8	
Wǔywe	五月	May (five-month)	TW	I	3	S
ya	___	added at the end of a sentence to express something unexpected	IE	I	9	
yá	牙	tooth	N	III	5	
yādz	___ 子	duck	N	II	6	
yágāu	牙 ___	toothpaste	N	II	11	S
Yǎjōu	___ ___	Asia	N	III	4	
yǎjr̀	___ ___	graceful; of good taste	Adj	III	20	
yǎn	演	perform	V	I	10	
yǎndzòu	演 ___	perform; play (musical instrument)	V	II	10	S
yǎndzòuhwèi	演 ___ 會	concert	N	II	10	
Yáng	___	Chinese surname	N	I	9	
yáng	___	sheep	N	III	13	

yǎng	—	raise; breed	V	II	6	
yàngdz	樣子	style; appearance	N	II	12	
yánglì	—曆	the solar calendar	N	III	17	
-yàngr	樣兒	kind; sort	M	I	5	
yǎnjing	眼—	eyes	N	I	14	
yǎnjìngr	眼鏡兒	eye-glasses	N	III	9	
yánjyǎng	演講	lecture	V	III	16	
yánsè	— —	color	N	II	7	S
yānsž	—死	drown	V	III	10	
yàntái	—台	Chinese ink stone (ink dish)	N	III	20	
yáshwār	牙—	toothbrush	N	II	11	S
yàu	要	want; like	V	I	4	
yàu	要	going to; expect to; shall; will	AV	I	5	
yàu	藥	medicine	N	I	13	
yàubudé	要不得	undesirable	IE	II	14	
yàuburán	要不然	otherwise	A	II	14	
yàujǐn	要緊	serious	Adj	I	13	
yàushr	要是	if; in case	MA	I	10	
yáyī	牙醫	dentist	N	III	5	
yě	也	also; too; either; all	A	I	2	
-yè	夜	night	M	I	8	

yè	夜	night	N	I	8	
yésyu	也 ___	perhaps	MA	I	15	
yětsān	___ ___	picnic	N	III	7	
yī	一	one	Nu	I	1	S
-yī	衣	-garment	N	I	2	S
yìbǎi	一百	100	Nu	I	5	S
yìbānde shwō	一 ___ 的説	generally speaking	IE	III	4	
yǐchyán	以前	before	TW	II	6	
yìchyān	一千	1,000	Nu	I	5	S
yídìng	一定	necessarily; certainly	A	I	6	
yìdyǎr	一點兒	a little; a bit; some	N	I	4	
yìdyǎr (dōu; yě) bú tswò	一點兒不 ___	absolutely correct; not wrong at all	IE	III	3	
yǐdz	椅子	chair	N	I	3	S
yígùng	一 ___	altogether	MA	I	5	
yīgwèi	衣 ___	closet	N	II	2	
yǐhòu	以後	after	TW	II	6	
yìhwěr	一會兒	a moment	TW	I	3	
yíjèndz	一陣子	a spell; a short while	TW	III	14	

yǐjing	已經	already	A	I	3
yìjí	一直	continuously; straight on	A	II	1
yíkwàr	一塊兒	together	A	I	4
yìmú yíyàng	一 ___ 一樣	exactly the same	IE	II	13
yìn	印	print	V	III	8
Yìndù	印 ___	India	N	III	4
yǐnèi	以内	within	PW	III	13
yíng	___	win	V	I	14
yīnggāi	應該	must; should	AV	II	8
-yīnglǐ	英 ___	mile	M	II	2
Yīngwén	英文	the English language	N	I	1
yínháng	___ 行	bank	N	II	11
Yīnlì	陰曆	Chinese lunar calendar	N	III	17
yīnlyáng	___ 凉兒	shade	N	III	7
yínpái	___ 牌	silver plaque (trophy)	N	II	9
yīnwei	___ 為	because, for	MA	I	10
yìnyán dàu tóur	一年到頭兒	all year round; all the time	IE	III	9
yīnywè	音樂	music	N	II	8
yīshang	衣 ___	clothes	N	I	2

yǐshàng	以上	more than; above	A	II	11	
yīshēng	醫生	doctor; physician	N	III	5	
yìshŕ	一時	off hand; at the moment	IE	III	6	
yìshùgwǎn	藝術館	art museum	N	III	6	
yìshùpǐn	藝術品	art object	N	III	6	
yísyà	一下	a while; a bit	A	II	7	
yísyàdz	一下子	all at once; immediately	A	II	9	
yìsz	意 ___	idea	N	I	8	
yíwàn	一 ___	10,000	Nu	I	5	S
yíwànwan	一 ___ ___	100,000,000	Nu	I	5	S
yǐwéi	以為	consider such and such to be	V	II	13	
yíyàng	一樣	one kind; the same	Adj	I	10	
yīywàn	醫院	hospital	N	I	13	
Yìywán	___ 員	Member of Congress	N	II	13	
Yíywe	一月	January (one-month)	TW	I	3	S
yǒu	有	have	V	I	2	
yòu	又	again	A	I	9	
yòu	又	...and also...	A	I	13	
yòubyār	右邊兒	right (side)	PW	I	6	S

yóuchíshr	___其是	especially	A	II	4	
yǒude	有的	some	proN	II	1	S
yóujyǎn	___ ___	air letter	N	I	11	
yóu (jèng) jyú	___ ___	post office	N	I	11	
yǒu kùngr	有空兒	leisurely; not busy; have leisure	IE	III	3	
yǒu lyángshǒu	有兩手	be good at something	IE	II	5	
yóupyàu	___票	stamp	N	I	11	
yǒu shr̀	有事	have things to do; busy	IE	III	6	
yǒu shŕhou	有時候	sometimes	TW	II	11	
yóusyíng	___行	parade	N	I	9	
yóutǔng	___筒	mailbox	N	I	11	
yǒu yánjyou	有研究	well-versed	Adj	III	16	
yǒu yìsz	有意___	interesting	IE	II	9	
yǒuyityan	有一天	some day	TW	II	1	S
yóuyǔng	___ ___	swim	V	I	15	
yóuyǔngyī	___ ___衣	swimming suit	N	I	15	
yú	魚	fish	N	I	4	
yùbei	預備	prepare	V	I	3	
yùbeihǎu	預備好	make (it) ready	RV	II	3	
yūn	___	faint	V	III	13	

yùnchi	運氣	luck	N	II	13
yùndung	運動	physical exercise	N	III	3
yùng	用	use	V	I	4
yùng	用	with	CV	I	11
yùngbujáu	用不著	be unnecessary to	RV	II	12
yùnggūng	用功	apply effort	VO	II	10 S
yùngjyù	用___	articles of daily use; tools	N	III	6
yúntsai	雲彩	cloud	N	III	7
yúsǎn	雨傘	umbrella	N	III	14
ywǎn	遠	far	Adj	I	11
ywándž shŕdài	原子時代	atomic age	N	III	14
ywánlái	原來	in fact; originally	A	II	4
ywánlái rútsž	原來___ ___	so, that's why	IE	II	8
ywànyi	願意	wish; be willing to	AV	II	9
ywē	約	make an appointment	V	I	7
-ywè	月	-month	TW	I	3
ywè...ywè...	越…越…	the more...the more...	A	II	9
ywèbing	月餅	moon-cake	N	III	17
ywèdwèi	樂隊	musical band	N	I	9

Vocabulary

ywēhǎu	約好	make an appointment	RV	II 3
Ywènán	越南	Viet Nam	N	III 4

筆劃	第一.二.三.册所學之漢字 (1, 2, 3, etc. = unit nos.)
一	第一册 一$_3$
二	第一册 人$_2$ 二$_3$ 七$_3$ 八$_3$ 九$_3$ 十$_3$ 了$_5$ 又$_3$ 第三册 力$_3$
三	第一册 也$_2$ 三$_3$ 千$_4$ 上$_5$ 下$_5$ 子$_6$ 大$_7$ 小$_7$ 第二册 才$_4$ 已$_5$ 女$_9$ 口$_{11}$ 己$_9$ 第三册 山$_4$ 工$_6$
四	第一册 不$_1$ 中$_2$ 文$_2$ 五$_3$ 六$_3$ 少$_3$ 毛$_4$ 分$_4$ 支$_4$ 什$_4$ 天$_5$ 今$_5$ 水$_6$ 友$_7$ 月$_8$ 太$_7$ 第二册 午$_1$ 公$_2$ 心$_3$ 以$_4$ 比$_5$ 父$_6$ 牛$_6$ 匹$_6$ 火$_6$ 反$_{11}$ 切$_{12}$ 手$_{15}$ 片$_{11}$ 第三册 包$_2$ 日$_4$ 牙$_5$ 方$_6$ 内$_{13}$ 互$_{14}$
五	第一册 他$_1$ 生$_2$ 四$_3$ 去$_5$ 用$_6$ 本$_7$ 半$_8$ 叫$_9$ 外$_{10}$ 第二册 可$_1$ 北$_2$ 左$_2$ 右$_2$ 平$_3$ 打$_4$ 出$_5$ 正$_5$ 母$_6$ 卡$_7$ 必$_8$ 另$_9$ 加$_{10}$ 句$_{10}$ 司$_{11}$ 立$_{11}$ 白$_{13}$ 仔$_{13}$ 功$_{14}$ 第三册 代$_2$ 世$_2$ 主$_4$ 史$_4$ 古$_6$ 台$_7$ 石$_8$ 布$_8$ 犯$_8$
六	第一册 好$_1$ 忙$_1$ 老$_2$ 有$_3$ 多$_3$ 百$_4$ 早$_5$ 吃$_6$ 肉$_6$ 在$_6$ 年$_8$ 再$_8$ 第二册 行$_1$ 回$_1$ 西$_2$ 先$_3$ 她$_3$ 同$_3$ 死$_6$ 次$_6$ 奶$_6$ 衣$_9$ 件$_9$ 合$_{10}$ 自$_{11}$ 休$_{12}$ 似$_{12}$ 全$_{13}$ 考$_{14}$ 交$_{14}$ 第三册 各$_2$ 扔$_2$ 向$_2$ 收$_2$ 地$_4$ 汗$_5$ 名$_6$ 印$_8$ 份$_{12}$ 字$_{12}$ 至$_{15}$ 册$_{13}$ 弄$_{18}$
七	第一册 我$_1$ 你$_1$ 没$_3$ 那$_4$ 見$_8$ 吧$_8$ 坐$_{10}$ 車$_{10}$ 快$_{11}$ 走$_{11}$ 更$_{11}$ 冷$_{12}$

筆劃	
七	第一冊 李$_1$ 近$_2$ 住$_4$ 足$_5$ 完$_5$ 每$_6$ 汽$_6$ 決$_7$ 佈$_7$ 改$_7$ 把$_7$ 別$_8$ 扭$_8$ 身$_8$ 告$_9$ 男$_9$ 角$_{10}$ 忘$_{14}$ 抄$_{14}$ 免$_{15}$ 步 第二冊 床$_1$ 位$_2$ 作$_3$ 抱$_3$ 利$_5$ 技$_5$ 吵$_8$ 何$_{11}$ 災$_{14}$ 忍$_{15}$ 形$_{16}$ 究$_{16}$ 址$_{18}$
八	第一冊 的$_2$ 兩$_4$ 兒$_5$ 到$_5$ 來$_5$ 明$_5$ 杯$_6$ 爸$_7$ 朋$_7$ 知$_7$ 刻$_8$ 呢$_8$ 宜$_9$ 第二冊 取$_1$ 妹$_1$ 往$_2$ 房$_2$ 東$_2$ 治$_3$ 長$_3$ 林$_3$ 念$_3$ 門$_3$ 放$_4$ 所$_4$ 叔$_4$ 玩$_4$ 牧$_6$ 定$_7$ 拉$_8$ 易$_8$ 事$_{10}$ 表$_{10}$ 花$_{10}$ 怕$_{12}$ 法$_{13}$ 夜$_{14}$ 抬$_{14}$ 怪$_{15}$ 果$_{15}$ 第三冊 舍$_1$ 空$_3$ 河$_4$ 於$_6$ 物$_6$ 命$_7$ 爬$_8$ 其$_8$ 虎$_8$ 奇$_9$ 受$_9$ 拐$_9$ 非$_{10}$ 並$_{10}$ 雨$_{14}$ 性$_{15}$ 招$_{15}$ 版$_{16}$ 育$_{16}$ 味$_{17}$ 卷$_{18}$
九	第一冊 很$_1$ 是$_2$ 英$_2$ 美$_2$ 城$_5$ 昨$_5$ 要$_7$ 拜$_8$ 便$_9$ 前$_{10}$ 怎$_{12}$ 看$_{12}$ 第二冊 飛$_1$ 重$_1$ 直$_1$ 屋$_2$ 南$_2$ 約$_3$ 厚$_3$ 封$_4$ 信$_4$ 紀$_4$ 急$_4$ 差$_5$ 祖$_6$ 後$_6$ 省$_7$ 音$_8$ 亮$_9$ 胖$_9$ 穿$_9$ 活$_{10}$ 孩$_{11}$ 香$_{11}$ 紅$_{11}$ 客$_{12}$ 祝$_{12}$ 首$_{13}$ 送$_{15}$ 品$_{15}$ 第三冊 甚$_1$ 室$_1$ 洗$_1$ 架$_1$ 挺$_1$ 界$_1$ 面$_2$ 指$_4$ 係$_4$ 洋$_4$ 科$_6$ 閃$_7$ 待$_8$ 歪$_8$ 玻$_9$ 洞$_{10}$ 挑$_{10}$ 為$_{10}$ 相$_{13}$ 背$_{13}$ 既$_{13}$ 故$_{14}$ 俗$_{17}$

筆劃	
十	第一冊 們1 師2 這4 個4 紙4 校5 茶6 能6 書7 家7 真9 除9 時11 候11 第二冊 高1 起4 拿4 氣5 倍5 員5 恩6 馬8 笑8 容8 倒10 借11 息12 特12 院13 宮13 連14 記14 恐14 海15 第三冊 租1 流6 病5 害5 草7 彩7 哭7 破10 缺11 耗12 通12 原14 陣14 酒15 席15 格15 庭17 留18 釘19 推19 俱20
十一	第一冊 都1 國2 張4 從5 常8 唱9 得9 做9 夠12 第二冊 現1 接1 累1 條1 麥2 堆3 問4 球5 停5 麻5 第6 掛7 寄7 教8 啊8 處 習10 陪10 排10 參10 動10 貨11 帶11 偏11 蛋12 盛13 細13 深14 淺14 戚15 船15 票15 捨15 第三冊 魚1 脚2 圓3 釣3 堂4 乾4 假5 掉5 術5 部6 涼7 眼9 專9 救10 猜10 梨10 清10 頂11 理12 章12 淋14 婚15 研16 情16 掃19 盒20
十二	第一冊 給1 筆2 買4 鄉5 晚5 菜6 喝6 湯6 桌6 椅6 喜7 幾8 等 貴9 就10 最11 第二冊 過1 場1 開2 着3 報4 替4 達4 渴5 進5 隊5 棵7 越9 減9 訴9 裙9 間10 答12 華13 景13 統13 畫13 短14 遍14 期14 備14 單14 結14 第三冊 窗1 梯1 散3 運3 黃4

筆劃	
十二	第三冊 黑$_{4}$ 朝$_{6}$ 雲$_{7}$ 象$_{7}$ 遇$_{8}$ 換$_{8}$ 然$_{8}$ 無$_{8}$ 順$_{9}$ 傘$_{14}$ 提$_{14}$ 痛$_{14}$ 敬$_{15}$ 陰$_{17}$ 絶$_{19}$ 琴$_{20}$ 棋$_{20}$ 像$_{20}$ 圍$_{20}$ 筒$_{20}$
十三	第一冊 嗎$_{1}$ 塊$_{3}$ 萬$_{4}$ 裏$_{5}$ 筷$_{6}$ 會$_{6}$ 飯$_{6}$ 跟$_{7}$ 愛$_{7}$ 想$_{7}$ 媽$_{7}$ 第二冊 路$_{2}$ 遠$_{2}$ 話$_{3}$ 極$_{3}$ 電$_{4}$ 經$_{5}$ 煩$_{5}$ 感$_{6}$ 節$_{6}$ 聖$_{7}$ 裝$_{7}$ 跳$_{8}$ 該$_{8}$ 誇$_{10}$ 頓$_{13}$ 意$_{13}$ 試$_{14}$ 預$_{14}$ 照$_{15}$ 第三冊 新$_{2}$ 發$_{2}$ 牌$_{3}$ 陽$_{4}$ 號$_{5}$ 業$_{6}$ 雷$_{7}$ 落$_{7}$ 亂$_{8}$ 農$_{10}$ 楚$_{10}$ 碰$_{12}$ 羣$_{13}$ 愁$_{13}$ 準$_{14}$ 義$_{16}$ 圓$_{17}$
十四	第一冊 麼$_{4}$ 歌$_{7}$ 説$_{9}$ 睡$_{11}$ 第二冊 管$_{7}$ 置$_{8}$ 種$_{8}$ 像$_{8}$ 漂$_{9}$ 裳$_{9}$ 緊$_{9}$ 演$_{10}$ 團$_{10}$ 獎$_{10}$ 圖$_{13}$ 飾$_{7}$ 舞$_{8}$ 第三冊 聞$_{2}$ 對$_{3}$ 綠$_{4}$ 算$_{9}$ 賓$_{9}$ 璃$_{9}$ 摔$_{10}$ 趕$_{11}$ 認$_{11}$ 蓋$_{12}$ 際$_{16}$ 餅$_{17}$
十五	第一冊 誰$_{2}$ 賣$_{4}$ 餓$_{6}$ 樓$_{7}$ 請$_{10}$ 樣$_{12}$ 熱$_{12}$ 第二冊 課$_{3}$ 選$_{3}$ 養$_{6}$ 誕$_{7}$ 論$_{7}$ 樂$_{8}$ 練$_{10}$ 劇$_{10}$ 褲$_{11}$ 價$_{11}$ 談$_{11}$ 數$_{14}$ 慣$_{15}$ 碼$_{15}$ 第三冊 層$_{1}$ 髮$_{3}$ 輪$_{7}$ 緣$_{9}$ 篇$_{16}$ 徵$_{17}$ 慶$_{17}$ 熟$_{19}$ 趣$_{20}$ 墨$_{20}$
十六	第一冊 學$_{2}$ 錢$_{3}$ 還$_{10}$ 頭$_{10}$ 第二冊 機$_{1}$ 興$_{3}$ 橘$_{5}$ 樹$_{7}$ 糕$_{12}$ 奮$_{12}$ 辦$_{12}$ 館$_{13}$ 薄$_{14}$ 懂$_{15}$ 親$_{15}$ 第三冊 澡$_{1}$ 橋$_{3}$ 歷$_{4}$ 穎$_{5}$ 錶$_{8}$ 貓$_{12}$ 曆$_{17}$ 據$_{17}$ 檢$_{19}$

筆劃				
十七	第一冊	禮$_{8}$ 點$_{8}$ 謝$_{10}$	第二冊	賽$_{5}$ 應$_{8}$ 燭$_{12}$ 幫$_{12}$ 聰$_{12}$ 總$_{13}$ 擠$_{15}$
	第三冊	牆$_{1}$ 臉$_{1}$ 鮮$_{3}$ 戴$_{9}$ 濕$_{13}$ 龍$_{13}$ 講$_{16}$		
十八	第二冊	離$_{2}$ 關$_{3}$ 雞$_{6}$ 題$_{12}$	第三冊	雙$_{1}$ 擺$_{1}$ 翻$_{2}$ 轉$_{3}$ 醫$_{5}$ 藥$_{5}$ 藝$_{6}$ 騎$_{7}$ 鬆$_{11}$
十九	第二冊	邊$_{2}$ 壞$_{7}$ 難$_{7}$ 願$_{13}$ 辭$_{15}$	第三冊	類$_{6}$ 鏡$_{9}$ 證$_{12}$ 簽$_{12}$
二十	第一冊	鐘$_{8}$ 覺$_{11}$	第三冊	譯$_{2}$ 襪$_{9}$
二十一	第二冊	護$_{15}$ 續$_{15}$	第三冊	屬$_{15}$
二十二	第一冊	歡$_{7}$ 聽$_{12}$	第三冊	響$_{2}$ 讀$_{16}$
二十三	第二冊	體$_{9}$	第三冊	曬$_{7}$
二十五	第三冊	觀$_{17}$		

COMMON VARIANT FORMS
OF CHARACTERS INTRODUCED

囘	回	吧	罷
沒	没	裡	裏
面	靣	點	點
棹	桌	擡	抬
幾	幾	晒	曬
機	機	快	快
臺	台	旣	既
什	甚		